MACE'S BEGINNER'S HISTORY

Rand NcNally & Company

The Project Gutenberg eBook of A beginner's history

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org. If you are not located in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

Title: A beginner's history

Author: William H. Mace

Illustrator: P. Raymond Audibert
Homer Wayland Colby
Jacques Reich
B. F. Williamson

Release date: November 25, 2015 [eBook #50548]
Most recently updated: October 22, 2024

Language: English

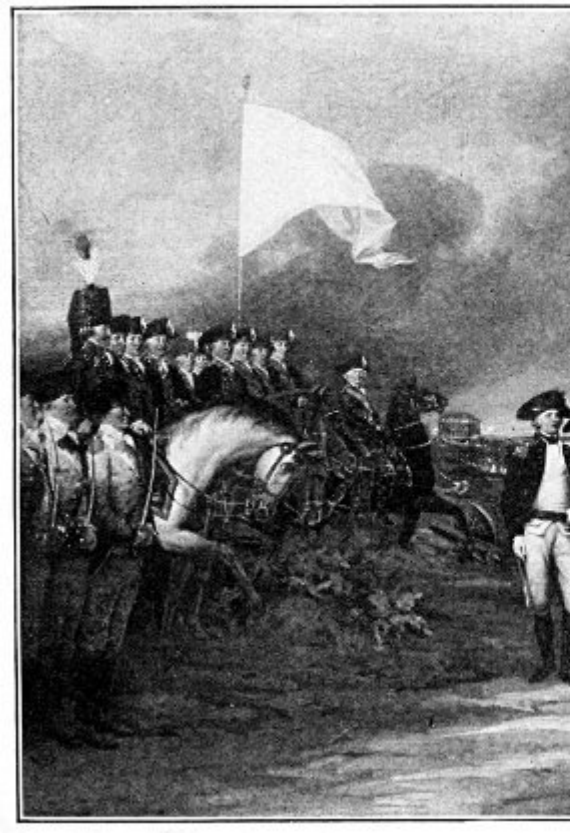
Other information and formats: www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/50548

Credits: Produced by Richard Tonsing, Richard Hulse and the Online Distributed Proofreading Team at http://www.pgdp.net (This file was produced from images generously made available by The Internet Archive)

*** START OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK A BEGINNER'S HISTORY ***

THE WORLD showing the UNITED STATES a

Copyright, 1909, by Rand, McNa



THE SURRE

A Beginner's History

by

WILLIAM H. MACE

Formerly Professor of History in Syracuse University, Author of "Method in History," "A Working Manual of American History," "A School History of the United States," "Lincoln: The Man of the People," and "Washington: A Virginia Cavalier"

Illustrated by
HOMER W. COLBY

Portraits by
JACQUES REICH, P. R. AUDIBERT, *and*
B. F. WILLIAMSON

RAND McNALLY & COMPANY

Chicago New York London

Mace's Primary History
Copyright, 1909,
By William H. Mace
All rights reserved
Mace's Elementary History
Copyright, 1914,
By William H. Mace
Mace's Beginner's History
Copyright, 1914,
By William H. Mace
Copyright, 1916,
By William H. Mace
Copyright, 1921,
By William H. Mace

The Rand-McNal

Chicago

THE PREFACE

The material out of which the child pictures history lies all about him. When he learns to handle objects or observes men and other beings act, he is gathering material to form images for the stories you tell him, or those he reads. So supple and vigorous is the child's imagination that he can put this store of material to use in picturing a fairy story, a legend, or a myth.

From this same source—his observation of the people and things about him—he gathers simple meanings and ideas of his own. He weaves these meanings and ideas, in part, into the stories he reads or is told. From the cradle to the grave he should exercise this habit of testing the men and institutions he studies by a comparison with those he has seen.

The teacher should use the stories in this book to impress upon the pupil's mind the idea that life is a constant struggle against opposing difficulties. The pupil should be able to see that the great men of American history spent their lives in a ceaseless effort to conquer obstacles. For everywhere men find opponents. What a struggle Lincoln had against the twin difficulties of poverty and ignorance! What a battle Roosevelt waged with timidity and a sickly boyhood! And what a tremendously courageous and vigorous man he became!

In the fight which men wage for noble or ignoble

ends the pupil finds his greatest source of interest. Here he forms his ideas of right and wrong, and deals out praise and blame among the characters. Hence the need of presenting true Americans—patriotic Americans—for his study.

This book of American history includes the stirring scenes of the world's greatest war. It shows how a vast nation, loving peace and hating war, worked to get ready to fight, how it trained its soldiers and planned a great navy, and how, when all was ready, it hurled two million men against the Germans and helped our brave allies to crush the cruelest foe that war ever let loose.

With the knowledge of American men and events which the study of our history should give him, the pupil is ready to ask where the first Americans came from. To answer that question, and many others, we must go to European history. We must look at the great peoples of the world's earlier history, and see how their civilization finally developed into that which those colonists who pushed across the Atlantic to America brought with them.

But the civilization brought to this country by earlier or by later comers must not cease to grow. America has her part to add to its development. With the close of the World War we must not forget one fact which that conflict brought out—the vast number of people in the United States almost untouched by the spirit of American institutions. Teachers of history, the subject-matter of which is the story of American institutions and American leaders, can do much to change such conditions. This need for more thorough Americanization they can help to fill by teaching in their classes not a mechanical patriotism but a loyal understanding of American ideals.

William H. Mace

Syracuse University

THE TABLE OF CONTENTS

PAGE

THE NORTHMEN DISCOVER THE NEW WORLD

Leif Ericson, Who Discovered Vinland 1

EARLY EXPLORERS IN AMERICA

Christopher Columbus, the First Great Man in American History 2

Ponce de Leon, Who Sought a Marvelous Land and Was Disappointed 17

Cortés, Who Found the Rich City of Mexico 18

Pizarro, Who Found the Richest City in the World 23

Coronado, Who Penetrated Southwestern United States but Found Nothing but Beautiful Scenery 24

De Soto, the Discoverer of the Mississippi 24

Magellan, Who Proved that the World Is Round

28

THE MEN WHO MADE AMERICA KNOWN TO ENGLAND AND WHO CHECKED THE PROGRESS OF SPAIN

John Cabot also Searches for a Shorter Route to India and Finds the Mainland of North America

34

Sir Francis Drake, the English "Dragon," Who Sailed the Spanish Main and Who "Singed the King of Spain's Beard"

37

Sir Walter Raleigh, the Friend of Elizabeth, Plants a Colony in America to Check the Power of Spain

42

THE MEN WHO PLANTED NEW FRANCE IN AMERICA, FOUNDED QUEBEC, EXPLORED THE GREAT LAKE REGION, AND PENETRATED THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY

Samuel de Champlain, the Father of New France

49

Joliet and Marquette, Fur Trader and Missionary, Explore the Mississippi Valley for New France

53

WHAT THE DUTCH ACCOMPLISHED IN THE COLONIZATION OF THE NEW WORLD

Henry Hudson, Whose Discoveries Led Dutch Traders to Colonize New Netherland

54

FAMOUS PEOPLE IN EARLY VIRGINIA

John Smith the Savior of Virginia, and Pocahontas its Good Angel 60

Lord Baltimore, in a Part of Virginia, Founds Maryland as a Home for Persecuted Catholics and Welcomes Protestants 68

Industries, Manners, and Customs of First Settlers of Virginia 71

PILGRIMS AND PURITANS IN NEW ENGLAND

Miles Standish, the Pilgrim Soldier, and the Story of "Plymouth Rock" 73

John Winthrop, the Founder of Boston; John Eliot, the Great English Missionary; and King Philip, an Indian Chief the Equal of the White Man 81

Industries, Manners, and Customs 85

THE MEN WHO PLANTED COLONIES FOR MANY KINDS OF PEOPLE

Peter Stuyvesant, the Great Dutch Governor 87

Manners and Customs of New Netherland 91

William Penn, the Quaker, Who Founded the City of Brotherly Love 92

Quaker Ways in Old Pennsylvania

98

James Oglethorpe, the Founder of Georgia as a Home for English Debtors, as a Place for Persecuted Protestants, and as a Barrier against the Spaniards

100

Industries, Manners, and Customs of the Southern Planters

103

ROBERT CAVELIER DE LA SALLE, WHO FOLLOWED THE FATHER OF WATERS TO ITS MOUTH, AND ESTABLISHED NEW FRANCE FROM CANADA TO THE GULF OF MEXICO

La Salle Pushed Forward the Work Begun by Joliet and Marquette

106

The Men of New France

113

GEORGE WASHINGTON, THE FIRST GENERAL AND FIRST PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES

The "Father of His Country"

115

THE MAN WHO HELPED WIN INDEPENDENCE BY WINNING THE HEARTS OF FRENCHMEN FOR AMERICA

Benjamin Franklin, the Wisest American of His Time

147

PATRICK HENRY AND SAMUEL ADAMS, FAMOUS MEN OF THE REVOLUTION, WHO DEFENDED AMERICA WITH TONGUE AND PEN

Patrick Henry, the Orator of the Revolution

158

Samuel Adams, the Firebrand of the Revolution

167

THE MEN WHO FOUGHT FOR AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE WITH GUN AND SWORD

Nathan Hale

179

Generals Greene, Morgan, and Marion, the Men Who Helped Win the South from the British

182

THE MEN WHO HELPED WIN INDEPENDENCE BY FIGHTING ENGLAND ON THE SEA

John Paul Jones, a Scotchman, Who Won the Great Victory in the French Ship, *Bon Homme Richard*

194

John Barry, Who Won More Sea Fights in the Revolution than Any Other Captain

199

THE MEN WHO CROSSED THE MOUNTAINS, DEFEATED THE INDIANS AND BRITISH, AND MADE THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER THE WESTERN BOUNDARY OF THE UNITED STATES

Daniel Boone, the Hunter and Pioneer of Kentucky

202

John Sevier, "Nolichucky Jack"

210

George Rogers Clark, the Hero of Vincennes

216

Development of the New Republic
Eli Whitney, Who Invented the Cotton Gin and Changed the History of the South 226
Thomas Jefferson, Who Wrote the Declaration of Independence, Founded the Democratic Party, and Purchased the Louisiana Territory 229
Lewis and Clark, American Explorers in the Oregon Country 238
Oliver Hazard Perry, Victor in the Battle of Lake Erie 244
Andrew Jackson, the Victor of New Orleans 245
The Men Who Made the Nation Great by Their Inventions and Discoveries
Robert Fulton, the Inventor of the Steamboat 257
Samuel F. B. Morse, Inventor of the Telegraph 264
Cyrus West Field, Who Laid the Atlantic Cable between America and Europe 268
Cyrus McCormick, Inventor of the Reaper 272
Elias Howe, Inventor of the Sewing Machine

274

THE MEN WHO WON TEXAS, THE OREGON COUNTRY, AND CALIFORNIA

Sam Houston, Hero of San Jacinto

277

David Crockett, Great Hunter and Hero of the Alamo

282

John C. Fremont, the Pathfinder of the Rocky Mountains

283

Spanish Missions in the Southwest

290

THE THREE GREATEST STATESMEN OF THE MIDDLE PERIOD

Henry Clay, the Founder of the Whig Party and the Great Pacificator

294

Daniel Webster, the Defender of the Constitution

300

John C. Calhoun, the Champion of Nullification

306

ABRAHAM LINCOLN, THE LIBERATOR AND MARTYR

A Poor Boy Becomes a Great Man

313

Andrew Johnson and the Progress of Reconstruction

328

TWO FAMOUS GENERALS

Ulysses S. Grant, the Great General of the

Union Armies
331
Robert Edward Lee, the Man Who Led the Confederate Armies
337
Men Who Helped Determine New Political Policies
Rutherford B. Hayes
342
James A. Garfield
345
Chester A. Arthur
346
Grover Cleveland
347
Benjamin Harrison
349
The Beginning of Expansion Abroad
William McKinley and the Spanish-American War
352
The Man Who Was the Champion of Democracy
Theodore Roosevelt, the Typical American
360
William Howard Taft
369
Westward Expansion and Development
The Westward Movement of Population and the Development of Transportation
372

George Washington Goethals, Chief Engineer of the Panama Canal 376

MEN OF RECENT TIMES WHO MADE GREAT INVENTIONS

Thomas A. Edison, the Greatest Inventor of Electrical Machinery in the World 380

Two Inventions Widely Used in Business 386

Automobile Making in the United States 388

Wilbur and Orville Wright, the Men Who Gave Humanity Wings 390

John P. Holland, Who Taught Men to Sail Under the Sea 395

HEROINES OF NATIONAL PROGRESS

Elizabeth Cady Stanton and Susan B. Anthony, Who Were the first to Struggle for the Rights of Women 400

Julia Ward Howe, Author of "The Battle Hymn of the Republic," and Harriet Beecher Stowe, Who Wrote *Uncle Tom's Cabin* 404

Frances E. Willard, the Great Temperance Crusader; Clara Barton, Who Founded the Red Cross Society in America; and Jane Addams, the Founder of Hull House Social Settlement in Chicago

408

Resources and Industries of Our Country

How Farm and Factory Helped Build the Nation

416

Mines, Mining, and Manufactures

421

America and the World War

Early Years of the War

424

America Enters to Win

431

The Conclusion of the War

437

Where the American People and Their Civilization Came From

Introduction

445

The Oldest Nations

446

Greece, the Land of Art and Freedom

450

How the Greeks Taught Men to be Free

456

Spread of Greek Civilization

461

When Rome Ruled the World

464

Hannibal Tries to Conquer Rome

467

Rome Conquers the World, but Grows

Wicked
469
The Roman Republic Becomes the Roman Empire
471
What Rome Gave to the World
473
The Downfall of Rome
476
The Angles and Saxons in Great Britain
478
Charles the Great, Ruler of the Franks
479
The Coming of the Northmen
483
Alfred the Great
484
The Norman Conquest
488
The Struggle for the Great Charter
490
A Pronouncing Index
xi
The Index
xv

MACE'S BEGINNER'S HISTORY

THE NORTHMEN DISCOVER THE NEW WORLD

LEIF ERICSON, WHO DISCOVERED VINLAND

The Northmen discover Iceland and Greenland

1. The Voyages of the Northmen. The Northmen were a bold seafaring people who lived in northern Europe hundreds of years ago. Some of the very boldest once sailed so far to the west that they reached the shores of Iceland and Greenland, where many of them settled. Among these were Eric the Red and his son Leif Ericson.

Now Leif had heard of a land to the south of Greenland from some Northmen who had been driven far south in a great storm. He determined to set out in search of it. After sailing for many days he reached the shore of this New World (A. D. 1000). There he found vines with grapes on them growing so abundantly that he called the new land Vinland, a country of grapes.

Leif's discovery caused great excitement among his people. Some of them could hardly wait until the winter was over, and the snow and ice broken up, so as to let their ships go out to this new land.

This time Thorvald, one of Leif's brothers, led the expedition. On reaching land, as they stepped ashore,

he exclaimed: "It is a fair region and here I should like to make my home." But Thorvald was killed in a battle with the Indians and was buried where he had wanted to build his home. The Northmen continued to visit the new land, but finally the Indians became so unfriendly that the Northmen went away and never came again.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* The Northmen, bold sailors, settled Iceland and Greenland. *2.* Leif Ericson reached the shores of North America and called the country Vinland. *3.* The Northmen continued to visit the new land, but finally ceased to come on account of the Indians.

Study Questions. *1.* In what new countries did the Northmen settle? *2.* Tell the story of Leif Ericson's voyage. *3.* What did he call the new land, and why?

Suggested Readings. THE NORTHMEN: Glascock, *Stories of Columbia*, 7-9; Higginson, *American Explorers*, 3-15; *Old South Leaflets*, NO. 31.

EARLY EXPLORERS IN AMERICA

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS, THE FIRST GREAT MAN IN AMERICAN HISTORY

Boyhood of Columbus

2. Old Trade Routes to Asia. More than four hundred fifty years ago Christopher Columbus spent his boyhood in the queer old Italian town of Genoa on the shore of the Mediterranean Sea. Even in that far-away time the Mediterranean was dotted with the white sails of ships busy in carrying the richest trade in the world. But no merchants were richer or had bolder sailors than those of Columbus' own town.

Genoa had her own trading routes to India, China, and Japan. Her vessels sailed eastward and crossed the Black Sea to the very shores of Asia. There they found stores of rich shawls and silks and of costly spices and jewels, which had already come on the backs of horses and camels from the Far East. As fast as winds and oars could carry them, these merchant ships hastened back to Genoa, where other ships and sailors were waiting to carry their goods to all parts of Europe.

THE BOY COLUMBUS

After the statue by Giulio Montverde in the Museum of Fine Arts, Boston

Why Columbus learned to like the sea

Every day the boys of Genoa, as they played along the wharves, could see the ships from different countries and could hear the stories of adventure told by the sailors. No wonder Christopher found it hard to work at his father's trade of combing wool; he liked to hear stories of the sea and to make maps and to study geography far better than he liked to comb wool or study arithmetic or grammar. He was eager to go to sea and while but a boy he made his first voyage. He often sailed with a kinsman, who was an old sea captain. These trips were full of danger, not only from storms but from sea robbers, with whom the sailors often had hard fights.

Prince Henry's work

While Columbus was growing to be a man, the wise and noble Prince Henry of Portugal was sending his sailors to brave the unknown dangers of the western coast of Africa to find a new way to India. The Turks, by capturing Constantinople, had destroyed Genoa's overland trade routes.

Columbus goes to Lisbon

The bold deeds of Henry's sailors drew many seamen to Lisbon, the capital of Portugal. Columbus went, too, where he was made welcome by his brother and other friends. Here he soon earned enough by making maps to send money home to aid his parents, who were very poor.

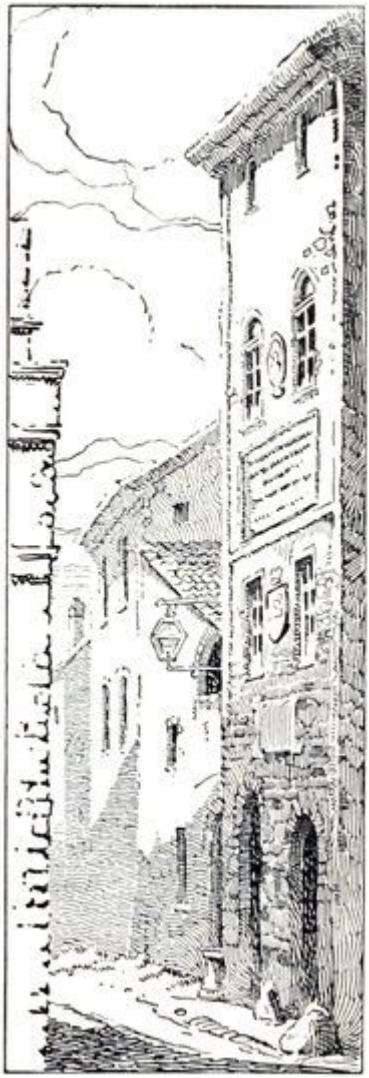
A SEA FIGHT BETWEEN GEN

The Genoese were great seamen and traders. When the Tu destroying their routes many fier

Sailors hope to reach India

Columbus was now a large, fine-looking young man with ruddy face and bright eyes, so that he soon won

the heart and the hand of a beautiful lady, the daughter of one of Prince Henry's old seamen. Columbus was in the midst of exciting scenes. Lisbon was full of learned men, and of sailors longing to go on voyages. Year after year new voyages were made in the hope of reaching India, but after many trials, the sailors of Portugal had explored only halfway down the African coast.



THE HOME OF COLUMBUS, GENOA

Columbus' new idea

It is said that one day while looking over his father-in-law's maps, Columbus was startled by the idea of reaching India by sailing directly west. He thought that this could be done, because he believed the world to be round, although all people, except the most educated, then thought the world flat. Columbus also believed that the world was much smaller than it really is.

The best map of that time located India, China, and Japan about where America is. For once, a mistake in geography turned out well. Columbus, believing his route to be the shortest, spent several years in gathering proof that India was directly west. He went on long voyages and talked with many old sailors about the signs of land to the westward.

A tricky king

Finally Columbus laid his plans before the new King of Portugal, John II. The king secretly sent out a ship to test the plan. His sailors, however, became frightened and returned before going very far. Columbus was indignant at this mean trick and immediately started for Spain (1484), taking with him his little son, Diego.

What the Spaniards thought of Columbus

3. Columbus at the Court of Spain. The King and Queen of Spain, Ferdinand and Isabella, received him kindly; but some of their wise men did not believe the world is round, and declared Columbus foolish for thinking that countries to the eastward could be

reached by sailing to the westward. He was not discouraged at first, because other wise men spoke in his favor to the king and queen.

COLUMBUS SOLICITING AII

From the painting by the Bohemian artist, Vaczlav Brozi

Some thought him crazy

It was hard for these rulers to aid him now because a long and costly war had used up all of Spain's money. Columbus was very poor and his clothes became threadbare. Some good people took pity on him and gave him money but others made sport of

the homeless stranger and insulted him. The very boys in the street, it is said, knowingly tapped their heads when he went by to show that they thought him a bit crazy.

LA RABIDA CONVENT

At this monastery, on his way to France,

Begs bread for his son

4. New Friends of America. Disappointed and discouraged, after several years of weary waiting, Columbus set out on foot to try his fortunes in France. One day while passing along the road, he came to a convent or monastery. Here he begged a drink of water and some bread for his tired and hungry son, Diego, who was then about twelve years of age. The good prior of the monastery was struck by the fine face and the noble bearing of the stranger, and began to talk with him. When Columbus explained his bold plan of finding a shorter route to India, the prior sent in haste to the

little port of Palos, near by, for some old seamen, among them a great sailor, named Pinzón. These men agreed with Columbus, for they had seen proofs of land to the westward.

COLUMBUS AT THE CONVE

Columbus explaining his plan for reaching India to

The prior goes to Queen Isabella

The prior himself hastened with all speed to his good friend, Queen Isabella, and begged her not to allow Columbus to go to France, for the honor of such a discovery ought to belong to Isabella and to Spain. How happy was the prior when the queen gave him money to pay the expenses for Columbus to visit her in proper style! With a heart full of hope, once more Columbus hastened to the Spanish Court, only to find both king and queen busy in getting ready for the last great battle of the long war. Spain won a great victory, and while the people were still rejoicing, the queen's officers met Columbus to make plans for the long-thought-of voyage. But because the queen refused to make him governor over all the lands he might discover, Columbus mounted his mule and rode away, once more bent on seeking aid from France.

CHRISTOPHER COLUM

From the portrait by Antonis van Moor, painted in 1542,
Pardo. Reproduced by permission of C. 1

Why

Columbus did not go to France

Some of the queen's men hastened to her and begged her to recall Columbus. Isabella hesitated, for she had but little money in her treasury. Finally, it is said, she declared that she would pledge her jewels, if necessary, to raise the money for a fleet. A swift horseman overtook Columbus, and brought him back. The great man cried with joy when Isabella told him that she would fit out an expedition and make him governor over all the lands he might discover.

COLUMBUS BIDDING FAREW

From the painting by Ri

Columbus' unselfish vow

Columbus now took a solemn vow to use the riches obtained by his discovery in fitting out a great army which should drive out of the holy city of Jerusalem those very Turks who had destroyed the greatness of his native city.

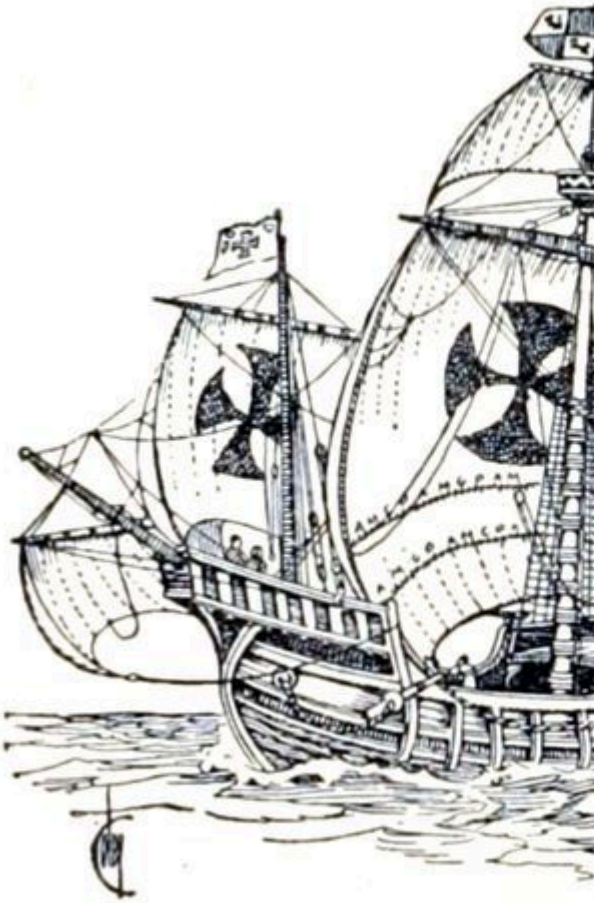
First voyage begun

5. The First Voyage. Columbus hastened to Palos. What a sad time in that town when the good queen commanded her ships and sailors to go with Columbus on a voyage where the bravest seamen had never sailed! When all things were ready for the voyage, Columbus' friend, the good prior, held a solemn religious service, the sailors said good-by to sorrowing friends, and the little fleet of three vessels and ninety stout-hearted men sailed bravely out of the harbor, August 3, 1492.

The stop at the Canary Islands

Columbus commanded the *Santa Maria*, the largest vessel, only about ninety feet long. Pinzón was captain of the *Pinta*, the fastest vessel, and Pinzón's brother of the *Niña*, the smallest vessel. The expedition stopped at the Canary Islands to make the last preparations for the long and dangerous voyage. The sailors were in no hurry to go farther, and many of them broke down and cried as the western shores

of the Canaries faded slowly from their sight.



THE SANTA MARIA, THE FLAG

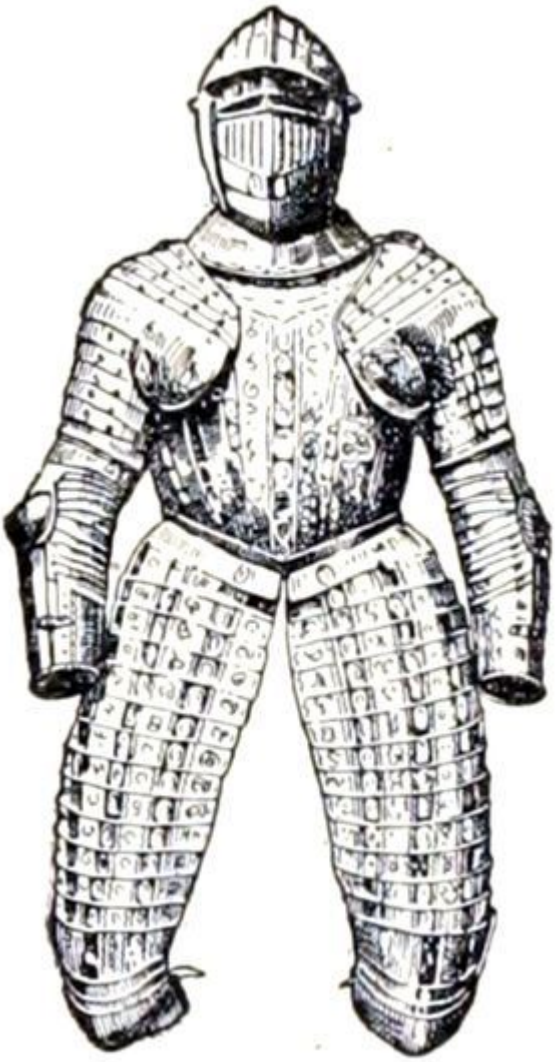
From a recent reconstruction approved by

After many days, the ships sailed into an ocean filled with seaweed, and so wide that no sailor could see the end. Would the ships stick fast or were they about to run aground on some hidden island and their crews be left to perish? The little fleet was

already in the region of the trade winds whose gentle but steady breezes were carrying them farther and farther from home. If these winds never changed, they thought, how could the ships ever make their way back?

The sailors lost heart, but Columbus grew hopeful

The sailors begged Columbus to turn back, but he encouraged them by pointing out signs of land, such as flocks of birds, and green branches floating in the sea. He told them that according to the maps they were near Japan, and offered a prize to the one who should first see land. One day, not long after, Pinzón shouted, "Land! Land! I claim my prize." But he had seen only a dark bank of clouds far away on the horizon. The sailors, thinking land near, grew cheerful and climbed into the rigging and kept watch for several days. But no land came into view and they grew more downhearted than ever. Because Columbus would not turn back, they threatened to throw him into the sea, and declared that he was a madman leading them on to certain death.



THE ARMOR OF COLUMBUS

Now in the Royal Palace, Madrid

Land at last

discovered

6. Columbus the Real Discoverer. One beautiful evening, after the sailors sang their vesper hymn, Columbus made a speech, pointing out how God had favored them with clear skies and gentle winds for their voyage, and said that since they were so near land the ships must not sail any more after midnight. That very night Columbus saw, far across the dark waters, the glimmering light of a torch. A few hours later the *Pinta* fired a joyful gun to tell that land had been surely found. All was excitement on board the ships, and not an eye was closed that night. Overcome with joy, some of the sailors threw their arms around Columbus' neck, others kissed his hands, and those who had opposed him most, fell upon their knees, begged his pardon, and promised faithful obedience in the future.

Taking possession of the country for Spain

On Friday morning, October 12, 1492, Columbus, dressed in a robe of bright red and carrying the royal flag of Spain, stepped upon the shores of the New World. Around him were gathered his officers and sailors, dressed in their best clothes and carrying flags, banners, and crosses. They fell upon their knees, kissed the earth, and with tears of joy, gave thanks. Columbus then drew his sword and declared that the land belonged to the King and Queen of Spain.

THE LANDING OF C

From the painting by Dioscoro Puebla, now

7. How the People Came to be Called "Indians." When the people of this land first saw the ships of Columbus, they imagined that the Spaniards had come up from the sea or down from the sky and that they were beings from Heaven. They, therefore, at first ran frightened into the woods. Afterwards, as they came back, they fell upon their knees as if to worship the white men.

Columbus and his men disappointed

Columbus called the island on which he landed San

Salvador and named the people Indians because he believed he had discovered an island of East India, although he had really discovered one of the Bahama Islands, and, as we suppose, the one known to-day as San Salvador. He and his men were greatly disappointed at the appearance of these new people, for instead of seeing them dressed in rich clothes, wearing ornaments of gold and silver, and living in great cities, as they had expected, they saw only half-naked, painted savages living in rude huts.

First Spanish colony planted in the New World

8. Discovery of Cuba. After a few days Columbus sailed farther on and found the land now called Cuba, which he believed was Japan. Here his own ship was wrecked, leaving him only the *Niña*, for the *Pinta* had gone, he knew not where. He was now greatly alarmed, for if the *Niña* should be wrecked he and his men would be lost and no one would ever hear of his great discovery. He decided to return to Spain at once, but some of the sailors were so in love with the beautiful islands and the kindly people that they resolved to stay and plant the first Spanish colony in the New World. After collecting some gold and silver articles, plants, animals, birds, Indians, and other proofs of his discovery, Columbus spread the sails of the little *Niña* for the homeward voyage, January 4, 1493.

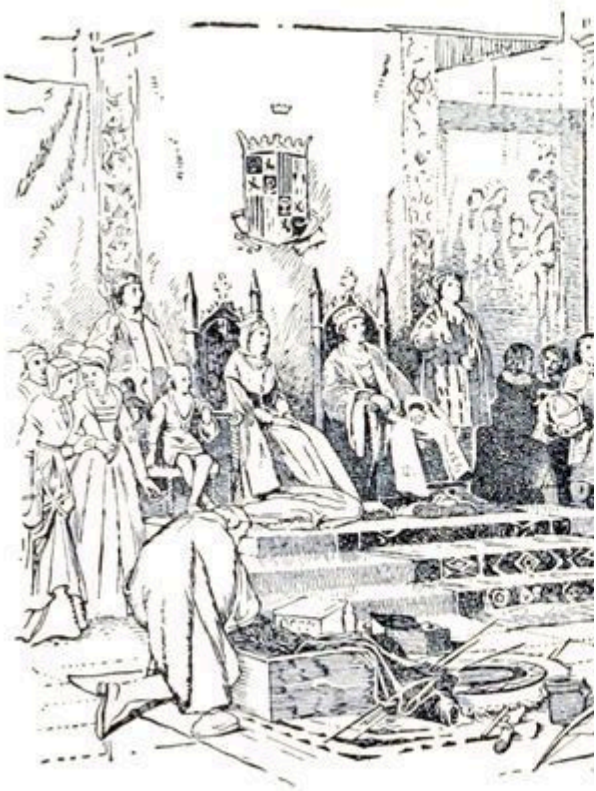
The homeward voyage

9. Columbus Returns to Spain. On the way home a great storm knocked the little vessel about for four days. All gave up hope, and Columbus wrote two accounts of his discovery, sealed them in barrels, and set them adrift. A second storm drove the *Niña* to Lisbon, in Portugal, where Columbus told the story of his great voyage. Some of the Portuguese wished to imprison Columbus, but the king would not, and in the middle of March the *Niña* sailed into the harbor of Palos.

The joy of Palos

What joy in that little town! The bells were set ringing and the people ran shouting through the streets to the wharf, for they had long given up Columbus and his crew as lost. To add to their joy, that very night when the streets were bright with torches, the *Pinta*, believed to have been lost, also sailed into the harbor.

Columbus immediately wrote a letter to the king and queen, who bade him hasten to them in Barcelona. All along his way, even the villages and the country roads swarmed with people anxious to see the great discoverer and to look upon the strange people and the queer products which he had brought from India, as they thought.



THE RECEPTION OF COLUME

From the celebrated painting by the distinguis

The people's reception

As he came near the city, a large company of fine people rode out to give him welcome. He entered the city like a hero. The streets, the balconies, the doors, the windows, the very housetops were crowded with happy people eager to catch sight of the great hero.

COLUMBUS IN C

After the clay model by the Spanish scul

Reception by the king and queen

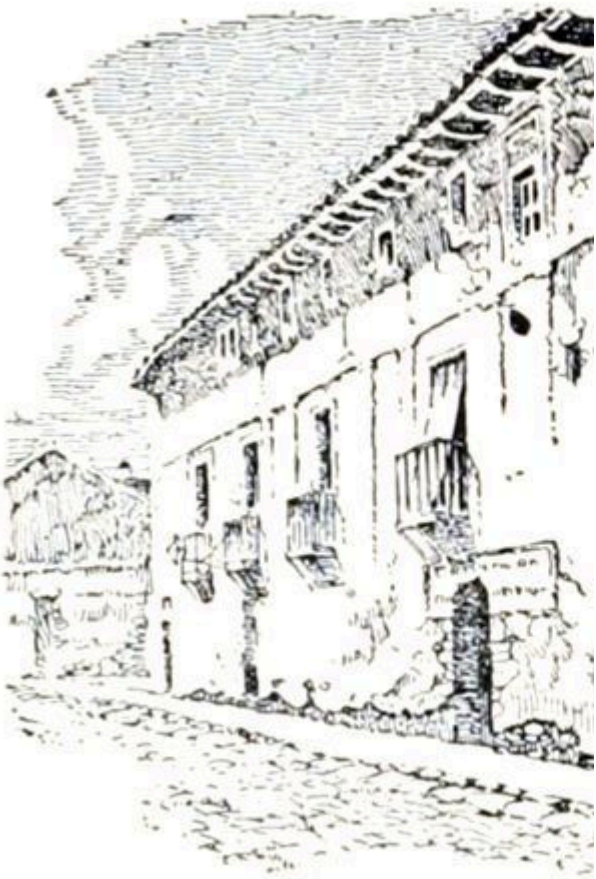
In a great room of the palace, Ferdinand and Isabella had placed their throne. Into this room marched

Columbus surrounded by the noblest people of Spain, but none more noble looking than the hero. The king and queen arose and Columbus fell upon his knees and kissed their hands. They gave him a seat near them and bade him tell the strange story of his wonderful voyage.

When he finished, the king and queen fell upon their knees and raised their hands in thanksgiving. All the people did the same, and a great choir filled the room with a song of praise. The reception was now over and the people, shouting and cheering, followed Columbus to his home. How like a dream it must have seemed to Columbus, who only a year or so before, in threadbare clothes, was begging bread at the monastery near Palos!

Fails to find rich cities

10. The Second Voyage. But all Spain was on fire for another expedition. Every seaport was now anxious to furnish ships, and every bold sailor was eager to go. In a few months a fleet of seventeen fine ships and fifteen hundred people sailed away under the command of Columbus (1493) to search for the rich cities of their dreams. After four years of exploration and discovery among the islands that soon after began to be called the West Indies, Columbus sailed back to Spain greatly disappointed. He had found no rich cities or mines of gold and silver.



THE HOUSE IN WHICH C

This house is in Valladolid, Spain, and stands in a

Death of Columbus

11. The Third and Fourth Voyages. On his third voyage (1498) Columbus sailed along the northern shores of South America, but when he reached the West Indies the Spaniards who had settled there

refused to obey him, seized him, put him in chains, and sent him back to Spain. But the good queen set Columbus free and sent him on his fourth voyage (1502). He explored the coast of what is now Central America, but afterward met shipwreck on the island of Jamaica. He returned to Spain a broken-hearted man because he had failed to find the fabled riches of India. He died soon afterward, not knowing that he had discovered a new world.

Naming the country

In 1501 Amerigo Vespucci made a voyage to South America. He was sent out by Portugal. It was thought that Vespucci had discovered a different land than that seen by Columbus. Without intending to wrong Columbus, the country he saw, and afterward all land to the northward, was called America.

Honor to his memory

Spain was too busy exploring the new lands to give proper heed to the death of the man whose discoveries would, after a few years, make the kingdom richer even than India. But it was left to the greatest nation in all the western world to do full honor to the memory of Columbus in the World's Columbian Exposition at Chicago (1892-1893).

PONCE DE LEON, WHO SOUGHT A MARVELOUS LAND AND WAS DISAPPOINTED

A magic fountain

12. Ponce de Leon. When the Spaniards came to America they were told many strange stories by the Indians about many marvelous places. Perhaps most wonderful of all was the story of Bimini, where every day was perfect and every one was happy. Here was also the magic fountain which would make old men young once more, and keep young men from growing old.

When Columbus sailed to America for the second time he brought with him a brave and able soldier, named Ponce de Leon. De Leon spent many years on the new continent fighting for his king against the Indians. After a while he was made governor of Porto Rico. While thus serving his country he too heard the story of this wonderful land which no white man had explored. Like most Spaniards, he loved adventure. Also he was weary of the cares of his office, and soon resolved to find this land and to explore it.

De Leon sets out to find Bimini

In the spring of 1513 De Leon set sail with three

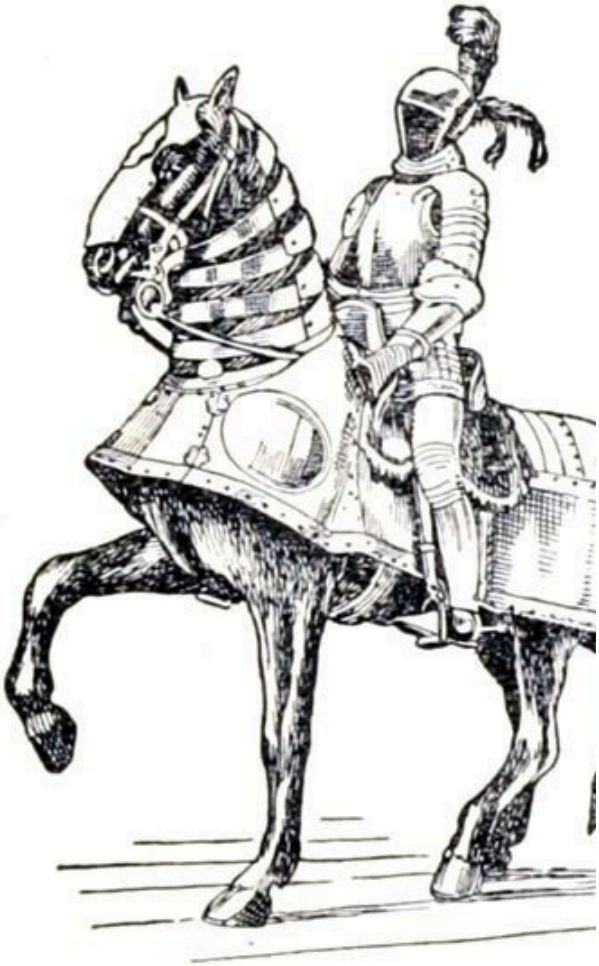
ships from Porto Rico. Somewhere to the north lay this land of perfect days. Northward he steered for many days, past lovely tropical islands. At last, on Easter Sunday, an unknown shore appeared. On its banks were splendid trees. Flowers bloomed everywhere, and clear streams came gently down to the sea. De Leon named the new land Florida and took possession of it for the King of Spain.

The first settlement in America founded

Various duties kept him away from the new land for eight years after its discovery. In 1521 he again set out from Porto Rico, with priests and soldiers, and amply provided with cattle and horses and goods. He wrote to the King of Spain: "Now I return to that island, if it please God's will, to settle it." He was an old man then and hoped to found a peaceful and prosperous colony of which he was to be governor. But Indians attacked his settlement and sickness laid low many of his men. He had been in Florida only a short time when he himself was wounded in a fight with the Indians. Feeling that he would soon die, he hastily set sail with all his men for Cuba, where he died shortly after.

De Leon had failed to find the wonderful things of which the Indians had told him. He had failed even to establish the colony of which he was to be governor. But De Leon did discover a new and great land which now forms one of the states of the Union. To him also goes the honor of having been the first man to make a settlement in what is now a part of the United States.

CORTÉS, WHO FOUND THE RICH CITY OF MEXICO



THE ARMOR OF CORTÉS

Now in the museum at Madrid

Cortés sank his ships

Spaniards saw signs of riches

13. Cortés Invades Mexico. Columbus died disappointed because he had not found the rich cities which everybody believed were somewhere in India. Foremost among Spanish soldiers was Hernando Cortés, who, in 1519, sailed with twelve ships from Cuba to the coast of what is now Mexico. His soldiers and sailors were hardly on land before he sank every one of his ships. His men now had to fight. They wore coats of iron, were armed with swords and guns, and they had a few cannon and horses. Every few miles they saw villages and now and then cities. The Indians wore cotton clothes, and in their ears and around their necks and their ankles they had gold and silver ornaments. The Spaniards could hardly keep their hands off these ornaments, they were so eager for gold. They were now sure that the rich cities were near at hand, which Columbus had hoped to find, and which every Spaniard fully believed would be found.

Difference in Spanish and Indian ways of fighting

The people of Mexico had neither guns nor swords, but they were brave. Near the first large city,

thousands upon thousands of fiercely painted warriors wearing leather shields rushed upon the little band of Spaniards. For two days the fighting went on, but not a single Spaniard was killed. The arrows of the Indians could not pierce iron coats, but the sharp Spanish swords could easily cut leather shields. The simple natives thought they must be fighting against gods instead of men, and gave up the battle.

HOUSE OF CORTÉS, COYC

Over the main doorway are graven the arms of the Co
Coyoacan, which is older than the

Day after day Cortés marched on until a beautiful valley broke upon his view. His men now saw a

wonderful sight: cities built over lakes, where canals took the place of streets and where canoes carried people from place to place. It all seemed like a dream. But they hastened forward to the great capital city. It, too, was built over a lake, larger than any seen before, and it could be reached only along three great roads of solid mason work.

GUATEMOTZIN

The nephew of Montezuma and the last Indian emperor of Mexico. After the statue by Don Francisco Jimenes

A great

Indian City

These roads ran to the center of the city where stood, in a great square, a wonderful temple. The top of this temple could be reached by one hundred fourteen stone steps running around the outside. The city contained sixty thousand people, and there were many stone buildings, on the flat roofs of which the natives had beautiful flower gardens.

AN INDIAN CORN BIN, TLAX

These are community or public bins, stand in the open roa
the days of Cortés

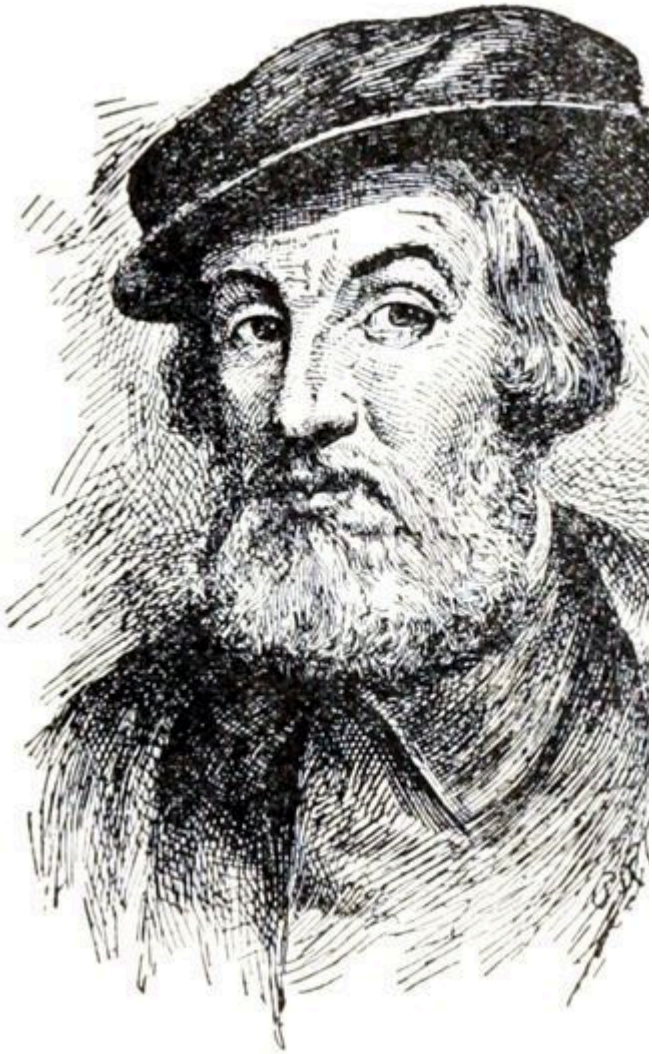
Cortés

makes Montezuma a prisoner

Montezuma, the Indian ruler, received Cortés and his men very politely and gave the officers a house near the great temple. But Cortés was in danger. What if the Indians should rise against him? To guard against this danger, Cortés compelled Montezuma to live in the Spanish quarters. The people did not like to see their beloved ruler a prisoner in his own city.

The Spaniards driven out of the city

But no outbreak came until the Spaniards, fearing an attack, fell upon the Indians, who were holding a religious festival, and killed hundreds of them. The Indian council immediately chose Montezuma's brother to be their ruler and the whole city rose in great fury to drive out the now hated Spaniards. The streets and even the housetops were filled with angry warriors. Cortés compelled Montezuma to stand upon the roof of the Spanish fort and command his people to stop fighting.



HERNANDO CORTÉS

From the portrait painted by Charles Wilson Peale, now in Philadelphia

But he was ruler no longer. He was struck down by

his own warriors, and died in a few days, a broken-hearted man. After several days of hard fighting, Cortés and his men tried to get out of the city, but the Indians fell on the little army and killed more than half of the Spanish soldiers before they could get away.

The great Indian city almost destroyed

14. Cortés Conquers Mexico. Because of jealousy a Spanish army was sent to bring Cortés back to Cuba. By capturing this army Cortés secured more soldiers. Once more he marched against the city. What could bows and arrows and spears and stones do against the terrible horsemen and their great swords, or against the Spanish foot soldiers with their muskets and cannon? At length the great Indian city was almost destroyed, but thousands of its brave defenders were killed before the fighting ceased (1521). From this time on, the country gradually filled with Spanish settlers.

15. Cortés Visits Spain. After several years, Cortés longed to see his native land once more. He set sail, and reached the little port of Palos from which, many years before, the great Columbus had sailed in search of the rich cities of the Far East. Here, now, was the very man who had found the splendid cities and had returned to tell the wonderful story to his king and countrymen. All along the journey to the king the people now crowded to see Cortés as they had once crowded to see Columbus.

CORTÉS BEFORE MC

After the original painting by the Mexican artist, J. Orte
Mexico

Cortés shares Columbus' fate

Cortés afterwards returned to Mexico, where he spent a large part of his fortune in trying to improve the country. The Spanish king permitted great wrong to be done to Cortés and, like Columbus the discoverer, Cortés the conqueror died neglected by the king whom he had made so rich. For three hundred years the mines of Mexico poured a

constant stream of gold and silver into the lap of Spain.

PIZARRO, WHO FOUND THE RICHEST CITY IN THE WORLD

ROUTES OF THE CONQUERORS, CORTÉ

Their conquests of Mexico and of Peru brought unt

Pizarro finds great riches in Peru

16. Pizarro's Voyages. Another Spaniard, Francisco Pizarro, dreamed of finding riches greater than De Leon or Cortés had ever heard of. He set out for Peru with an army of two hundred men. Reaching the coast, he started inland and in a few days came to the foot of the Andes. They crossed the mountains and, marching down the eastern side, the Spaniards came upon the Inca, the native ruler, and his army. By trickery they made the Inca a prisoner, put him to death, and then subdued the army. The Spaniards then marched on to Cuzco, the capital of Peru, where they found enormous quantities of gold and silver. Never before in the history of the world had so many riches been found. This great wealth was divided among the Spaniards according to rank. But the greedy Spaniards fell to quarreling and fighting among themselves, and Pizarro fell by the hand of one of his own men.

CORONADO, WHO PENETRATED SOUTHWESTERN UNITED STATES BUT FOUND NOTHING BUT BEAUTIFUL SCENERY

17. Coronado's Search for Rich Cities. Stories of rich cities to the north of Mexico led Francisco Coronado with a thousand men into the rocky regions now known as New Mexico and Arizona. They looked with wonder at the Grand Cañon of the Colorado, but they found no wealthy cities or temples ornamented with gold and silver.

They pushed farther north into what is now Kansas and Nebraska, into the great western prairies with their vast seas of waving grass and herds of countless buffalo. "Crooked-back oxen" the Spaniards named the buffalo.

Coronado finds no gold or silver

But Coronado was after gold and silver, and cared nothing for beautiful and interesting scenes. Disappointed, he turned southward and in 1542, after three years of wandering, reached home in Mexico. He reported to the King of Spain that the region he had explored was too poor a place for him to plant colonies.

DE SOTO, THE DISCOVERER OF THE MISSISSIPPI

18. The Expedition to Florida. While Coronado and his men were searching in vain for hidden cities with golden temples, another band of men was wandering through the forests farther to the eastward. Hernando de Soto had been one of Pizarro's bravest soldiers. The news that this bold adventurer was to lead an expedition to Florida stirred all Spain. Many nobles sold their lands to fit out their sons to fight under so great a leader.

HERNANDO DE SOTO

After an engraving to be found in the works of the great S

The Spanish settlers of Cuba gave a joyful welcome to De Soto and to the brave men from the homeland. After many festivals and solemn religious ceremonies, nine vessels, carrying many soldiers, twelve priests, six hundred horses, and a herd of swine, sailed for Florida (1539).

The settlers of Cuba welcome De Soto

What a grand sight to the Indians as the men and horses clad in steel armor landed! There were richly colored banners, beautiful crucifixes, and many things never before seen by the Indians. But this was by far the most cruel expedition yet planned.

The Spaniards' cruelty to the Indians

Wherever the Spaniards marched Indians were seized as slaves and made to carry the baggage and do the hard work. If the Indian guides were false, they were burned at the stake or were torn to pieces by bloodhounds. Hence the Indians feared the Spaniards, and Indian guides often misled the Spanish soldiers on purpose to save the guides' own tribes from harm.

De Soto fought his way through forests and swamps to the head of Apalachee Bay, where he spent the

winter. In the spring a guide led the army into what is now Georgia, in search of a country supposed to be rich in gold and ruled by a woman. The soldiers suffered and grumbled, but De Soto only turned the march farther northward.

Attacked by Indians

The Appalachian Mountains caused them to turn south again until they reached the village of Mavilla (Mobile), where the Indians rushed on them in great numbers and tried to crush the army. But Spanish swords and Spanish guns won the day against Indian arrows and Indian clubs. De Soto lost a number of men, at least a dozen horses, and the baggage of his entire army, yet he boldly refused to send to the coast for the men and supplies waiting for him there.

19. The Discovery of the Mississippi. Again De Soto's men followed him northward, this time into what we know as northern Mississippi, where the adventuring army spent the second winter in a deserted Indian village. In the spring, in 1541, De Soto demanded two hundred Indians to carry baggage, but the chief and his men one night stole into camp, set fire to their own rude houses, gave the war whoop, frightened many horses into running away, and killed a number of the Spaniards.

THE ROUTES OF CORONAI

Following these pathways, the soldier-explorers discovered Mississippi Ri

DE SOTO DISCOVERS THE M

They reached a great river

The army then marched westward for many days, wading swamps and wandering through forests so dense that at times they could not see the sun. At last, a river was reached greater than any the Spaniards had ever seen. It was the Mississippi, more than a mile wide, rushing on at full flood toward the

Gulf.

On barges made by their own hands, De Soto and his men crossed to the west bank of the broad stream. There they marched northward, probably as far as the region now known as Missouri, and then westward two hundred miles. Nothing but hardships met them on every hand. In the spring of 1542, the little army came upon the Mississippi again.

Burial of De Soto

De Soto was tiring out. He grew sad and asked the Indians how far it was to the sea. But it was too far for the bold leader. A fever seized him, and after a few days he died. At dead of night his companions buried him in the bosom of the great river he had discovered.

20. Only Half the Army Returns to Cuba. There were bold leaders still left in the army. They turned westward again, but after finding neither gold nor silver, they returned to the Mississippi and spent the winter on its banks. There they built boats, and then floated down to the Gulf. Only one half of the army returned to tell the sad tales of hardships, battles, and poverty.

What Coronado and De Soto proved to the King of Spain

Thus it came about that Coronado and De Soto proved that northward from Mexico there were no

rich cities, such as Columbus had dreamed about, and such as Cortés and Pizarro had really found. Hence it was that the King of Spain and his brave adventurers took less interest in that part of North America which is now the United States, and more in Mexico and in South America.

MAGELLAN, WHO PROVED THAT THE WORLD IS ROUND

FERDINAND MAGI

From the portrait designed and engraved

21. Magellan's Task. Columbus died believing that he had discovered a part of India. But he had not proved that the earth is round by sailing around it. This great task was left for Ferdinand Magellan, a Portuguese sailor. Columbus' great voyage had stirred up the Portuguese. One of their boldest sailors, Vasco da Gama, had reached India in 1498 by rounding Africa, and Magellan had made voyages for seven years among the islands of the East.

MAGELLAN'S FIRST VIEW OF '

Beyond the stormy strait he found the waters of the oce meaning peac

Magellan, too, goes to Spain

After returning to Portugal, Magellan sought the king's aid, but without success; then, like Columbus, he went to Spain, and in less than two years his fleet of five vessels sailed for the coast of South America (1519). Severe storms tossed the vessels about for nearly a month. Food and water grew scarce. The sailors threatened to kill Magellan, but the brave captain, like Columbus, kept boldly on until he reached cold and stormy Patagonia.

His sailors rebel

It was Easter time, and the long, hard winter was already setting in. Finding a safe harbor and plenty of fish, Magellan decided to winter there. But the captains of three ships refused to obey, and decided to kill Magellan and lead the fleet back to Spain. Magellan was too quick for them. He captured one of the ships, turned the cannon on the others, and soon forced them to surrender.

There were no more outbreaks that winter. One of the ships was wrecked. How glad the sailors were when, late in August, they saw the first signs of spring! But they were not so happy when Magellan commanded the ships to sail still farther south in search of a passage to the westward.

In October, his little fleet entered a wide, deep channel and found rugged, snow-clad mountains rising high on both sides of them. Many of the sailors believed they had at last found the westward passage, and that it was now time to turn homeward.

Magellan's bold resolution

But Magellan declared that he would "eat the leather off the ship's yards" rather than turn back. The sailors on one ship seized and bound the captain and sailed back to Spain. Magellan with but three ships sailed bravely on until a broad, quiet ocean broke upon his sight. He wept for joy, for he believed that now the western route to India had indeed been found. This new ocean, so calm, so smooth and peaceful, he named the Pacific, and all the world now calls the channel he discovered the Strait of Magellan.

The first voyage across the Pacific begins

No man had yet sailed across the Pacific, and no man knew the distance. Magellan was as bold a sailor as ever sailed the main, and he had brave men with him. In November (1520) the three little ships boldly turned their prows toward India. On and on they sailed. Many of the crew, as they looked out upon a little island, saw land for the last time. Many thousand miles had yet to be sailed before land would again be seen. After long weeks their food supply gave out and starvation stared them in the face. Many grew sick and died. The others had to eat leather taken from the ship's yards like so many hungry beasts.

How big the world seemed to these poor, starving sailors! But the captain never lost courage. Finally they beheld land. It was the group of islands now known as the Marianas (Ladrones). Here the sailors rested and feasted to their hearts' content.

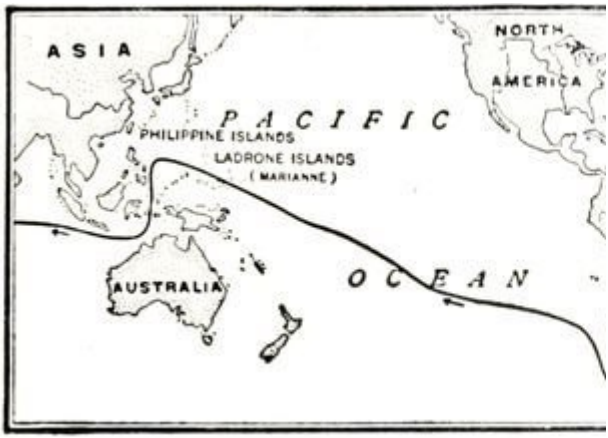
Visits the

Philippines

Then Magellan pressed on to another group of islands which were afterwards called the Philippines, from King Philip of Spain.

Magellan loses his life for his men

Here in a battle with the inhabitants, while bravely defending his sailors, Magellan was killed. Their great commander was gone and they were still far from Spain. Sadly his sailors continued the voyage, but only one of the vessels, with about twenty men, ever reached home to tell the story of that wonderful first voyage around the world.



MAGELLAN'S ROUTE AROU

Magellan, the bold Portuguese sailor, discovered the st
successful trip made aro

What the

voyage proved

Thus Magellan proved that Columbus was right in thinking the world round and that India could be reached by sailing west, while other men like Cortés and Pizarro found rich cities like those Columbus had dreamed of finding.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Columbus was born near the shores of the Mediterranean and trained for the sea by study and by experience. *2.* The people of Europe traded with the Far East, but the Turks destroyed their trade routes. *3.* Columbus was drawn to Portugal because of Prince Henry's great work. *4.* Columbus thought he could reach the rich cities of the East by sailing west. *5.* After many discouragements he won aid from Isabella and discovered the Bahama Islands, Cuba, and Haiti. *6.* The king and queen of Spain received Columbus with great ceremony. *7.* Columbus made three more voyages, but was disappointed in not finding the rich cities of India. *8.* Ponce de Leon sailed from Porto Rico to find a land of which strange stories had been told of riches and of a fountain of eternal youth. *9.* He reached Florida on Easter Sunday, 1513. *10.* Eight years later he returned to found a settlement. *11.* He was attacked by the Indians, wounded, and forced to return to Porto Rico, where he died of his wounds. *12.*

His is the distinction of being the first white man to plant a settlement in the United States after the discovery of America by Columbus. *13.* Cortés marched against a rich city, afterward called Mexico, captured the ruler, and fought great battles with the people. *14.* Cortés captured the city and ruled it for several years. *15.* From this time on Mexico gradually filled with Spanish settlers. *16.* Pizarro invaded Peru, the richest of all countries, and captured and put to death the ruler. *17.* Pizarro was killed by his own men. *18.* Coronado marched north from Mexico into Arizona and New Mexico, but found no rich cities. *19.* He wandered into the great prairies and the rocky country of Colorado but finally turned back in disappointment. *20.* De Soto wandered over the country east of the Rocky Mountains in search of rich cities, but found a great river, the Mississippi, and later was buried in its waters. *21.* Hence the Spaniards, eager for gold, went to Mexico and South America rather than farther to the north. *22.* Columbus thought the world was round, but Magellan proved it. *23.* Magellan sailed around South America into the Pacific Ocean, and across this new sea to the Philippine Islands, where he was killed. *24.* His ship reached Spain—the first to sail around the world.

Study Questions. *1.* Make a list of articles which the caravans (camels and horses) of the East brought to the Black Sea. *2.* What studies fitted Columbus for the sea? *3.* Why were there so many sailors in Lisbon? *4.* How

did Columbus get his idea of the earth's shape? *5.* What did men in Portugal and Spain think of this idea? *6.* Tell the story of Columbus in Spain. *7.* What is the meaning of the vow taken by him? *8.* Make a picture in your mind of the first voyage of Columbus. Read the poem "Columbus," by Joaquin Miller. *9.* Shut your eyes and imagine you see Columbus land and take possession of the country. *10.* Why was Columbus so disappointed? *11.* How did the people of Palos act when Columbus returned? *12.* Picture the reception of Columbus by the people, and by the king and queen. *13.* Why was Columbus disappointed in the second expedition? *14.* What did Columbus believe he had accomplished? *15.* What had he failed to do that he hoped to do? *16.* Why did Ponce de Leon go in search of the new land? *17.* What was the strange tradition about the country? *18.* What did Ponce de Leon set out to do on his second trip? *19.* Did he succeed? *20.* What is his distinction? *21.* Why did Cortés sink his ships? *22.* How were Spaniards armed and how were Indians armed? *23.* Describe the city of Mexico. *24.* Who began the war, and what does that show about the Spaniards? *25.* How did Cortés get more soldiers? *26.* How did the people and king receive Cortés in Spain? *27.* How was he treated on his return to Mexico? *28.* What did Pizarro find in Peru? *29.* How did he treat the Inca? *30.* What was Pizarro's fate? *31.* What was Coronado searching for, and why were the Spaniards disappointed? *32.* What things did

the Spaniards see that they never before had seen? *33.* What report did Coronado make? *34.* Why were De Soto's Indian guides false? *35.* Show that De Soto was a brave man. *36.* How far north did the Spaniards go both east and west of the Mississippi? *37.* Tell the story of De Soto's death and burial. *38.* What proof can you give to show that the Spaniards were more cruel than necessary? *39.* What part of the problem of Columbus did Magellan solve? *40.* What was Magellan's preparation? *41.* Where is Patagonia, and how could there be signs of spring late in August? *42.* What did Magellan's voyage prove, and what remained of Columbus' plans yet to be accomplished? *43.* Who accomplished this?

Suggested Readings. COLUMBUS: Hart, *Colonial Children*, 4-6; Pratt, *Exploration and Discovery*, 17-32; Wright, *Children's Stories in American History*, 38-60; Higginson, *American Explorers*, 19-52; Glascock, *Stories of Columbia*, 10-35; McMurry, *Pioneers on Land and Sea*, 122-160; Brooks, *The True Story of Christopher Columbus*, 1-103, 112-172.

PONCE DE LEON: Pratt, *Explorations and Discoveries*, 17-23.

CORTÉS: McMurry, *Pioneers on Land and Sea*, 186-225; Hale, *Stories of Adventure*, 101-126; Ober, *Hernando Cortés*, 24-80, 82-291.

PIZARRO: Hart, *Colonial Children*, 12-16: Towle, *Pizarro*, 27-327.

CORONADO: Griffis, *Romance of Discovery*, 168-182; Hale, *Stories of Adventure*, 136-140.

DE SOTO: Hart, *Colonial Children*, 16-19; Higginson, *American Explorers*, 121-140.

MAGELLAN: McMurry, *Pioneers on Land and Sea*, 186-225; Butterworth, *Story of Magellan*, 52-143; Ober, *Ferdinand Magellan*, 108-244.

THE MEN WHO MADE AMERICA KNOWN TO ENGLAND AND WHO CHECKED THE PROGRESS OF SPAIN

JOHN CABOT ALSO SEARCHES FOR A SHORTER ROUTE TO INDIA AND FINDS THE MAINLAND OF NORTH AMERICA

CABOT TAKING POSSESSION OF NORTH AMI

On the spot where he landed Cabot planted a large cross

The effect in England of Columbus' discovery

22. Cabot's Voyages. When the news of Columbus' great discovery reached England, the king was sorry, no doubt, that he had not helped him. The story is that Columbus had gone to Henry VII, King of England, for aid to make his voyage. But England had a brave sailor of her own, John Cabot, an Italian, born in Columbus' own town of Genoa, who also had learned his lessons in voyages on the Mediterranean. Cabot had gone to live in the old town of Venice. Afterward he made England his home and lived in the old seaport town of Bristol, the home of many English sailors.

JOHN CABOT AND HIS SON SEBASTIAN

From the statue modeled by John Cassidy, Manchest

He, too, believed the world to be round, and that India could be reached by sailing westward. King

Henry VII gave Cabot permission to try, providing he would give the king one fifth of all the gold and silver which everybody believed he would find in India.

What John Cabot discovered

Accordingly, John Cabot, and it may be his son, Sebastian, set out on a voyage in May, 1497. After many weeks, Cabot discovered land, now supposed to be either a part of Labrador or of Cape Breton Island. He landed and planted the flag of England, and by its side set up that of Venice, which had been his early home.

Later, he probably saw parts of Newfoundland, but nowhere did he see a single inhabitant. He did, however, find signs that the country was inhabited, but he found no proof of rich cities or of gold and silver. In the seas all around Cabot saw such vast swarms of fish that he told the people of England they would not need to go any more to cold and snowy Iceland to catch fish.

The king and people pay honor to Cabot

How John Cabot was treated by the king and people of England when he came back is seen in an old letter written from England by a citizen of Venice to his friends at home. "The king has promised that in the spring our countryman shall have ten ships, armed to his order. The king has also given him money wherewith to amuse himself till then, and he

is now at Bristol with his wife, who is also a Venetian, and with his sons. His name is John Cabot, and he is called the great admiral. Vast honor is paid to him; he dresses in silk, and the English run after him like mad people, so that he can enlist as many of them as he pleases, and a number of our own rogues besides. The discoverer of these places planted on his new-found land a large cross, with one flag of England and another of St. Mark, by reason of his being a Venetian."

THE FINDING OF A

The first voyages of Columbus, the discoverer of the New mainland of North

Cabot's second

voyage

Again, in May, 1498, John Cabot started for India by sailing toward the northwest. This time the fleet was larger, and filled with eager English sailors. But Cabot could not find a way to India, so he altered his course and coasted southward as far as the region now called North Carolina.

Now because of these two voyages of Cabot, England later claimed a large part of North America, for he had really seen the mainland of America before Columbus. Spain also claimed the same region, but we have seen how Mexico and Peru drew Spaniards to those countries.

Why England was slow in settling America

If England had been quick to act and had made settlements where Cabot explored, she would have had little trouble in getting a hold in North America. But she did not do so. Henry VII was old and stingy. Cabot had twice failed to find India with its treasures of gold and silver, so little attention was given to the new lands.

SIR FRANCIS DRAKE, THE ENGLISH "DRAGON," WHO SAILED THE SPANISH MAIN AND WHO "SINGED THE KING OF SPAIN'S BEARD"

23. The Quarrel between Spain and England. After John Cabot failed to find a new way to India, King Henry did nothing more to help English discovery. His son, Henry VIII, got into a great quarrel with the King of Spain. He was too busy with this quarrel to think much about America. But during this very time, Cortés and Pizarro were doing their wonderful deeds. Spain grew bold, seized English seamen, threw them into dungeons, and even burned them at the stake. Englishmen robbed Spanish ships and killed Spanish sailors in revenge.

Their sailors take up the quarrel

Why Drake hated the Spaniards

24. Sir Francis Drake. A most daring English seaman was Sir Francis Drake. From boyhood days he had been a sailor. His cousin, Captain Hawkins, gave him command of a ship against Mexico, but the

Spaniards fell upon it, killed many of the sailors, and took all they had. Drake came back ruined, and eager to take revenge. Besides, he hated the Spaniards because he thought they were plotting to kill Elizabeth, the Queen of England.

In 1573 Drake returned to England with his ship loaded with gold and precious stones, captured from the Spaniards on the Isthmus of Panama.

Begins his most famous voyage

25. Drake's Voyage around the World. After four years Drake, with four small but fast vessels, sailed direct for the Strait of Magellan. He was determined to sail the Pacific, which he had seen while on the Isthmus of Panama. In June his fleet entered the harbor of Patagonia where Magellan had spent the winter more than fifty years before.

SIR FRANCIS DRAKE

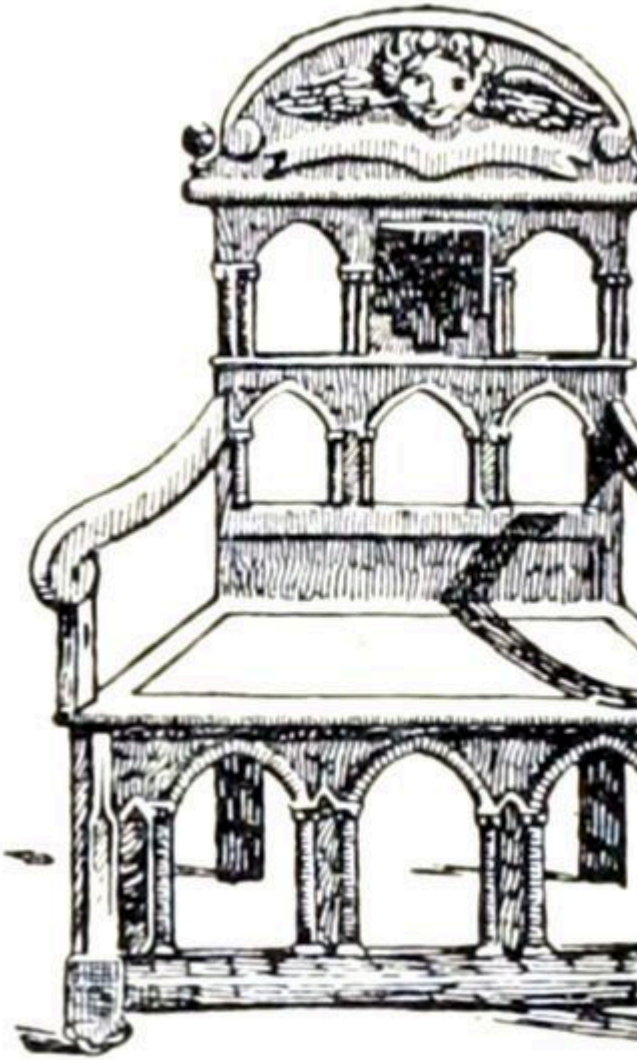
From the original portrait attributed to Sir Antonis van Mo of Viscount Dillon, at Ditchly Park, Engla

After destroying his smallest vessel, which was leaky,

Drake sailed to the entrance of the Strait. Here he changed the name of his ship from the *Pelican* to the *Golden Hind*, with ceremonies fitting the occasion.

The fleet passed safely through the Strait, but as it sailed out into the Pacific a terrible storm scattered the ships. One went down, and one returned to England, believing that Drake's ship, the *Golden Hind*, had been destroyed.

But Drake had a bold heart, good sailors, and a stout ship. After the storm he sailed north to Valparaiso, where his men saw the first great treasure ship. The Spanish sailors jumped overboard, and left four hundred pounds of gold to Drake and his men. Week after week Drake sailed northward until he reached Peru, the land conquered by Pizarro.



DRAKE'S CHAIR, OXFORD UNIVERSI'

It was made from the timbers of the "Golde

Capturing treasure

ships on the Pacific coast

Another great treasure ship had just sailed for Panama. Away sped the *Golden Hind* in swift pursuit. For a thousand miles, day and night, the chase went on. One evening, just at dark, the little ship rushed upon the great vessel, and captured her. What a rich haul! More than twenty tons of silver bars, thirteen chests of silver coin, one hundredweight of gold, besides a great store of precious stones.

The "Golden Hind" winters in California

The little ship continued northward. Hoping for a northeast passage to the Atlantic, Drake sailed along the coast as far as what was afterward known as the Oregon country. But the increasing cold and fog and the strong northwest winds made him turn southward again. Sailing close inshore, he found a small harbor, just north of the great bay of San Francisco. Here his stout little ship came to anchor. The natives believed that Drake and his men were gods, and begged them to remain with them always. Drake named the country New Albion and took possession in the name of the queen, Elizabeth. When he had refitted his ship for the long voyage home, Drake set sail, to the great sorrow of the natives.

Drake crosses the Pacific and

Indian oceans

Week after week went by, until he saw the very islands where Magellan had been. He made his way among the islands and across the Indian Ocean until the Cape of Good Hope was rounded, and the *Golden Hind* spread her sails northward toward England.

Drake given a title by Queen Elizabeth

Drake reached home in 1580, the first Englishman to sail around the world. The people, who had given him up as lost, shouted for joy when they heard he was safe. Queen Elizabeth visited his ship in person, and there gave him a title, so that now he was Sir Francis Drake. Years after, a chair was made from the timbers of the famous *Golden Hind* and presented to Oxford University, where it can now be seen.

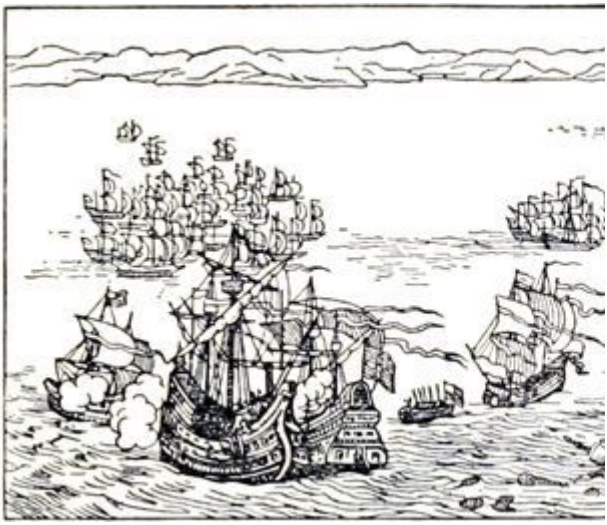
QUEEN ELIZABETH MAKING D

After the drawing by Sir John Gilbert. It pictures the scen the close of the great voyage. Queen Elizabeth visited Drak his great services to

He goes to find the Gold Fleet

26. Drake Again Goes to Fight the Spaniards. Drake soon took command of a fleet of twenty-five vessels and two thousand five hundred men, all eager to fight the Spaniards (1585). He sailed boldly for

the coast of Spain, frightened the people, and then went in search of the Gold Fleet, which was bringing shipload after shipload of treasure from America to the King of Spain.



THE SPANISH AF

More than one hundred twenty-five vessels sailed from L returned to the ho

In the West Indies

No sooner had Drake missed the fleet than he made direct for the West Indies, where he spread terror among the islands. The Spaniards had heard of Drake, the "Dragon." He attacked and destroyed three important towns, and intended to seize Panama itself, but the yellow fever began to cut down his men, so he sailed to Roanoke Island, and carried back to England the starving and homesick colony which Raleigh had planted there.

Singeing the King of Spain's beard

The Spanish king was angry. He resolved to crush England. More than one hundred ships, manned by thousands of sailors, were to carry a great army to the hated island. Drake heard about it, and quickly gathered thirty fast ships manned by sailors as bold as himself. His fleet sailed right into the harbor of Cadiz, past cannon and forts, and burned so many Spanish ships that it took Spain another year to get the great fleet ready. Drake declared that he had "singed the King of Spain's beard."

Spain aims to crush England, but is badly defeated

27. The Spanish Armada. The King of Spain was bound to crush England at one mighty blow. In 1588 the Spanish Armada, as the great fleet was called, sailed for England. There were scores of war vessels manned by more than seven thousand sailors, carrying nearly twenty thousand soldiers. Almost every noble family in Spain sent one or more of its sons to fight against England.

When this mighty fleet reached the English Channel, Drake and other sea captains as daring as himself dashed at the Spanish ships, and by the help of a great storm that came up, succeeded in destroying almost the whole fleet. No such blow had ever before fallen upon the great and powerful Spanish nation.

From that time on her power grew less and less, while England's power on the sea grew greater and greater. Englishmen could now go to America without much thought of danger from Spaniards.

SIR WALTER RALEIGH, THE FRIEND OF ELIZABETH, PLANTS A COLONY IN AMERICA TO CHECK THE POWER OF SPAIN

Raleigh, student, soldier, seaman

28. Sir Walter Raleigh. Born (1552) near the sea, Raleigh fed his young imagination with stories of the wild doings of English seamen. He went to college at Oxford at the age of fourteen, and made a good name as a student.

In a few years young Raleigh went to France to take part in the religious wars of that unhappy country. At the time he returned home all England was rejoicing over Drake's first shipload of gold. When Queen Elizabeth sent an army to aid the people of Holland against the Spaniards, young Raleigh was only too glad to go.

THE BOYHOOD OF

After the painting by Sir

On his return from this war he went with his half-brother, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, on two voyages to America, at the very same time Drake was plundering the Spanish treasure ships in the Pacific Ocean. Afterward Raleigh turned soldier again and, as captain, went to Ireland, where Spain had sent soldiers to stir up rebellion. Thus, before he was thirty years old, he had been a seaman and a soldier, and had been in France, Holland, America, and Ireland.

Raleigh when thirty years old

At this time Raleigh was a fine-looking man, about six feet tall, with dark hair and a handsome face. He had plenty of wit and good sense, although he was fond, indeed, of fine clothes. He was just the very one to catch the favor of Queen Elizabeth.

One day Elizabeth and her train of lords and ladies were going down the roadway from the royal castle to the river. The people crowded both sides of the road to see their beloved queen and her beautiful ladies go by. Raleigh pressed his way to the front.

SIR WALTER RALEIGH

From the original portrait painted by Federigo Zu

How he won the

favor of the queen

As Elizabeth drew near, she hesitated about passing over a muddy place. In a moment the feeling that every true gentleman has in the presence of ladies told Raleigh what to do, and the queen suddenly saw his beautiful red velvet cloak lying in the mud at her feet. She stepped upon it, nodded to its gallant owner, and passed on. From this time forward Raleigh was a great favorite at the court of Queen Elizabeth.

Raleigh's plan for checking the power of Spain

29. Trying to Plant English Colonies. In 1584 Raleigh caused a friend to write a letter to the queen, explaining that English colonies planted on the coast of North America would not only check the power of Spain but would also increase the power of England. That very year the queen gave him permission to plant colonies. Thus a better way of opposing Spain was found than by robbing treasure ships and burning towns.

The Indians welcome the English

Why the land was named

Virginia

Raleigh immediately sent a ship to explore. The captain landed on what is now Roanoke Island. The Indians came with a fleet of forty canoes to give them a friendly welcome. After a few days an Indian queen with her maidens came to entertain the English. "We found the people most gentle, loving, and faithful, void of all guile and treason," said Captain Barlow. His glowing account of the land and people so pleased Elizabeth that she named the country Virginia, in honor of her own virgin life.

Raleigh next sent out a kinsman, Sir Richard Grenville, with a fleet of seven vessels and one hundred settlers, under Ralph Lane as governor. But the settlers were bent on finding gold and silver, instead of making friends with the Indians.

Why the Indians became hostile

An Indian stole a silver cup from the English. Because of this theft Lane and his men fell upon the Indian village, drove out men, women, and children, burned their homes, and destroyed their crops. This was not only cruel but also foolish, for the story of his cruelty spread to other tribes, and after that wherever the English went they were always in danger from the Indians.

INDIAN CORN

Indian corn and the white potato

taken to England

When Drake came along the next spring with his great fleet, the settlers were only too glad to get back to England, and be once more among friends. They took home from America the turkey and two food plants, the white potato and Indian corn—worth more to the world than all the gold and silver found in the mines of Mexico and Peru!

Raleigh tries again

Although Raleigh had already spent thousands of dollars, he would not give up. He immediately sent out a second colony of one hundred fifty settlers, a number of whom were women. John White was governor. Roanoke was occupied once more, and there, shortly afterwards, was born Virginia Dare, the first white child of English parents in North America. Before a year went by, the governor had to go to England for aid.

A WILD TURKE

But Raleigh and all England had little time to think of America. The Armada was coming, and every English ship and sailor was needed to fight the Spaniards. Two years went by before Governor White

reached America with supplies. When he did reach there practically no trace of the colony could be found. Not a settler was left to tell the tale.

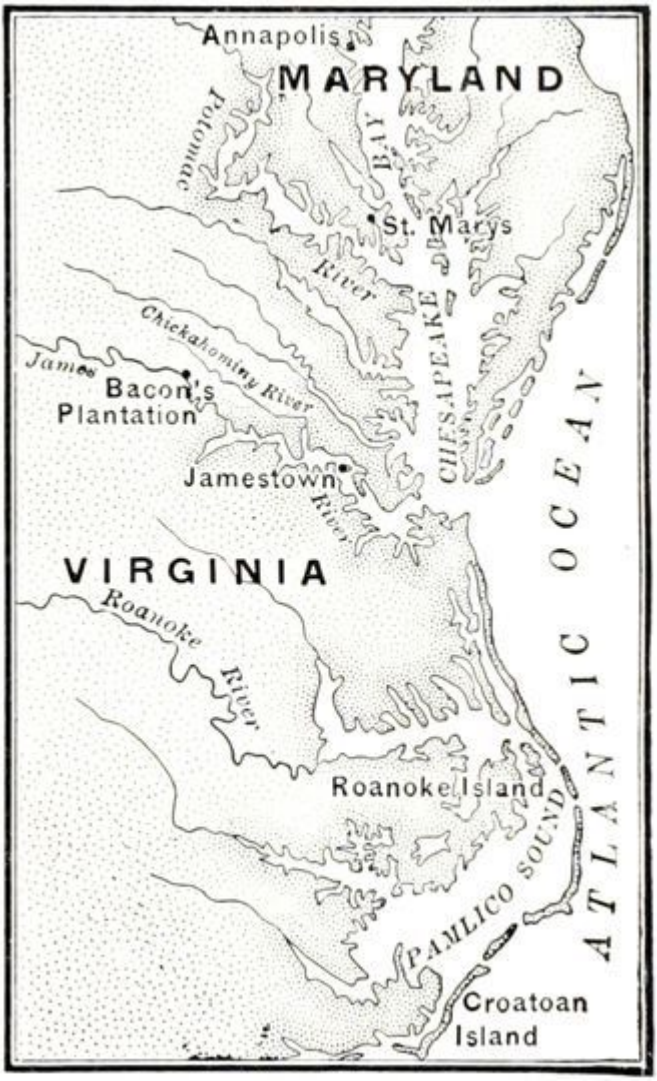
POTATO PLANT AND TUBE

The "lost colony"

The only trace of Raleigh's "lost colony" was the word "Croatoan" cut in large letters on a post. Croatoan was the name of an island near by. White returned home, but Raleigh sent out an old seaman, Samuel Mace, to search for the lost colony. It was all in vain. Many years later news reached England that a tribe of Indians had a band of white slaves, but the mystery of the lost colony never was cleared up.

Raleigh's money gives out, but not his hope

Raleigh had now spent his great fortune. But he did not lose heart, for he said that he would live to see Virginia a nation. He was right. Before he died a great colony had been planted in Virginia, and a ship loaded with the products of Virginia had sailed into London port and an Indian "princess" had married a Virginian and had been received with honor by the King and Queen of England.



EARLY SETTLEMENTS IN VIRGINIA AND MARYLAN

30. The Death of Raleigh. But the great Elizabeth was dead, and an unfriendly king, James I, was on the throne. He threw Raleigh into prison, and kept him there thirteen years. The Spaniards urged the

king to put Raleigh to death. He had been a life-long enemy of Spain and they knew they were not safe if he lived.

Raleigh bravely meets death

At last Spanish influence was too strong, and Sir Walter faced death on the scaffold as bravely as he had faced the Spaniards in battle.

Thus died a noble man who gave both his fortune and his life for the purpose of planting an English colony in America.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* John Cabot, trying for a short route to India, discovered what is supposed to be Labrador, or Cape Breton. *2.* On a second voyage he coasted along eastern North America as far south as the Carolinas. *3.* Later, England claimed all North America. *4.* Francis Drake sailed to the Pacific in the *Pelican* and then turned northward after the Spanish gold ships. *5.* He wintered in California, and then started across the Pacific —the first Englishman to cross. *6.* Drake reached England, and was received with great joy. *7.* Once more Drake went to fight the Spaniards, until the Great Armada attacked England. *8.* Walter Raleigh, a student, a soldier, and a seaman, won the favor of the queen. *9.* He hated the

Spaniards, and planted settlements in what is now North Carolina. *10.* What was Raleigh's prophecy?

Study Questions. *1.* Tell the story of John Cabot before he came to England. *2.* What did Cabot want to find when he sailed away and what did he find? *3.* How was Cabot treated by King Henry VII, according to a "Citizen of Venice," after he returned? *4.* Why was little attention given to the new lands by the English?

5. Prove that Spanish and English sailors did not like each other. *6.* Who was Francis Drake? *7.* What was Magellan after and what was Drake after? *8.* Find out why Drake renamed his ship the *Golden Hind*. *9.* Tell the story of Drake's voyage from Valparaiso to Oregon. *10.* Tell the story of the voyage across the Pacific and how he was received at home. *11.* What did Drake do when he missed the "Gold Fleet"? *12.* What did Drake mean when he said he had "singed the King of Spain's beard"? *13.* What became of the Spanish Armada, and what effects did its failure produce?

14. What other brave man went to America before the Armada was destroyed? *15.* Give the early experiences of Raleigh before he was thirty. *16.* Make a mental picture of the cloak episode. *17.* Explain how kind the Indians were; how did the English repay the Indians? *18.* What did the colonists take home with them? *19.* Who was the first white child of English parents born in America? *20.* How did the destruction of the

Armada affect Englishmen who wanted to go to America? *21*. Read in other books about Raleigh's death. *22*. How did the English treatment of the Indians compare with that of the Spaniards?

Suggested Readings. CABOT: Hart, *Colonial Children*, 7-8; Griffis, *Romance of Discovery*, 105-111.

DRAKE: Hart, *Source Book of American History*, 9-11; Hale, *Stories of Discovery*, 86-106; Frothingham, *Sea Fighters*, 3-44.

RALEIGH: Hart, *Colonial Children*, 165-170; Pratt, *Early Colonies*, 33-40; Wright, *Children's Stories in American History*, 254-258; Higginson, *American Explorers*, 177-200; Bolton, *Famous Voyagers*, 154-234.

THE MEN WHO PLANTED NEW FRANCE IN AMERICA, FOUNDED QUEBEC, EXPLORED THE GREAT LAKE REGION, AND PENETRATED THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY

SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN, THE FATHER OF NEW FRANCE

Cartier, 1534

31. The French in North America. France was the slowest of the great nations in the race for North America. Not until 1534 did Jacques Cartier, a French sea captain searching for a shorter route to India, sail into the mouth of the St. Lawrence River. He reached an Indian village where Montreal now stands and took possession of the country for his king.

SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN

From the portrait painting in Independence Hall, Phi

Champlain founded Quebec, 1608

One year after Jamestown was settled, and one year before the *Half Moon* sailed up the Hudson, Samuel de Champlain laid the foundations of Quebec (1608). Champlain was of noble birth, and had been a soldier in the French army. He had already helped found Port Royal in Nova Scotia.

Made friends and foes among the Indians

Wherever he went, Champlain made fast friends with the Algonquin Indians, who lived along the St. Lawrence. He gave them presents and bought their skins of beaver and of other animals. In the fur trade he saw a golden stream flowing into the king's treasury. Champlain certainly made a good beginning in winning over these Indians, but he also made one great blunder out of which grew many bitter enemies among other Indian tribes.

THE SITE OF QU

Here, 1608, on a narrow belt of land at the foot of the hi

An Indian war party

32. Champlain and the Indians. The Algonquins were bitter foes of the Iroquois or Five Nations. One time they begged Champlain and his men, clad in steel and armed with the deadly musket, to join their war party (1609). This he did. They made their way up the St. Lawrence to the mouth of the Richelieu, and up that river to the falls. The Indians then carried the canoes and the baggage around the falls.

Discovery

of Lake Champlain

What must have been Champlain's feelings when they glided out of the narrow river into the lake now bearing his name! A lake no white man had ever seen, and greater than any in his beloved France! On the left he saw the ridges of the Green Mountains, on the right the pine-clad slopes of the Adirondacks, the hunting grounds of the hated Iroquois.

One evening, near where the ruins of Ticonderoga now stand, they saw the war canoes of their enemies. That night the hostile tribes taunted each other and boasted of their bravery. On the shores of the lake the next day they drew up in battle array. The Iroquois chiefs wore tall plumes on their heads, and their warriors carried shields of wood or hide.

Why the Iroquois came to hate the French

All at once the Algonquins opened their ranks and Champlain, in full armor, walked forth. The Iroquois gazed in wonder on the first European soldier they had ever seen. Champlain leveled his musket and fired. Two chiefs fell. Then another report rang through the woods, and the boldest warriors in North America broke and fled in confusion. The Algonquins, yelling like demons, ran after them, killing and capturing as many as possible.

There was great rejoicing among the victors, and Champlain was their hero. But there must have been great sorrow and vows of revenge among the Iroquois.

THE ROUTES FOLLOWED

Champlain and the Algonquins invade the Iroquois country

The next year Champlain joined another Algonquin war party, and helped win another victory from the Iroquois. Again, in 1615, he joined a party of more than five hundred fiercely painted warriors. They traveled to the shore of Lake Ontario and boldly crossed to the other side in their bark canoes. They hid their boats and then silently marched into the country of the Iroquois.

THE DEFEAT OF THE IROQUOIS

After an engraving of Champlai

Some miles south of Oneida Lake they came upon a fortified Indian town. For several days Champlain and his Indians tried to break into or burn the fort, but had to give it up. These campaigns made the Iroquois hate the French almost as much as they did the Algonquins.

A FRENCH FUR TRADER ON SNOWSHOES

Iroquois make St. Lawrence unsafe for

French

For this reason Frenchmen found it safer to go west by traveling up the Ottawa River and crossing over to Lake Huron than by paddling up the St. Lawrence and through lakes Ontario and Erie. The result was that the French discovered Lake Michigan and Lake Superior long before they ever saw Lake Erie. On the other hand, we are soon to see how the Dutch made friends with the Iroquois.

Champlain true to king and country

Champlain remained many years in Canada, always working for the good of New France, as the country was called. He helped on the work of the missionaries, made peace between hostile tribes of Indians, and encouraged the fur trade and the coming of new settlers. Worn out with toil and travel, far away from kindred and native land, Champlain died at Quebec on Christmas Day, 1635.

JOLIET AND MARQUETTE, FUR TRADER AND MISSIONARY, EXPLORE THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY FOR NEW FRANCE

Stories of a new country

33. French Explorers in the Northwest. Year after year, traders and missionaries, returning to Montreal and Quebec from the west, told strange stories of a great river larger than any the French had yet seen. In May, 1673, Joliet, a fur trader, and Marquette, a missionary, were sent out by Count Frontenac, governor of the French settlements in Canada, to explore this river.

Joliet and Marquette find the Mississippi

With five others they paddled in canoes along the north shore of Lake Michigan, through Green Bay, up the Fox River, and then crossed overland to the beautiful Wisconsin. Quietly and rapidly their boats passed down the Wisconsin until they reached a great valley several miles in width and a great river.

Following the current, they passed the mouth of the gently flowing Illinois, then the rushing and muddy Missouri, the slow and clear Ohio, and finally, in July, they reached the mouth of the Arkansas.

Convinced that the Mississippi flowed into the Gulf of Mexico, they set out on the return trip of two thousand miles.

Joliet reached Quebec in safety, but Marquette fell ill and remained among the Indians. The next spring while preaching in Illinois near where Ottawa now stands, he fell ill again, and died. The Indians showed their love and respect by bearing his remains by canoe to Mackinac, where he was buried beneath the chapel floor of his own mission house.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Champlain laid the foundations of New France at Quebec, and made a treaty with the Indians on the St. Lawrence. *2.* Joliet and Marquette were sent out from Canada to explore the Mississippi River. *3.* Joliet returned to tell the story of their discoveries and Marquette remained among the Indians in Illinois.

Study Questions. *1.* What part of North America did France first settle? *2.* Who was Champlain? *3.* Tell the story of his first battle with the Iroquois. *4.* What things in New France did Champlain help? *5.* What was Champlain's blunder? *6.* Who were Joliet and Marquette? *7.* Tell the story of Joliet and Marquette. *8.* How did they get back to Canada? Near what place in Illinois did Marquette preach?

Suggested Readings. CHAMPLAIN: Wright, *Children's Stories in American History*,

269-280; McMurry, *Pioneers on Land and Sea*, 1-34.

JOLIET and MARQUETTE: McMurry, *Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley*, 1-15; Thwaites, *Father Marquette*.

WHAT THE DUTCH ACCOMPLISHED IN THE COLONIZATION OF THE NEW WORLD

HENRY HUDSON, WHOSE DISCOVERIES LED DUTCH TRADERS TO COLONIZE NEW NETHERLAND

34. Hudson's Explorations. One year after the men of New France had founded the city of Quebec the Dutch began the colony which became the Empire State. About the time John Smith was working hard for Jamestown, his friend Henry Hudson was sailing for some Dutch merchants in search of a northern sea route to India (1609).

The discovery of the Hudson by the Dutch

One bright fall day Hudson sailed into the mouth of the great river which now bears his name. He hoped that he had entered the arm of the sea which might carry him to India. He turned the prow of his vessel, the *Half Moon*, up stream.

HENRY HUDSON

From the painting by Count Pulaski in the Aldermanic C

What Hudson and his men saw

Soon the beauty of the river, the rich colors of the great forests, the steep sides of the palisades, the slopes of the highlands, the strange Indians in their bark canoes, so took the attention of Hudson and his crew that, for a time, they forgot all about a route to India.

What a flutter of excitement the *Half Moon* must have caused among the Indians! They came on board to give welcome and presents to Hudson and his men.

On the return, probably near the present city of Hudson, an old chief came on board and invited Hudson to visit the little village of wigwams located on the river. There these Dutchmen saw beautiful meadows, fields of corn, and gardens of pumpkins, grapes, and plums.

The chief showed Hudson his palace of bark, and spread a feast of roasted pigeons and other Indian food before him. In spite of such kind treatment, Hudson would not stay over night with the Indians, who even broke their bows and arrows and then threw them into the fire to prove that they meant no harm to the white man, but Hudson and his men were still afraid.

Indians kind but Hudson cruel

Indeed, Hudson had every reason to fear the Indians, for he had treated them badly and his men had even murdered some. In less than a month, Indian friendship had been turned into Indian hatred.

INDIANS WELCOMING THE "HALF

The next year Hudson sailed in an English vessel in search of the long-wished-for passage. On he went, far to the northward, past Iceland and Greenland, into the great bay which bears his name. In this desolate region, surrounded by fields of ice and snow, Hudson and his men spent a fearful winter.

Fate of Hudson and his

men

In the spring his angry sailors threw him and a few faithful friends into a boat and sent them adrift. Nothing more was ever heard of them. In Irving's "Rip Van Winkle" the story tells of nightly scenes in the Catskills in which the ghosts of Hudson and his friends were the actors.

A trading post on Manhattan

35. Dutch Traders and the Indians. Just as soon as the news of Hudson's first voyage reached Holland, the Dutch merchants claimed all the region explored by Hudson and his men and hastened to open up trade with the Indians. As early as 1614 a trading post was established on Manhattan Island—the beginning of a great city, New York.

Other posts were soon located: one up the Hudson became Fort Orange, another on the Delaware was named Fort Nassau, and a fourth was placed where Jersey City now stands. Later the Dutch traders went as far east as the Connecticut Valley.

A lasting Indian treaty

The Dutchmen treated the Indians kindly and early made a great treaty with the Iroquois, or Five Nations. The chiefs of many tribes came to Fort Orange dressed for the event. Their bows and arrows and tomahawks were decorated, their garments tasseled and fringed, and on their heads they wore nodding plumes of many sorts, while their faces were

hideous with paint. A peace belt of deer skin covered with beads was held at one end by the chiefs and at the other by the Dutch traders. They "smoked the pipe of peace, buried the tomahawk," and made vows of everlasting friendship.

THE TREATY BETWEEN THE DUTCH AND

The Indians liked the Dutch

The fur trade

The Indians liked the Dutch, who often visited them in their wigwams and sat around their camp fires. The fur trade grew rapidly. The Indians hunted and trapped as never before. They paddled up the Hudson, and crossed over to lakes George and Champlain. They went up the Mohawk far beyond where Schenectady now is, plunged deeper into the unbroken forests, and even climbed the mountains in search of fur-coated animals. The favorite fur-bearing animal was the beaver. Besides, the otter, mink, and weasel were hunted.

When the fur pack was made up the dusky hunters from every direction made their way to the nearest trading post. There they traded their furs for guns, powder, and ball, and for whatever else the white trader had that pleased Indian fancy. Great Dutch ships came every year to carry to Amsterdam and other Dutch cities rich cargoes of furs.

THE HOME OF A P

The old Van Rensselaer House at

Peter Minuit bought Manhattan Island for twenty-four dollars

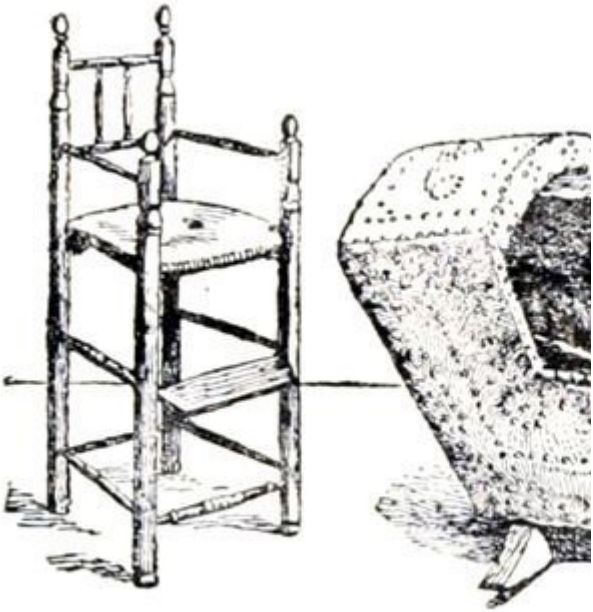
36. The Settlement of New Netherland. Already a great company of Amsterdam merchants were sending settlers, as well as fur traders, to the new colony, which now was called New Netherland. Peter Minuit, the first governor, bought the island of Manhattan from the Indians for twenty-four dollars'

worth of glass beads and other trinkets, built a town of log cabins on the end of the island, and named it New Amsterdam.

THE SALE OF MANHATTAN

Peter Minuit, who made the trade with the Indians,

But settlers did not come rapidly enough, so the company offered its members large tracts of land and the title of "patroon" or "patron," on the condition that they plant colonies at their own expense. Each patroon was to govern the people on his own land.



CHILD'S CHAIR ANI

Furniture used by th

The patroons and their way of living

The greatest of the patroons was Van Rensselaer, whose plantation in the region of Fort Orange included one thousand square miles. The farmers and servants on these plantations looked upon the patroon as being much above them in authority and social position.

Every year the farmers and their families came with their wagons filled with what they had raised to pay

the patroon for the use of the land. He set them a great feast, and there was merrymaking all day long.

A wicked Indian war

The growth of New Netherland attracted bad men as well as good men. Some mean traders robbed and murdered a number of Indians not of the Five Nations. The Indians robbed and murdered in return. War broke out, and before it ended many settlements were broken up, and hundreds of settlers killed.

Parties of Indians roved day and night over Manhattan Island, killing the Dutch even in sight of Fort Amsterdam. The people blamed their governor, Kieft, and threatened to arrest him and send him to Holland. He finally made peace with the Indians just before the new governor arrived.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Henry Hudson, searching for a shorter route to India, discovered the river which now bears his name. *2.* Dutch traders built trading posts throughout the region, made a treaty with the Indians, purchased Manhattan Island, and built the town of New Amsterdam.

Study Questions. *1.* Tell the story of Henry Hudson and the *Half Moon*. *2.* What was the fate of Hudson? *3.* When was a trading post planted on Manhattan? *4.* Make a mental picture of the treaty with the Indians. *5.* How did the Dutch treatment of the Indians

compare with the Spanish? *6.* What three things did Peter Minuit do? *7.* Who were the patroons?

Suggested Readings. HUDSON: Williams, *Stories from Early New York History*, 1-4, 32-36; Wright, *Children's Stories in American History*, 292-299; Griffis, *Romance of Discovery*, 233-245.

FAMOUS PEOPLE IN EARLY VIRGINIA

JOHN SMITH THE SAVIOR OF VIRGINIA, AND POCAHONTAS ITS GOOD ANGEL

37. The First Permanent English Settlement. Raleigh had made it impossible for Englishmen to forget America. They sent out ships every year to trade with the Indians. In 1606 a great company was formed of London merchants and other rich men to plant a colony in Virginia.

THE SITE OF JAMI

After a drawing made early in the nineteenth century

Raleigh's wish comes true

King James gave them a charter, ministers preached sermons about Virginia, and poets sang her praises. At Christmas time one of Raleigh's old sea captains, Newport, sailed with a colony of more than one hundred settlers. They went by way of the West Indies, and the Spaniards, although watching, did not dare to attack them.

JOHN SMITH

From an engraving made by Simon van Pass, in 1614, on t of "New England" in "A Description of New England." This thirty-seven

Jamestown settled, 1607

In the spring, when Virginia is in her gayest dress, the ships sailed up Chesapeake Bay into the James River, and landed on a peninsula. Here they began to plant Jamestown, named in honor of their king, the first permanent English settlement in the New World.

Settlers still hunt for gold

They first built a fort to protect them from any attacks of Indians and Spaniards. But most of the settlers wanted to get rich quick, go back to England, and spend the rest of their days in ease. Therefore, instead of building comfortable houses and raising something to eat, they spent their time in searching for gold.

The result was that most of them fell sick and food grew scarce. Within a few months more than half of the settlers were dead, and the others were discouraged and homesick. Would this colony fail, too, as Raleigh's colony had?

38. John Smith. There was one man, however, in the colony who could make Jamestown a success. He bore the plain name of John Smith. But he was no common man. John Smith had already had as wonderful adventures as the knights of old.

John Smith, a soldier

While yet a young man he went to the land of dikes

and windmills to help the brave Hollanders fight against the Spaniards. But he grew tired of seeing Christians fighting one another, and resolved to go and fight the Turks. On his way he was robbed in France and left half dead in a great forest, but was rescued and made his way to the sea. Then he sailed with a colony of pilgrims going to the Holy Land. After many adventures John Smith found himself in eastern Europe. He was made captain of a troop of cavalry and was soon fighting the Turks. In three hand-to-hand combats, Captain Smith slew his enemies, cut off their heads, and presented them to his commander.

Smith wins a queer coat of arms

The Christian army looked on Smith as a hero, and the ruler of the land gave him a shield with three Turks' heads painted on it as a coat of arms. The Turks afterwards captured Smith and made a slave of him. His master's cruelty was so great that Smith slew him, mounted his horse, and rode away to Russia. He finally returned to England in time to talk with Captain Newport about America. Just such a man was needed in founding Jamestown.

Fails to gain his position but works instead of sulking

The king had made Smith an officer of the new colony, but the other officers would not permit him

to take part in governing Virginia. John Smith was not a man to sulk and idle his time away, but resolved to do something useful, by visiting the Indians and gathering food for the colony.

Taken prisoner by the Indians

While on an expedition up the Chickahominy, Smith's party was attacked by two hundred Indians. Smith seized his Indian guide, tied him in front for a shield, and with his gun was able to hold the Indians at bay until he fell into a swamp and had to surrender.

SMITH SHOWING HIS POCKET CO

He immediately showed the red men his ivory pocket compass. They saw the little needle tremble on its pivot, but could not touch it. He wrote a letter to Jamestown. An Indian took it and returned with the articles asked for in the letter. This was still more

mysterious than the compass.

Smith learns how Indians live

The Indians marched him from one village to another to show off their prisoner. This gave Smith a chance to learn a great deal about the Indians. Some of them lived in houses made of the bark and branches of trees; others had rude huts to shelter them. Now and then a wigwam was seen large enough to hold several families.

The Indian warriors painted their bodies to make themselves look fierce. They carried bows and arrows and clubs as weapons, for they had no guns at that time. The men did the hunting and fighting, but in other things they were lazy. The Indian women not only cared for the children, did the cooking, and made the clothes, but also gathered wood, tilled the soil, and built the wigwams. The Indian wife was the warrior's drudge.

AN INDIAN WARRIOR

An Indian council tries Smith

Smith saw a more wonderful sight still, when he was led to the village where lived Powhatan. The old chief had prepared a real surprise for this Englishman. Powhatan, tall, gaunt, and grim, was wrapped in a robe of raccoon skins. He sat upon a bench before the wigwam fire. His wives sat at his side. Along the walls stood a row of women with faces and shoulders painted bright red, and with chains of white shells about their necks. In front of the women stood Powhatan's fierce warriors. This council of Indians was to decide the fate of Smith.

Smith's rescue by Pocahontas

Two big stones were rolled in front of Powhatan, and a number of powerful warriors sprang upon Smith, dragged him to the stones, and forced his head upon one of them. As the warriors stood, clubs in hand, ready to slay Smith, Pocahontas, the beautiful twelve-year-old daughter of Powhatan, rushed forward, threw her arms around the prisoner, and begged for his life.

Pocahontas had her way. Powhatan adopted Smith as a son and set him to making toys for the little maid. This was strange work for the man who had fought the Spaniards and slain the Turks, and who was to save a colony. This story is doubted by some people, but is believed by many good historians.

Pocahontas proves a friend in need

After a time Smith returned to Jamestown only to

find the settlers facing starvation, and the officers planning to escape to England in the colony's only vessels. He promptly arrested the leaders and restored order. In a few days a band of Indians, led by Pocahontas, entered the fort. They were loaded down with baskets of corn.

The fear of starvation was now gone, because every few days the little maiden came with food for the settlers. Ever afterwards they called her "the dear blessed Pocahontas." She was the good angel of the colony.

Powhatan refuses to give any more corn

When winter came on, Smith resolved to secure another supply of corn. But Powhatan had noticed the increase of settlers and the building of more houses. He feared that his people might be driven from their hunting grounds. Smith knew that Powhatan's women had raised plenty of corn, so immediately sailed up the river to the old chief's village.

Pocahontas shows her friendship

Powhatan bluntly told Smith he could have no corn unless he would give a good English sword for each basketful. Smith promptly refused, and compelled the Indians to carry the corn on board his boat. That very night, at the risk of her life, Pocahontas stole through the woods to tell Smith of her father's plot to kill his men. They kept close watch all night, and

next morning sailed safely away.

But Smith needed still more corn, and stopped at another Indian town. Suddenly he found himself and his men surrounded by several hundred Indian warriors. A moment's delay, and all would have been over. Smith rushed into the chief's wigwam, seized him by the scalp-lock, dragged him out before his astonished warriors, pointed a pistol at his breast, and demanded corn. He got it; and the English sailed back to Jamestown with three hundred bushels of corn on board.

Smith induces the settlers to go to work

Industry brings contentment

When spring came Smith resolved that the settlers must go to work. He called them together and made a speech declaring that "he that will not work shall not eat. You shall not only gather for yourself, but for those that are sick. They shall not starve." The people in the colony not only planted more grain, but repaired the fort and built more and better houses. Thus they grew happier and more contented with their home in the Virginia woods.

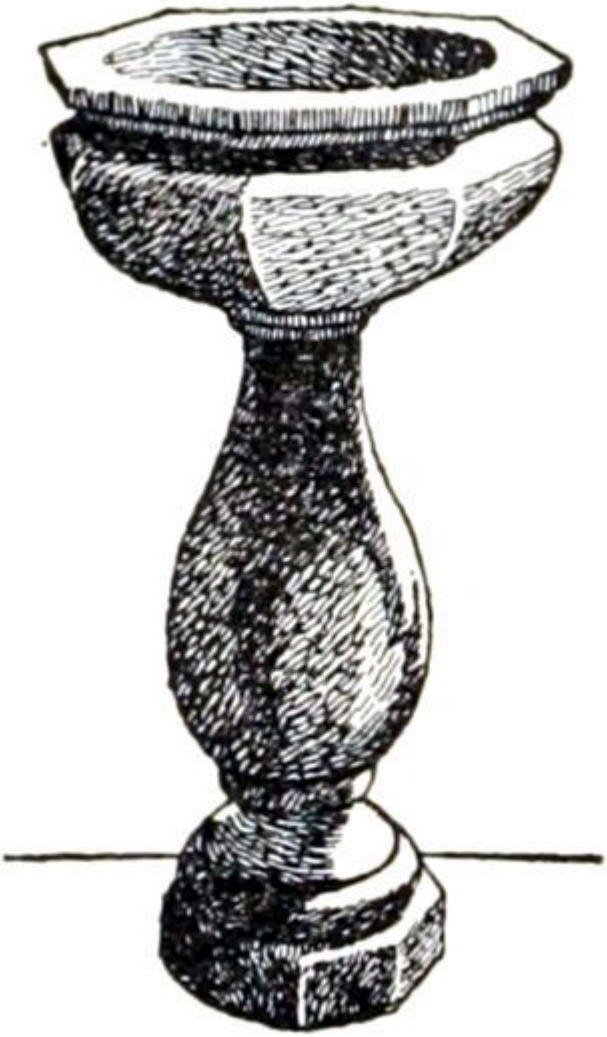
Smith returns to England

Unfortunately for the colony, Smith was wounded so

badly by an explosion of gunpowder that he had to return to England for medical treatment. The settlers again fell into idleness after he left, and many of them died. Still the colony had gained such a foothold that it was strong enough to live.

Some years later, Smith sailed to America again, explored the coast from Penobscot Bay to Cape Cod, drew a map of it, and named the region New England. This was his last visit to America.

39. Pocahontas. After John Smith left, Pocahontas did not visit the English any more. One time she was seized by an Englishman, put on board a vessel, and carried weeping to Jamestown.



JAMESTOWN BAPTISMAL FONT

From this font, now in Bruton Parish Church, Va., it is Pocahontas was baptized

Before long an English settler, John Rolfe, fell in love

with her and she with him. What should they do? Did not this beautiful maiden of eighteen years have a strange religion? But she was anxious to learn about the white man's religion, so the minister at Jamestown baptized her and gave her the Christian name of Rebecca.

THE MARRIAGE OF ROLFE A

After the painting by He

The wedding took place in the little wooden church. No doubt it was made bright with the wild flowers of Virginia and that all the settlers crowded to see the

strange event. Powhatan gave his consent, but would not come to the wedding himself. But we may be sure that the sisters and brothers and the Indian friends of Pocahontas were there.

Pocahontas marries John Rolfe

Settlers and Indians become good friends

It was a happy day in Jamestown, for all the people, white and red, loved Pocahontas. The marriage of Pocahontas and John Rolfe was taken to mean the uniting of the Indians and settlers by ties of peace and friendship. For several years white men and red men lived as good neighbors. Rolfe took Pocahontas to England, where she was received "as the daughter of a king." The fine people, lords and ladies, called on her; and the king and queen received her at court as if she were a princess of the royal blood.

Lady Rebecca treated like a princess

How different the rich clothes, the carriages, and the high feasting from her simple life in the woods of Virginia! Here, too, she met her old friend, John Smith. He called her "Lady Rebecca," as did everybody. But the memory of other days and other

scenes came before her mind. She covered her face with her hands for a moment, and then said he must call her "child," and that she would call him "father." Smith must have thought of the days when she brought corn to Jamestown to feed his starving people.

POCAHONTAS

After the engraved portrait by Simon van Pass, known a
portrait and now at Scalthorpe Hall, Nor

Pocahontas

dies in England

When about to sail for her native land, Pocahontas became ill and died (1617). Her son, Thomas Rolfe, was educated in England by his father's brother, but later he returned to the land of his mother. He became the ancestor of many noted Virginians; among these the best known was the famous orator and statesman, John Randolph of Roanoke.

So ended the life of one who had indeed been a good and true friend of the people of Virginia. Her name, Pocahontas, meant "Bright Stream between Two Hills."

LORD BALTIMORE, IN A PART OF VIRGINIA, FOUNDS MARYLAND AS A HOME FOR PERSECUTED CATHOLICS (1634) AND WELCOMES PROTESTANTS

Religious disputes drove people to America

40. A Colony of Catholics and Protestants. When the people of England began to change their religion, some became Puritans, others members of the English Church, and still others Catholics. Great disputes arose among the religious sects. There was much persecution. To escape this, many English people fled to the New World. The Puritans settled in New England, and the Cavalier members of the English Church found new homes in Virginia.

George Calvert desired to find a home for his people, the Catholics. He had studied at Oxford University, and had been secretary to one of Queen Elizabeth's great statesmen. When James I became king, he made Calvert Baron of Baltimore.

Charles I gives Baltimore a part of Virginia

His successor, Charles I, was also Baltimore's friend, and when the latter asked the king for permission to found a colony of Catholics in America, Charles gave him the whole of what is now Maryland. He also declared that the colony should bear the name of Maryland in honor of his queen, Henrietta Maria.

All permitted to worship as they pleased

Lord Baltimore immediately began to gather a colony of emigrants. He welcomed Protestants as well as Catholics, for it was decided that in the colony of Maryland all Christians were to have the same rights. Very few nations in the world at that time permitted people to worship as they pleased.

Lord Baltimore died before the expedition was ready, and according to the custom of England, Cecil Calvert, his eldest son, fell heir to his estate and titles. The new Lord Baltimore sent more than three hundred persons in two ships, the *Ark* and the *Dove*. The long voyage had a happy ending; the immigrants reached the mouth of the Potomac in the springtime, when Maryland is at the height of its beauty (1634).

The Indians are friendly

Governor Calvert, in the *Dove*, sailed up the Potomac. He decided to locate his little village, which was to be called St. Mary's, on land occupied by the Indians. He paid for the land on which the

wigwams and cornfields stood, and the Indians invited the settlers to live with them until their log cabins could be built. This good feeling lasted a long time, and these settlers escaped the savage wars from which many of the colonists suffered in the early days.

Annapolis founded

Many Puritans came into Maryland and settled a town afterwards named Annapolis. A number of interesting events took place there in the early days. Later the city became the home of the famous training school for the American navy, the United States Naval Academy.

GOVERNOR CALVERT LOCATING TH

Once Baltimore's authority was taken away because there were some disputes with a Virginian high in authority. The Puritans joined him and overthrew Baltimore's rule. Later, however, his authority was restored and religious freedom reëstablished.

Baltimore settled

Baltimore, named after the founder of the colony, and afterward the most important town of Maryland, was settled in 1720.

INDUSTRIES, MANNERS, AND CUSTOMS OF FIRST SETTLERS OF VIRGINIA

The Jamestown colony prospers

41. How the Virginia Colonists Lived. After the first hardships the colony grew and prospered. Ships continued to bring settlers from England and other countries of Europe. In a few years the little settlement at Jamestown was surrounded on all sides by newly cleared farms.

The planters grow rich

To any one living to-day the old colony would seem strange indeed. There were practically no towns; almost every one lived on a large farm, called a plantation. On these plantations were great fields of tobacco, whose broad leaves in summer almost concealed the ground. Here and there a field of corn could be seen, but little else was grown. After a time the owners, or planters, built themselves great houses and kept an army of servants to grow the crops and do the work about the house. The planters did no work with their hands, but looked after their estates and enjoyed such pleasures as hunting and horseback riding. Many of these old places were the scenes of brilliant dinners and balls at which the fine

ladies and gentlemen of the colony gathered.

Negro slaves are brought to Virginia

Many poor people in England wanted to come to America, but had no money. To pay for the cost of bringing them over, these people were forced to work for the planters, often for six years or more. During this time they were almost slaves, but at the end of their service they became free. Then negroes were brought from Africa, and soon most of the work was done by black slaves.

Tobacco supported the colony and made the planters wealthy. It bought the food, clothes, and luxuries, and paid the taxes. It was even used as money, and people reckoned the value of an article in pounds of tobacco, as we do in dollars and cents. Most of the crop was shipped to England. The plantations lay along creeks or rivers up which boats could sail from the sea. When the tobacco was cured, it was packed in hogsheads, which were then rolled on board ship.

A famous robber and trader

42. Blackbeard the Pirate. The streams on which the planters shipped their goods also served as hiding places for pirates. When these sea robbers had plundered a ship on the open sea, they would hide away in a bend of one of the wooded streams. Most famous of these lawless men was Blackbeard. For years his very name was a terror to sailors along the coast. He plundered scores of merchant ships before

he was run down and captured.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* London merchants carried out Raleigh's idea by planting a colony in Virginia. *2.* John Smith saved the colony by putting the settlers to work, by trading with the Indians, and by winning the friendship of Pocahontas. *3.* Lord Baltimore, a Catholic, got permission to plant a colony in Virginia; he named it Maryland, and the first settlement, St. Mary's. *4.* Protestants as well as Catholics were welcomed in the new colony. *5.* Negroes were brought to Virginia as slaves.

Study Questions. *1.* How long did it take Captain Newport to reach Virginia? *2.* How long does it take a ship to cross the Atlantic now? *3.* Why were the settlers afraid of the Indians and Spaniards? *4.* Why did the Virginia settlers hunt for gold instead of raising something to eat? *5.* What did Smith learn about the Indians? *6.* Show how Pocahontas was a friend of the colony. *7.* Tell the story of George Calvert, Lord Baltimore. *8.* How was the colony different from that at Jamestown? *9.* Picture the settlers at St. Mary's. *10.* What town did the Puritans establish? *11.* When was the richest and most important town in Maryland settled, and after whom was it named? *12.* Why were slaves brought to Virginia? *13.* Tell the story of Blackbeard.

Suggested Readings. SMITH: McMurry, *Pioneers on Land and Sea*, 68-102; Hart, *Source Book*, 33-37; Higginson, *American Explorers*, 231-246.

BALTIMORE: Pratt, *Early Colonies*, 132-137; Smith and Dutton, *The Colonies*, 39-50; Sparks, *American Biography*, 5-229.

PILGRIMS AND PURITANS IN NEW ENGLAND

MILES STANDISH, THE PILGRIM SOLDIER, AND THE STORY OF "PLYMOUTH ROCK"

They board the "Speedwell"

The Pilgrims' dearest country

43. The Pilgrims. Persecuted for their religion in England, the Pilgrims first went to Holland. There they wandered from place to place, finally settling in the city of Leiden. But they saw that they could not keep their own language and customs among the Dutch, so they decided to go to America and found a colony of their own. John Carver, William Bradford, William Brewster, and Edward Winslow were the leaders of the little band that had chosen to go on the long and dangerous journey. The parting was sad. Eyes were wet with weeping and voices were choked with sorrow as the last words were spoken before going on board the *Speedwell*. Even the Dutch bystanders were moved to tears. Listen to the words of Bradford: "So they left that goodly and pleasant city which had been their resting place nearly twelve years; but they knew they were Pilgrims, and looked not much on those things, but lifted up their eyes to the heavens, their dearest country, and quieted their spirits."

The *Speedwell* carried them across to England, where they found the *Mayflower*.

The "Mayflower" carried the Pilgrims to America

In August, 1620, the two ships spread their sails for America. Twice they were forced to return—once after they had sailed three hundred miles—because the *Speedwell* was leaking, and her captain declared she would sink before reaching America.

Storms did not drive them back

Finally the *Mayflower*, with one hundred two Pilgrims on board, started alone. Not many days passed before great storms overtook her. The waves rolled over her deck and threatened to swallow her. For many days the passengers had to spend nearly all the time below deck, not knowing what moment would be their last. Strained by the storm, the *Mayflower* also began to leak, but the stout-hearted Pilgrims would not turn back.

EMBARKATION OF THE PI

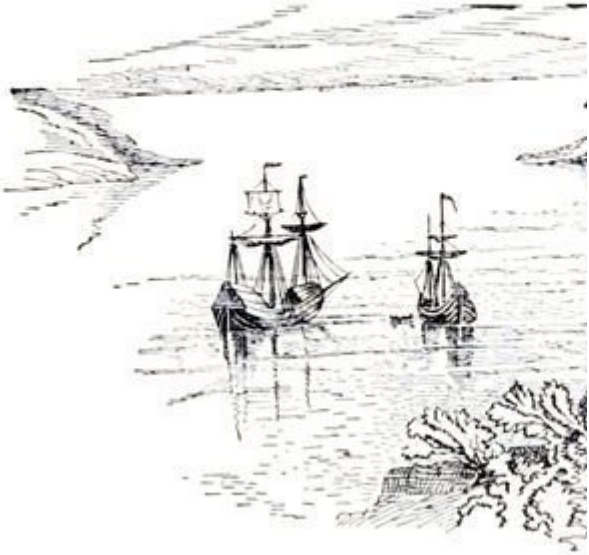
After the original painting by

How they missed the Hudson

Signing the compact

44. Landing of the Pilgrims in America. For days at a time, during the storm, the ship could not use her sails and was driven far out of her course, to the

northward. The Pilgrims had intended to land near the mouth of the Hudson, but on November 20, 1620, the little band of exiles found themselves looking with glad hearts upon the sandy but heavily-wooded shores of Cape Cod. How they poured out their hearts in gratitude that they had crossed the stormy sea in safety! The men all gathered in the little cabin of the *Mayflower* to sign a compact or an agreement in regard to the government of the colony. Then they elected John Carver their first governor.



THE "MAYFLOWER" AND THE "SPEEDWI

It was to this harbor the Pilgrims returned to

Everybody was now anxious to get on shore. Captain Miles Standish, with an exploring party of sixteen

men, each armed with a sword and a musket and equipped with a corselet, waded ashore through the ice-cold water and disappeared in the dark forest in search of a good place to plant the colony.

Miles Standish and his men explore the region

For three days they tramped through forests, up and down hills, and along the sandy coast, but found no suitable place. They found springs, however, and ponds of fresh water, and some Indian mounds containing stores of corn. What should they do, take the corn, or leave it and run the risk of starvation? They decided to take only enough to plant in the spring. They afterwards paid the owners double for what they had taken.

They learn to set snares

Everywhere they saw flocks of wild fowl, good for food, and the tracks of wild deer. While Bradford was examining an Indian snare set for game he found himself suddenly swinging by one leg in the air. They had a hearty laugh, and learned a new lesson in the art of catching game!

READING THE COMPACT ON BOARD

Their first Indian battle

Twice again Standish led his little company to search out a place. On the third trip, as they were at breakfast, their ears were suddenly filled with the most fearful shouts. A shower of arrows fell near them. It was an Indian attack. Captain Standish and his men seized their guns and fired at the red men as fast as they could. Happily, the Indians, frightened by the roar and smoke of English muskets, ran away before any one was killed on either side.

Plymouth Harbor chosen

"Plymouth Rock"

On this trip they found the harbor of Plymouth, which John Smith had explored and named several years before. Its shore was now to become their home. They immediately hastened back to the ship to tell the good news, and in a few days the *Mayflower* carried the Pilgrims into Plymouth Harbor. The little party landed on December 21, 1620, and that day is still celebrated as "Forefathers' Day." The story is that when they landed they stepped on a large stone—a bowlder, itself a "pilgrim"—brought there by the mighty ice sheet ages ago. This bowlder is called "Plymouth Rock," and may still be seen in Plymouth.

45. Their Home in the Forest. Although it was winter, the men immediately began to chop down trees and build a great log storehouse which could be used for a hospital and for worship.

Building a

town in the woods

Then they began building their own homes. They cut down the trees, sawed off the logs, hewed them roughly, and then dragged them by hand to the place where the house was to stand. When the logs were ready the men lifted them up by hand, or when the walls grew too high for lifting they slid them up "skids."

The roof was made of boards which had been split from logs of wood. These were held in place by smaller logs. The wind and rain were kept out by "chinking" or daubing the cracks between the logs with mortar. The windows were few and small, for they had no glass and used oiled skins instead.

This first winter in America was the saddest the Pilgrims had ever seen. Their storehouse was turned into a hospital. They had been used to the gentler winters of England and Holland. Before the warm days of spring came, one half of the little band had perished, among them Governor Carver. But the Pilgrims bore brave hearts, and not a man or woman among those left went back to England when the *Mayflower* sailed.

MILES STANDISH

From a portrait now in possession of Mrs. A. M.

True courage

46. Friendship with the Indians. Brave Miles Standish kept his little army—what was left of it—ready for any danger. He built a fort on a hill, and mounted the cannon brought over in the *Mayflower*.

Samoset introduces them to the Indians

But the Indians were not so bad after all, for had it not been for them, the Pilgrims would have had a much harder time. One day while the leaders were talking over military affairs, they saw a fine-looking Indian coming toward them. He called out in the English language, "Welcome! Welcome!" This was a double surprise. The Indian was Samoset, who had already saved the lives of two white men taken by the Indians.

In a few days Samoset brought other Indians, dressed in deer and panther skins. They made the Pilgrims think of gypsies seen in Holland. Their long black hair was braided and ornamented with feathers and foxtails. They sang and danced for the Pilgrims.

Massasoit visits the Pilgrims

When Samoset came again, he brought Squanto, an Indian who had been captured and carried to London, and who could speak English. They gave the news that the great Indian chief, Massasoit, was coming to visit his strange neighbors.

POUNDING CORN TO MAK

A messenger was sent to welcome him and to give him presents. Massasoit, and twenty other Indians without bows and arrows, were met by Captain Standish, and escorted into the presence of Bradford,

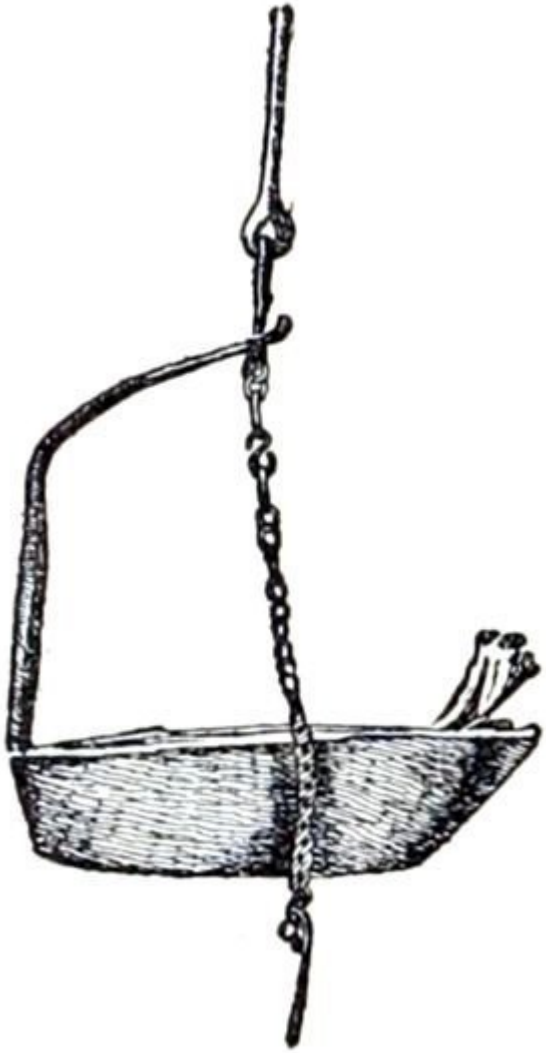
the longtime governor of Plymouth. They agreed not to harm each other, and to be friends forever.

What the Pilgrims learned from Squanto

Squanto taught the Pilgrims many new things. He showed them how to raise corn by putting dead fish in the hill when planting corn, how to hoe the corn while growing, and how to pound the corn to make meal. Indian corn proved to be the Pilgrims' best food crop.

INDIANS TEACHING THE PILGRIM

They had no means of fishing, but Squanto taught them how to catch eels by wading into shallow water, and treading them out with their feet. From the Indians the white men also learned how to make Indian shoes or moccasins, and snowshoes, birch-bark canoes, and other useful things.



GOVERNOR CARVER'S LAMP

The first summer was now over and the Pilgrims' first harvest had been gathered. Their houses had been repaired, and the health of the settlers was good. Fish and wild game were plentiful. They decided that

the time for rejoicing and thanksgiving had also come, and invited Massasoit and his warriors to join them in the celebration.

The first American Thanksgiving

For three days the games, military movements, feastings, and rejoicing went on, and at the end the Pilgrims and Indians were better friends than before. This was the beginning of our custom of having a day of thanksgiving each year.

More Pilgrims from Holland and England

For a whole year the Pilgrims had not heard a word from the great world across the sea. How eager they must have been for just one word from their old homes! One day the Indians sent runners to tell them that a ship was in sight. The cannon boomed on the hilltop. Captain Standish and his men ran for their guns and stood ready to defend the colony against Spaniards or French. But it was a ship with news and friends from Leiden and England.

After a few weeks this ship returned to England loaded with furs, clapboards, and sassafras to pay those English merchants who had furnished the Pilgrims the *Mayflower* to bring them to America.

WEDDING SLIPPER WORN BY A N

An Indian's challenge to war

An Indian chief, not far away, decided that he would rather fight with the Englishmen than be friendly with them. So he sent a bundle of arrows, wrapped in a rattlesnake's skin, to the governor of Plymouth. Squanto told the Pilgrims that this was an Indian's challenge to war.

Bradford's answer

The Pilgrims were men of peace, but they were not cowards. Governor Bradford filled the skin with powder and shot and sent it back to the hostile chief. But the Indians would not touch it and the chief would not permit it to be left in his wigwam an hour, but sent it from place to place, until it again reached Plymouth.

Thus the Pilgrims went on year by year, living in peace when they could, but fighting when they must. Every year or so new settlers came from their old homes, and the colony grew slowly, but steadily.

The Pilgrims the most famous of all the Puritans in America

After a few years the new King of England was so hard upon the Puritans in England that thousands of them followed the example of the Pilgrims and came to America, and planted many other colonies in New England. But none have held so warm a place in the hearts of Americans as the little band brought to the New World by the *Mayflower*.

JOHN WINTHROP, THE FOUNDER OF BOSTON; JOHN ELIOT, THE GREAT ENGLISH MISSIONARY; AND KING PHILIP, AN INDIAN CHIEF THE EQUAL OF THE WHITE MAN

Colony at Salem

47. The Puritans. While the Pilgrims were planting their home on the lonely American shore, the Puritans in England were being cruelly persecuted by Charles I. So great became their sufferings and dangers that the Puritan leaders decided to go to America, where they could worship as they pleased. Charles I, fortunately, gave them a very good charter. But even before this, some of the Puritans had already planted a colony at Salem.

JOHN WINTHROP

From a portrait painted by John Singleton Copley; reprodu
of the trustees of Harvard University

John Winthrop founded Boston, 1630

48. John Winthrop. The Puritan leaders elected John Winthrop governor of the new colony. In the spring of 1630, nearly ten years after the *Mayflower* sailed, more than seven hundred Puritans, in eleven ships, bade good-by to their beautiful English homes, crossed the ocean, and settled in what is now Boston.

John Winthrop, the leader and governor of the Colony of Massachusetts Bay, the name given to the Salem and Boston settlements, was then about forty years old, and had been in college at Cambridge, in England. He was a man of high social position.

What the Puritans gave up

The Puritans who came with Winthrop were people of property, and not only parted from friends and kindred when they came to the wild shores of America, but both men and women gave up lives of comfort and pleasure for lives of suffering and hardship. In America, the men had to cut down trees, work in the fields, and fight Indians. Only brave men and women act in this way. But no one among them gave up more or was willing to suffer more than their leader. The people elected him governor almost every year until his death, in 1649.

Character of Winthrop

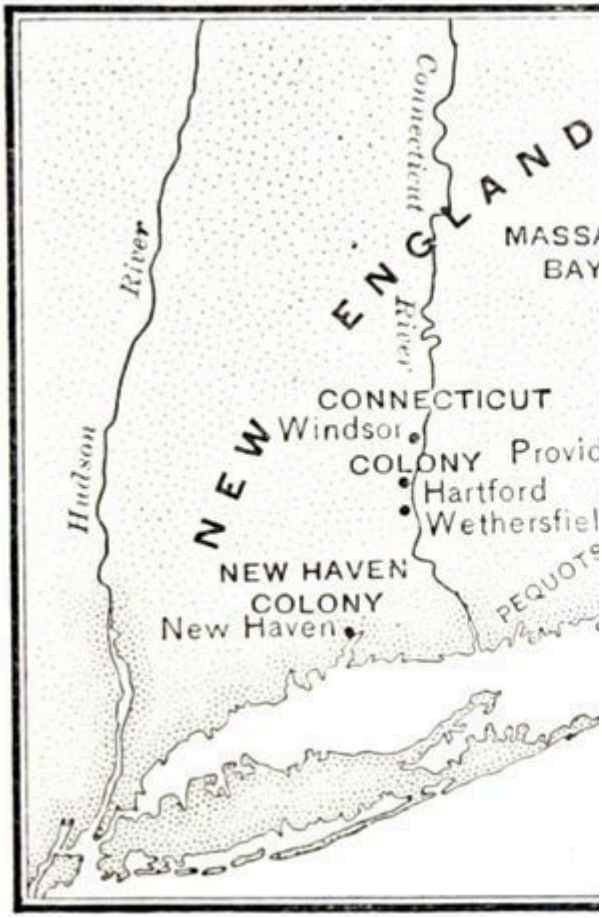
John Winthrop was a firm man with many noble qualities, and not once, while governor, did he do anything merely to please the people if he thought it wrong.

When a leading man in the colony sent him a bitter letter, he returned it saying that he did not wish to keep near him so great a cause of ill feeling. This answer made the writer Winthrop's friend. When food was scarce in the colony, Winthrop divided his last bit of bread with the poor, and worked with his laborers in the fields.

Many new towns in Massachusetts

While Winthrop was ruling the colony, hundreds of settlers came and settled many other towns around Boston, and the Massachusetts Bay Colony grew large in the number of its people. Later the old Plymouth Colony was united with it to form one colony. But these settlers did not always agree, especially in regard to religion and government.

JOHN ELIOT, A SUCCESSFUL MISSIONARY TO THE INDIANS



THE NEW ENGLAND SI

Eliot translates the Bible

49. John Eliot. The treatment of the Indians by the colonists was generally just and kind. Trading with the white man had brought the Indians better food and clothing. Schools were being set up to give them some of the white man's education, and many preachers tried to teach them to become Christians. One man who spent his whole life in this work was John Eliot. His first care was to learn the language of the Indians of Massachusetts. He succeeded so well that he was able to translate the entire Bible into the Indian language and to preach to the Indians in their native tongue.

The converts that he made he gathered together into communities which settled near the English towns. These converts were taught how to build themselves log cabins and to live and dress like the English. The principal village established by Eliot was at Natick, Massachusetts. Others quickly followed Eliot's example, and several other Christian Indian villages sprang up. These communities flourished, and in a few years Eliot could count as many as four thousand converts among the Indians of Massachusetts.

Eliot continued to preach until his death in 1690. Even the fierce King Philip's War could not check his success.

KING PHILIP, INDIAN CHIEF AND HATER OF WHITE MEN

The Indians are persecuted

50. King Philip. After the death of old Massasoit the friendship between Pilgrims and Indians soon came to an end. More and more white settlers came in and built homes. The Indians began to fear that they would be crowded out of the country which belonged to them and to their fathers before them. No longer were they treated with respect as at first. They were a proud people, and grew bitter because they saw that they were despised.

One of the proudest of the race was Philip, son of Massasoit and ruler of his people. Several times the governor of Plymouth forced him to do things against his will. This hurt the pride of Philip, and he began to hate the English. His own people also came to him frequently with complaints against the white men. Philip grew surly, while the colonists began to distrust him.

The bad feeling grew on both sides, and gradually both Indians and colonists came to believe all the evil stories that were told of each other. Both sides collected arms, powder, and lead. After a short while war with all its horrors began. The Indians burned many villages and massacred hundreds of white men,

women, and children.

Philip is defeated and killed

There was much fighting, and finally the Indians were completely defeated. Most of the braves were killed; those who were captured were sold as slaves. Philip's family was killed or captured. He himself fled to a swamp, where he met death at the hands of one of his own people.

INDUSTRIES, MANNERS, AND CUSTOMS

The Pilgrims have a hard struggle

51. How the New England Colonists Lived. The Puritans and the Pilgrims had a hard struggle in their new homes. The winters were long and colder than in England. For the cold weather they had to build warm houses and barns, and store up much grain, hay, and provisions. The summers were cool and short; tobacco and even corn did not ripen so well as in Virginia. Most of the land was hilly and stony and hard to cultivate. But these things did not discourage the settlers, who merely worked so much harder. Soon they raised all the corn, wheat, cattle, and sheep they needed, and even had some left to sell. Where the streams had waterfalls they built mills with big water wheels. In these they ground their flour and meal and sawed their lumber.

While the men farmed the land, or ran mills, or fished, the women also did their share of the work. They made butter and cheese, spun and wove the wool into cloth, and made many other things which now we buy from stores.

The Pilgrims build

towns and villages

Unlike the Virginia colonists, many people of New England lived in towns and villages. They built churches, schools, and town halls. All the people went to church. Most of the children attended school. Whenever any question arose in which every one was interested, they talked it over at the town meeting. In these ways the New England colonists differed from the Virginians.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* The Puritans first migrated to Holland to gain religious freedom. *2.* Later they decided to go to America, where they planted the colony of Plymouth, made peace with the Indians, and began to worship in their own way. *3.* John Winthrop founded the Massachusetts Bay Colony of 700 Puritans. *4.* He was such a good governor that he was elected almost every year until his death. *5.* John Eliot converted many Indians and established several Christian Indian communities. *6.* King Philip was goaded into a war with the whites of Massachusetts. *7.* He was defeated and treacherously killed.

Study Questions. *1.* Why did the Pilgrims decide to leave England? *2.* What new danger threatened them in Holland? *3.* Picture the *Mayflower* in a storm at sea. *4.* Tell the story of Miles Standish and his little army. *5.* What useful things did the Pilgrims

learn from the Indians? *6.* Why would putting dead fish in the hill help the corn to grow? *7.* Why have Americans loved the Pilgrims so well? *8.* How did the Pilgrims' treatment of the Indians compare with that of the Spaniards? *9.* Tell the story of John Winthrop and the Puritans. *10.* Tell the story of John Eliot. *11.* What did he do before he began to teach the Indians? *12.* Tell the story of King Philip.

Suggested Readings. PILGRIMS AND PURITANS: Pumphrey, *Pilgrim Stories*; Warren, *The Little Pioneers*; Hart, *Colonial Children*, 136-140, 177-182; Glascock, *Stories of Columbia*, 69-81; Pratt, *Early Colonies*, 113-123; Drake, *Making of New England*, 67-87, 149-186; Hart, *Source Book*, 45-48; Higginson, *American Explorers*, 341-361.

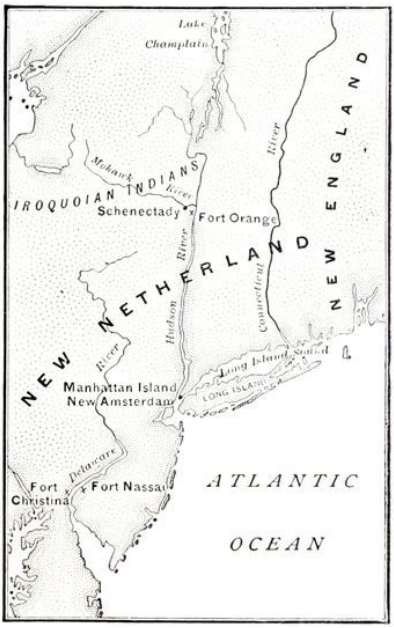
JOHN ELIOT: Tappan, *American Hero Stories*, 59-72, 84-96.

THE MEN WHO PLANTED COLONIES FOR MANY KINDS OF PEOPLE

PETER STUYVESANT, THE GREAT DUTCH GOVERNOR

Young Peter Stuyvesant

52. Peter Stuyvesant. This sturdy son of Holland was born at a time when his country was fighting hard against Spain for independence. His father was a minister, who, it may be supposed, brought up young Peter after the strict manner common to Dutch boys.



THE DUTCH SETTLEMENTS

Peter early began to study Latin. He was vain of his knowledge, and later took pride in showing it off to the settlers of New Amsterdam.

Becomes a soldier

When he left school young Peter joined the army. He found plenty of hard work; but he performed his duties as a soldier more quickly and better than some of his comrades, and before many years was given command over a Dutch colony in the West Indies.

PETER STUYVESANT

From a seventeenth-century portrait at present in the colle Society

Goes to

New Netherland

In an attack on a Portuguese fort Stuyvesant lost a leg and had to return to Holland. As soon as he was well the Dutch West India Company sent him to New Netherland (1647) to save that colony from the Indians.

What Stuyvesant said to the settlers

The arrival of Stuyvesant, with his little army and fleet of four vessels, brought great joy to the discouraged settlers and fur traders. He said to the people: "I shall reign over you as a father over his children." But he ruled the colony far more like a king than a father. He was not only commander in chief of the army, but was also lawmaker, judge, and governor, all in one.

Strict order in New Amsterdam

The new laws made by Stuyvesant showed that he intended to keep order in the colony. He forbade Sabbath-breaking, drunkenness, the sale of drink to the Indians or to any one else after the nine o'clock bell had rung. He ordered the owners of all vacant lots in New Amsterdam to improve them, and tried to fix the location of all new buildings. He taxed traders, whether they shipped goods to Europe or brought goods into New Netherland.

Stuyvesant did, indeed, restore order to the colony,

but he stirred up the people until they demanded a voice in the government. He finally agreed that they might select nine of their wisest men to advise with him. They were called the council. He had no idea of following anybody's advice unless it agreed with his own notions, but the people had gained something.

Stuyvesant and his neighbors

At the same time Stuyvesant was just as busy with his neighbors' affairs. He quarreled with the English in New England, as well as with the patroons in his own colony.

Stuyvesant claimed all the region now included in New Jersey, a large part of that in the states of New York, Delaware, and Pennsylvania, and also a part of the territory of New England.

Government by the people demanded

The colony grew in numbers. New towns sprang up along the Hudson and on Long Island. But the increase in the number of the towns only made the call for a government by the people still louder.

For several years the dispute between the people and the governor went on until, one day in 1664, news came that a fleet of English war vessels was in sight. Although England and Holland were at peace, the English king had given New Netherland to his brother, the Duke of York, and the English fleet had come to take it for the duke.

A VIEW OF THE CITY AND HARBOR OF NEW

Governor Stuyvesant was resolved to defend the colony to the last. But he was surprised to find that his people were not willing to fight for a governor who had given them so little share in governing themselves.

What Stuyvesant learned after it was too late

Brave to the last

The commander of the fleet sent a letter to Stuyvesant offering very favorable terms of surrender. The council wanted the governor to surrender, but he grew angry, tore the letter to pieces, and declared he would never give up. The

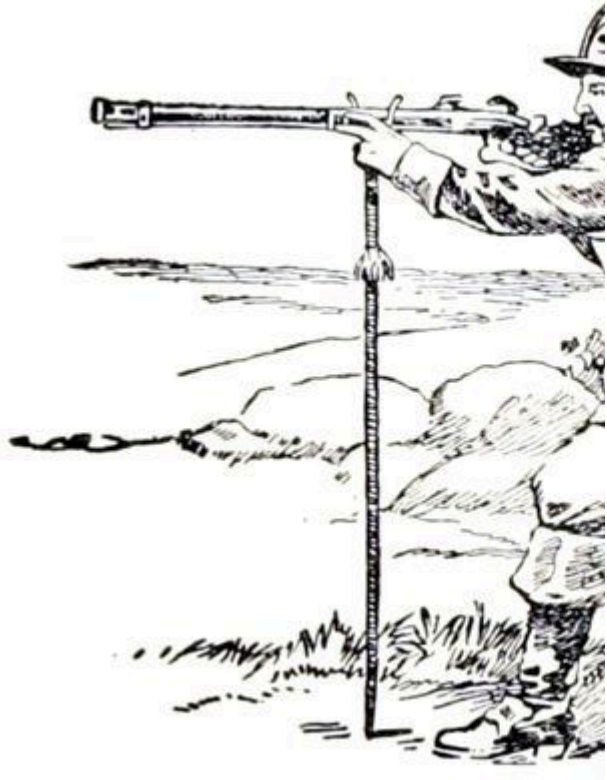
council put the pieces of the letter together and read it to the people. The minister of his own church begged the governor not to fight, and leading citizens, and mothers with their children, pleaded with Stuyvesant to surrender. Now what could the brave old Dutchman do? He could not fight a whole fleet alone. He turned sadly away, saying, "I would rather go to my grave than to surrender the city."

A DUTCH COTTAGE AND STREET S

New Netherland becomes New York

53. The Dutch Surrender to the English. The

English took possession, and the colony of New Netherland became the colony of New York, and at the same time the town of New Amsterdam became the town of New York. Fort Orange became Albany. English governors came to rule instead of Dutch governors. A few years later a Dutch fleet recaptured the colony; but, by a treaty at the close of the war, Holland returned it to England. When William and Mary came to the throne of England (1689) they gave New York a representative assembly.



A DUTCH SOL

Dutch ideas and customs remain

Although Dutch rule was gone forever, the Dutch people and Dutch ideas and customs remained. They were given no cause to regret the change. Peter Stuyvesant himself had become so attached to the colony that he came back from Holland and spent his last years on his great farm, or bowery, as the Dutch called it.

MANNERS AND CUSTOMS OF NEW NETHERLAND

54. Life in New Netherland. The Dutch colonists brought with them the quaint and simple ways of their old home in Holland—the land of dikes and windmills. Even long years after the colony had passed into the hands of the English, many places in New York remained Dutch in customs and appearance.

The colonists built houses like those in Holland

New Amsterdam looked for all the world like a city back in Holland. The houses were built solidly. They stood close to the street and had high, steep roofs with gable ends that were like series of steps. On the front of each house large iron numerals told the year in which it was built. On the roof were curious weathervanes.

About the fireplace the family gathered in the evening. The burgher would tell jovial stories to the children as he smoked his long pipe. The good wife, resting from her day's work, found some needlework to busy her fingers.

The Dutch wives were famous housekeepers and

prided themselves on their spotless homes. They scoured and scrubbed from morning to night. But they also knew how to make doughnuts and crullers and to cook good dishes that made their husbands round and good-natured and their children rosy and plump.

The Dutch liked merrymaking

The Dutch liked merrymaking and good times far better than did their Puritan neighbors. The big brass knocker on the door—shaped generally like the head of some animal—was kept busy in the afternoon by people coming to drink tea or coffee. A great copper kettle, hung in the fireplace, furnished enough to drink for every one, and sweet cookies were always on hand. They celebrated many holidays. At Christmas we still look for old Santa Claus, whom the Dutch first brought to this country.

In Holland the burghers had been good farmers and shrewd merchants. When they came to this country they continued to make their living chiefly in these two ways. On Long Island and along the Hudson River were fine farms with well-kept fields and large gardens. The merchants mostly lived at New Amsterdam, which soon became a busy seaport. Here many sailing vessels lay at anchor and exchanged their cargoes for the products of the Dutch farms and of the Indian trade. From the small beginnings made by these Dutch merchants has grown the largest city of the western world.

WILLIAM PENN, THE QUAKER, WHO FOUNDED THE CITY OF BROTHERLY LOVE

55. William Penn. One day Thomas Loe, a Quaker preacher, ventured into the old university town of Oxford. He talked with the students and explained to them the beliefs of the Quakers. He declared that all men were equal, and he refused to recognize rank or title. He taught men to live and worship in simplicity.

William Penn converted

A few students believed his teachings and resolved to become members of the hated sect of Quakers. Among them was William Penn, the son of a great naval officer, Admiral Penn. What a buzzing there was in that old college town when the news spread that William Penn, the fine scholar, the skilled oarsman, the all-round athlete, had become a Quaker!

Why Penn was expelled from college

Some of his comrades would not believe it. But when they saw him put off the cap and gown of his college,

which some of the greatest men in English history had worn with pride, and put on the plain garb of the Quakers, they gave up! The college officers were also convinced when Penn and other Quakers tore off the gowns of fellow students. The authorities promptly expelled these young and over-enthusiastic Friends.

What Penn's family and friends thought

What more disgraceful thing could happen to the family of Admiral Penn? To have a son expelled from Oxford was bad enough, but to have him become a Quaker was a disgrace not to be borne—so thought his family. The stern old admiral promptly drove him from home. But William resolutely refused to give up his Quaker views, and the admiral decided to try the plan of sending him to Paris, where life was as un-Quaker-like as it could be.

William Penn himself looked little like a Quaker. He was then eighteen years old, fine looking, with large eyes and long, dark, curly hair reaching to his shoulders.

Penn in Paris

Young Penn, however, did not entirely waste his time in the gay life of Paris. He attended school and traveled in Italy. At the end of two years he came back.

Returns

more of a Quaker than ever

It was not long before the admiral again saw Quaker signs in his son and hastened him off to Ireland to cure him entirely. But who should be preaching in Ireland but Thomas Loe. William went to hear his old preacher, and this time became a Quaker forever. No suffering was great enough to cause him ever to waver again, although fines were heaped on him and at four different times he was thrown into foul jails to be the companion of criminals.

WILLIAM PENN

At the age of 22, from a painting in the rooms of the Histo presented by his grandson, Granville Penn

Penn

refuses to lift his hat

Penn's family now felt the disgrace very keenly, but his father promised to forgive him if he would take off his hat to the king, to the king's brother, and to his father. One day, the story goes, King Charles, the merry monarch, met William Penn and others. All hats were promptly removed except the king's and Penn's. Presently the king, too, removed his hat. Whereupon, Penn said: "Friend Charles, why dost thou remove thy hat?" The king replied: "Because, wherever I am, it is customary for but one to remain covered."

Penn's father would not permit such conduct toward his royal friends. He therefore drove his son from his home a second time.

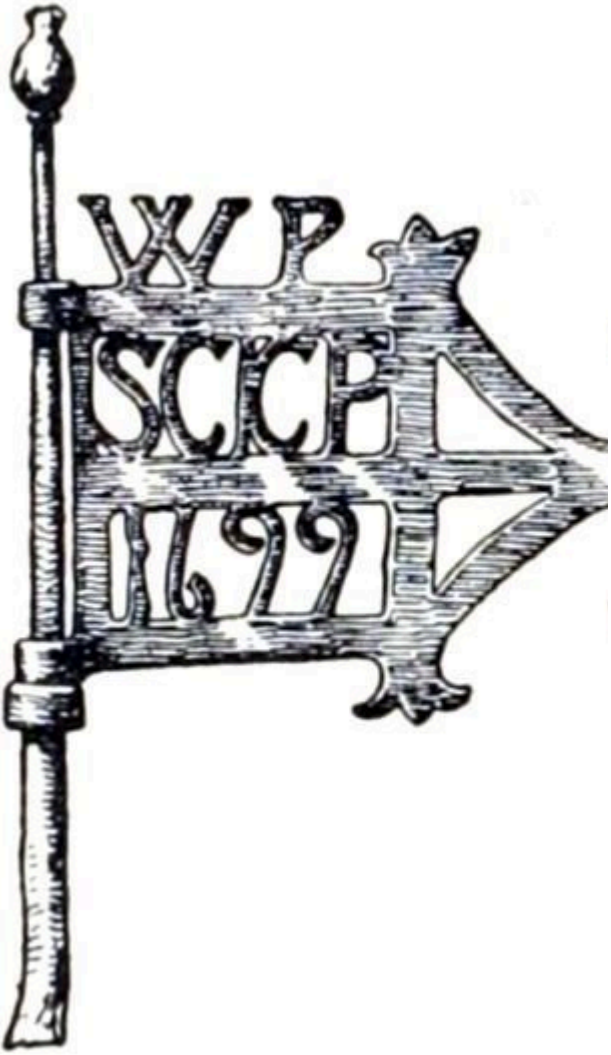
THE MEETING BETWEEN WILLIAM I

William Penn makes a noble choice

But Penn's mother finally made peace between the father and the son before the admiral died. William Penn, then but twenty-six years old, came into possession of a fortune. Once more he stood "where the roads parted." He could now be a great man and play the part of a fine English gentleman who would always be welcome at court, or he could remain a Quaker.

Turns to America

We do not know that he even thought of forsaking his Quaker comrades. On the contrary, he resolved to devote his fortune and his life to giving them relief. Like Winthrop for the Puritans and Baltimore for the Catholics, Penn thought of America for his persecuted Friends. With other Quaker leaders, he became an owner of West Jersey, part of New Jersey.



A WEATHER VANE

Set above their mill by Penn and two partners in 1699, to might blow

The king

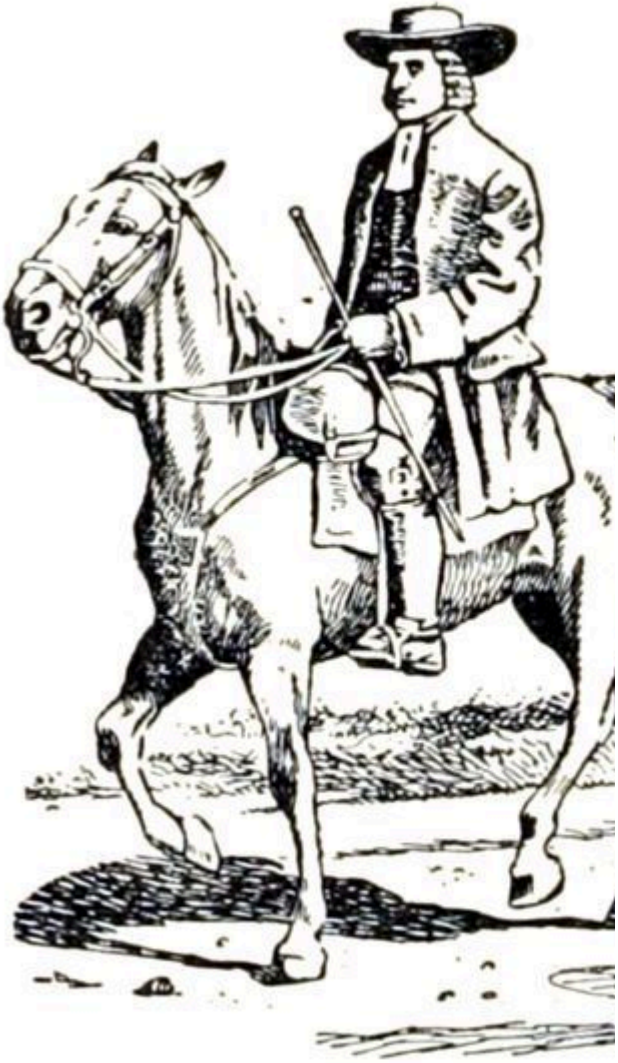
pays an old debt

Penn's Woods

56. The Founding of Pennsylvania. King Charles II owed Penn's father about eighty thousand dollars. William Penn asked him to pay it in American land. Charles was only too glad to grant this request of the son of his old sea captain. The land he gave to Penn is the present great state of Pennsylvania. Penn wanted the colony called Sylvania, meaning woodland, but the king declared it should be called Pennsylvania in memory of Admiral Penn.

By means of letters and pamphlets Penn sent word to the Quakers throughout England, Scotland, and Ireland. He told them of Quaker homes across the sea, where jails would not trouble them.

There was great rejoicing among them over Penn's "Holy Experiment," as his plan was called.



A QUAKER

Penn invited all persecuted people

Penn even visited Europe, especially the country along the Rhine, and told the persecuted and oppressed about the new colony where every sort of Christian was to find a hearty welcome, and where no one was to be punished for religion's sake.

Hundreds of settlers hastened to the new colony. When Penn reached Newcastle on the Delaware in the fall of 1682 he met a hearty welcome from scores of happy people who were already enjoying their long-wished-for religious freedom.

One of Penn's first acts was to call a meeting of the colonists to talk over their government. This pleased the people greatly, for although the land was Penn's he not only gave them land for their houses and farms, but he also gave them the right to choose their own rulers and to make their own laws.

WILLIAM PENN'S TREATY W

After the painting by Benjamin West, which han

The founding of Philadelphia

Penn next turned his attention to founding the great Quaker city to which he gave the name Philadelphia, signifying brotherly love—a name truly expressing Penn's feeling toward other men. He marked off the streets right in the midst of a great forest, and called them Walnut, Mulberry, Chestnut, and so on, after the trees that grew there. Some of the streets in Philadelphia are still so named.

Some settlers lived in caves

But the settlers came faster than houses could be built, and some families had to live in caves dug in the banks along the river. Philadelphia grew faster than the other colonial towns, and soon led them all.

Penn visits the Indians

William Penn won the love and the respect of the Indians of Pennsylvania. He visited them in their own towns and ate with them. He even took part in their athletic games and outran them all. Like Roger Williams, he believed that the Indians should be paid for their lands. Accordingly, he made them rich gifts and entered into solemn treaties with the chiefs.

Kind treatment produced kind treatment

At a treaty under a great elm tree on the banks of the Delaware, Penn said to the Indians: "We are the same as if one man's body were divided into two parts: We are all one flesh and one blood." In return the Indians said: "We will live in love with William Penn and his children as long as the moon and the sun shall endure." If the Indians admired a white man they said: "He is like William Penn."

The coming of

the "Pennsylvania Dutch"

The news of the establishment of free government and free religious worship brought crowds of settlers from Germany. Hundreds of German families in the valleys of the Rhine and the Neckar escaped to "Penn's Woods," and there their children's children are to be found to-day under the name of the "Pennsylvania Dutch." Without boasting, William Penn could say that no other one man, at his own expense, had planted so great a colony in the wilds of America as he had. Few nobler men ever lived than William Penn. He died July 30, 1718.

QUAKER WAYS IN OLD PENNSYLVANIA

Believed in simple things

57. How Quakers Differed from other Colonists. The people who formed Penn's colony were unlike those of any of the other settlements. They did not wear gorgeous clothes and jewelry like the Virginia cavaliers. The men carried no swords or pistols. They were not stern like the Puritans. Games and social pleasures were not to be seen among them as in Dutch New Netherland.

Quakers called themselves the Society of Friends

These people wore clothes of the plainest cut, made from dull gray or brown cloth. They were gentle and soft-spoken, and did not fight or quarrel among themselves. People who did not understand or like them called them Quakers, because some of them were so carried away at religious meetings that they fell to quaking. They themselves took the name of the Society of Friends. And Friends is a much better name, for they were friends to every man.

All religions

welcomed by the Friends

The customs of the Quakers grew out of their religious views. Above all, they believed that every one should be free to do as his own conscience taught him. Their religious meetings were as simple as their own lives. They did not think it necessary to have ministers or priests. The men sat in one part of the church, the women in another. All was silence until some Friend felt called to speak. Some days no one spoke, and then they all sat in silence until the meeting was over. As a rule, not even a hymn was sung.

Opposed war and slavery

The Quakers have always believed that war is unnecessary and wrong, and only a few of them have ever carried arms. Because Friends speak only the truth, they do not take an oath. In the courts of law their simple word is as good as an oath. They have always been quick to help the poor and oppressed. The Quakers were the first to oppose slavery, and they did much to end it both in this country and in the English colonies. It is strange that these kind, gentle people should ever have been so cruelly persecuted.

The colony prospered

While the Quakers were strongly religious, they also took good heed of the things of this world. At first they cleared and planted farms in the fertile

Schuylkill and Delaware valleys. Soon groups of them took up townships of five thousand acres each and built villages at their centers. The swift streams which tumbled down the mountain slopes they used to turn mills. In these they ground flour, sawed lumber, made paper, and wove woolen cloth.

The rich land and good climate of Pennsylvania and its liberal government attracted many people from outside. After a short time the Quakers were outnumbered by the other settlers, and to-day the Quakers are but a handful in that great state.

JAMES OGLETHORPE, THE FOUNDER OF GEORGIA AS A HOME FOR ENGLISH DEBTORS, AS A PLACE FOR PERSECUTED PROTESTANTS, AND AS A BARRIER AGAINST THE SPANIARDS

Oglethorpe a soldier

58. A Friend of the Unfortunate. James Oglethorpe was an Englishman. At an early age he went to Oxford to study, but he was drawn away from college by the clash of arms. Oglethorpe was a soldier for many years. Later he became a member of Parliament.

English jails and jailers

A friend of Oglethorpe's died in a debtor's prison, which aroused his sympathies for the poor. He examined English jails, and found them so dirty and dark and damp that strong-bodied men, to say nothing of women and children, soon sickened and died in them. Besides, he found that the jailers were often bad men, who whipped the prisoners on their bare backs and stole their food.

JAMES EDWARD OGLETHORPI

From an original portrait painted by Simon Francois Rav
Burford in the print room at the British

The prison was a poor place for a man in debt, anyway. How could a man pay his debts while he was shut up in prison?

King George II grants a charter

Oglethorpe, like many other noble men before him, thought of America as a place of refuge for the unfortunate. King George II gave him a charter for the land between the Savannah and the Altamaha, and made his heart glad by declaring that all Protestants should be tolerated there.

A select body of emigrants

When the debtors heard the news that Oglethorpe was to plant a colony for them there was great excitement among them. But he carefully selected his settlers, so that no lazy man might be found among them. Arms and tools with which to work on the farms were given to the settlers.

At Charleston

When the time came, thirty families were ready to sail. Oglethorpe carried them direct to Charleston, South Carolina. When they landed, in 1733, the people of Charleston were only too glad to have a

colony south of them as a "buffer" against the Spaniards who occupied Florida, and who had already attacked South Carolina.

Savannah laid out

Therefore, the people of Charleston, to give the new colony a good start, presented the settlers with one hundred head of cattle, a drove of hogs, and fifteen or twenty barrels of rice. Rejoicing in their new supplies, the colony sailed to the Savannah River, and not far from its mouth, on a beautiful bluff, Oglethorpe marked out the streets of the new city. The settlers went to work with a will, cutting down trees and making them into cabins. They soon had comfortable homes, although very different from what they had known in England.

Italians

Soon other colonists came to Savannah. Among these was a company of Italians who had come to raise the silkworm and to manufacture silk.

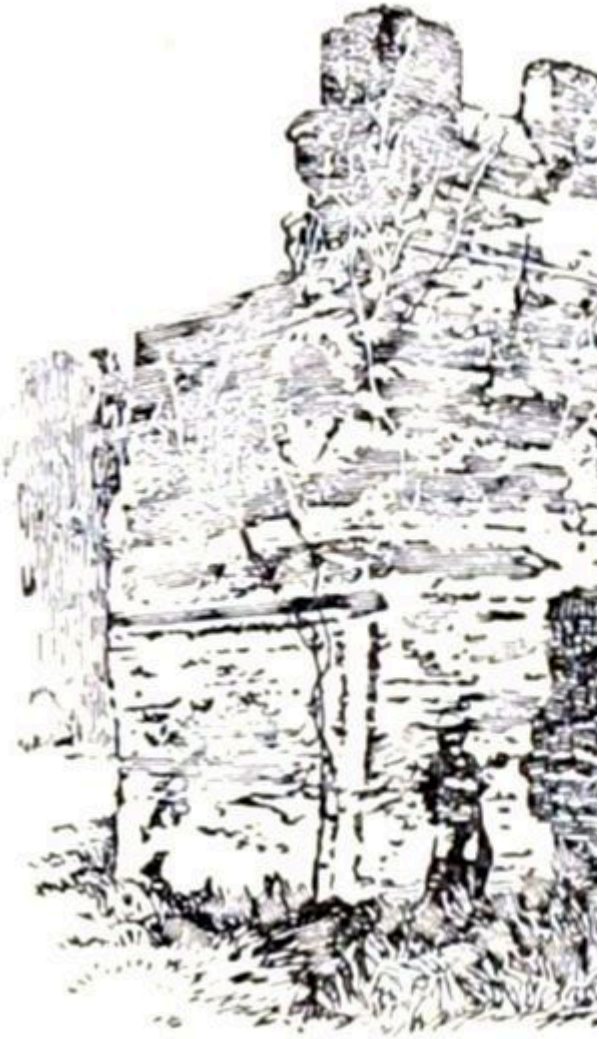
OGLETHORPE SURVEYING THI

German Protestants

In the next year after Oglethorpe planted the settlement a band of sturdy German Protestants arrived. These settlers built their homes to the north of Savannah, and called the colony "Ebenezer," which means "the Lord hath helped us." Between these two settlements a band of pious Moravian immigrants founded a colony. Then followed the settlement of Augusta, far up the Savannah River and well out among the Indians, which served as a sort of outpost.

Highlanders

To these were added a colony on the Altamaha River. This colony was settled by a company of brave Highlanders from Scotland.



OGLETHORPE'S STRON

Standing on a bold rocky bluff overlooking a beautiful l

The Wesleys come

In the meantime, Oglethorpe had gone to England, but he soon returned with more than two hundred English and German immigrants, who came to Georgia to better their condition. With these immigrants came John and Charles Wesley, who were soon to awake all England with a revival of religion.

Oglethorpe foresees war

While in England Oglethorpe was made a colonel. He saw that trouble with Spain must soon come. From the beginning of the settlement of Georgia Oglethorpe had been careful to treat the Indians well. He had made treaties with them and had paid them for their lands. He now went to visit the Creek and the Cherokee Indians.

Frederica fortified

On an island at the mouth of the Altamaha Oglethorpe planted a town to serve as an outpost against the Spaniards. He fortified it, and made it very strong. This town was called Frederica.

In 1742 a Spanish fleet of fifty-one vessels and five thousand men attacked Frederica. Oglethorpe beat them off, and thereafter Georgia was left in peace.

He went back to England and became a general. Oglethorpe lived to a good old age. He died in 1785.

INDUSTRIES, MANNERS, AND CUSTOMS OF THE SOUTHERN PLANTERS

Farms near the sea

59. The Carolina and Georgia Planters. The colonial farms south of Virginia lay mostly in a narrow strip near the sea. Inland were the "pine barrens," a poor, sandy country grown up in pine woods. Inland also were strong and fierce tribes of Indians like the Cherokees and Creeks.

Rice becomes an important product

The younger colonies could not live by growing tobacco. Virginia was nearer to the English market, and supplied it with most of the tobacco needed. They did raise corn and cattle for their own use. One day a ship captain from the Orient sailed into Charleston with some rice. The story runs that he gave a few handfuls of this to the governor as a curiosity. The wise old governor heard that this rice had been grown in swamps, and he thought of the swamps all along the coast of Carolina and Georgia. He had some of it planted in this wet land, and it grew beyond all hopes. In a few years rice was produced in such quantity that it could be shipped to

England, where it was thought the best on the market.

Indigo also grown

Some one else discovered that the low, wet land would also grow indigo, a plant used for making a brilliant and valuable blue dye. Indigo soon brought the settlers as much money as did the rice.

Lumber, tar, and turpentine

The great pine woods furnished lumber that was sent to Europe by the boatload. From the sap of the pine trees the colonists also learned to make turpentine and rosin. By heating or distilling the wood itself they produced tar. To this day one of the most striking sights in these states are the great sawmills and the stills, where negroes are making turpentine much as it was made a century and a half ago.

When Georgia was settled Oglethorpe did not permit slaves to be brought in, and the colonists had to do all their own work. But later there were as many slaves in Georgia as in the Carolinas or Virginia.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Peter Stuyvesant was sent out by the Dutch West India Company as Governor of New York. *2.* He ruled the colony in his own way and gave the people very little power. *3.* The council surrendered

the colony to the English against the will of Stuyvesant. *4.* New Netherland became the colony of New York. *5.* The Dutch kept up the customs of their native country. *6.* William Penn, son of a great English naval officer, became a Quaker while a student at Oxford. *7.* He founded a colony in America on a tract of land given him in payment of the king's debt to his father. *8.* Penn gave the colonists the right to choose their own rulers and to make their own laws. *9.* He gave a free constitution and made friends with the Indians. *10.* He founded the city of Philadelphia, which grew faster than the other colonial towns. *11.* The Quakers were gentle and friendly to everybody. *12.* All religions were welcomed in the colony. *13.* When a friend of Oglethorpe's died in a debtors' prison, Oglethorpe determined to do something for the unfortunates shut up in jail for debt. *14.* He obtained a charter from the king for some land in Georgia. *15.* In his selection of settlers no lazy men were allowed. *16.* The town was built near the mouth of the Savannah River. *17.* The Savannah colony flourished, and many other settlers came to Georgia. *18.* Oglethorpe built Frederica to keep back the Spaniards. *19.* The colonies south of Virginia thrived on the production of rice, indigo, lumber, tar, and turpentine.

Study Questions. *1.* Tell the story of Peter Stuyvesant until the time he became governor. *2.* What reforms did Stuyvesant bring to the colony? *3.* How did he rule? *4.* What part did the nine men play in the

government? *5.* What were they called? *6.* Why were the people glad when the English fleet came? *7.* What did William and Mary do for the colony? *8.* Tell what you know about the way the Dutch lived. *9.* Why should the students at Oxford be surprised to hear that William Penn had turned Quaker? *10.* Why did his father drive him from home? *11.* What shows that William Penn did not waste his time in Paris? *12.* Who made peace between Penn and his father? *13.* What was William Penn's noble resolution? *14.* How did Penn come into possession of Pennsylvania? *15.* Prove that Penn was a very generous man. *16.* Why did William Penn call his town the "city of brotherly love"? *17.* Make a picture of the great treaty under the elm. *18.* Tell the story of Oglethorpe. *19.* Why did Charleston lend a helping hand to Oglethorpe's colony? *20.* Where did the settlers of Georgia come from? *21.* What did Oglethorpe build Frederica for? *22.* What did the colonists south of Virginia raise?

Suggested Readings. STUYVESANT: Williams, *Stories from Early New York History*, 21-32; Smith and Dutton, *The Colonies*, 189-202.

PENN: Pratt, *Early Colonies*, 158-165; Hart, *Colonial Children*, 144-148, Dixon, *William Penn*, 11-273.

OGLETHORPE: Smith and Dutton, *The Colonies*, 78-89; Pratt, *Early Colonies*, 173-176; Hart, *Source Book*, 71-73; Cooper, *James Oglethorpe*.

ROBERT CAVELIER DE LA SALLE, WHO FOLLOWED THE FATHER OF WATERS TO ITS MOUTH, AND ESTABLISHED NEW FRANCE FROM CANADA TO THE GULF OF MEXICO

LA SALLE PUSHED FORWARD THE WORK BEGUN BY JOLIET AND MARQUETTE

60. Robert Cavelier, Sieur de La Salle. While Joliet and Marquette were on their long journey, Frontenac was making use of another fur trader, La Salle, and of another missionary, Hennepin. La Salle belonged to a rich French family, and had left home at the age of twenty-three (1666) for the wild life in the American forests.

Fort Frontenac built

He first built a fort-like post just above Montreal and named it Lachine, because he supposed it was located on the route to China. In 1673 he helped build Fort Frontenac where the Canadian city of Kingston now stands.

LA SALLE

Reproduced from a design based on a

La Salle returned home, and the king received him with honor and made him governor of the region around Fort Frontenac. He came back and built a great stone fort. Settlers soon came and built their cabins around the fort, making a little frontier village.

Here the fur trader came each season with his pack, and here the faithful missionary said good-by before plunging into the wilds of the unknown wilderness, perhaps never to return.

La Salle not content to get rich only

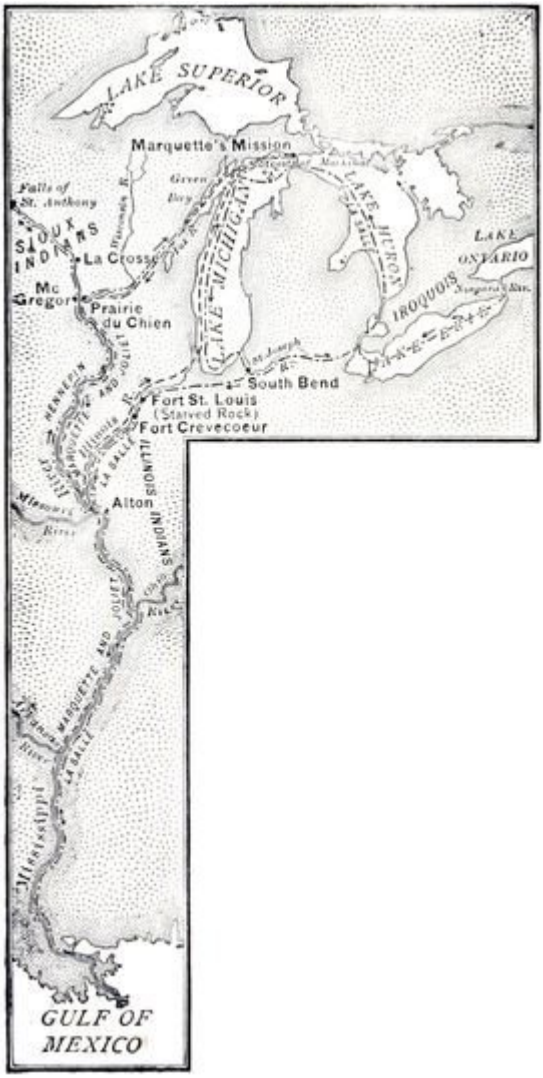
La Salle was growing rich, but he longed to make good his country's right to the richer soil and to the milder climate of the Mississippi Valley. Once more he returned to France, and the king gave him permission to explore the great valley and to build forts along the way.

Hennepin and his altar

La Salle came back bringing sailors, carpenters, anchors, and cables, for he intended to build a ship on the lakes. But best of all, he brought Tonti, his faithful Italian friend and helper. Hennepin, the missionary, carried an altar so made that he could strap it on his back and set it up for worship

wherever he chose.

La Salle had resolved to build his first fort at the mouth of the Niagara River, but the Iroquois permitted him to build only a large storehouse. They were greatly displeased when he set about building a ship above Niagara to sail the Great Lakes to the west, and threatened to burn it.



ROUTES OF THE FRENCH MISSIONARIES AND TRADERS WHO EXPLORED THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY

The first

ship on the Great Lakes

When the new ship, the *Griffin*, was ready to sail, they towed her up the Niagara River and then into Lake Erie. There was great rejoicing over the *Griffin*. Amid the firing of cannon and the singing of songs she spread her sails, the first to whiten the waters of Lake Erie.

The visit to Mackinac

On they sailed, through sunshine and storm, up Lake Huron until the mission town where Marquette was buried came into view. When the *Griffin* fired her cannon, all was astir in that town of fur traders, missionaries, and Indians. La Salle's men landed with great show. They marched to the little chapel and knelt before the altar.

The "Griffin" sails for the storehouse

La Salle then sailed through the straits and to the head of Green Bay, where some of his men, sent out many months before, had collected a great quantity of furs. Laden with these, the *Griffin* sailed for the storehouse on the Niagara, but La Salle never saw again this first ship of the lakes.

61. Exploring the Mississippi Valley. With fourteen men in four large canoes, La Salle set out for the Illinois River. They passed southward along

the Wisconsin shore, sometimes living only on parched corn and wild berries, but at other times feasting on the wild game killed by their Indian hunter.

FRENCH FUR TRADERS BARTERI

The journey by canoe to the Illinois River

They passed the spot where Chicago stands, and reached the mouth of the St. Joseph River. Here

another fort was built while waiting for the return of Tonti, who had gone to find the *Griffin*. Three months had passed since the ship sailed. Tonti finally came, but brought no word of the ill-fated *Griffin*.

They reach Starved Rock

Disappointed, but still brave, La Salle with a party of thirty men and fourteen canoes paddled up the St. Joseph River to where South Bend now is. From this point the party, carrying canoes and baggage, made its way over to the headwaters of the Illinois. They were glad to reach the region near the present site of Ottawa, where Marquette had been a few years before. They saw Buffalo Rock and Starved Rock, high bluffs renowned in Indian history.

Surprising an Indian camp

Just as the little fleet was passing through Peoria Lake, some one saw the smoke of an Indian camp. At once every Frenchman dropped his paddle, seized his gun, and sprang ashore. The Indians ran about in wild excitement, but La Salle talked peace to the chiefs while Hennepin tried to quiet the children.

LA SALLE AND HENNEPIN SURPRISING THE INDI

The Indians told La Salle of fierce warriors farther on who would kill them, and of great monsters ready to eat them. These stories frightened some of La Salle's men and they ran away.

LA SALLE AT THE MOUTH OF THE

The fort of the broken heart

La Salle decided to build a fort on the bluff overlooking the river and remain there through the winter (1680). They named it Fort Crèvecœur, meaning that the builders had grieved until their hearts were broken.

La Salle returned to Fort Frontenac. In the meantime he ordered Tonti to fortify Starved Rock, and Hennepin to explore the Illinois and the upper Mississippi rivers.

Iroquois destroy villages of the Illinois

While La Salle was gone, a great army of fierce Iroquois destroyed the villages of the Illinois Indians, "the children of Count Frontenac."

A union of Indian tribes proposed

La Salle's heart was indeed full of grief when he returned and saw the awful desolation where once stood the villages of his Indian friends. But worse still, he could not find Tonti. With a sad but brave heart the great leader resolved to bring all the Illinois tribes into a union that should be a match for the Iroquois. He went from tribe to tribe, and night after night he sat around the council fires with the chiefs.

La Salle journeys to the

mouth of the Mississippi

Before he could unite them he heard that Tonti was safe at Mackinac. He hastened to meet his long-lost friend, and there he and Tonti once more planned the exploration of the lower Mississippi. He returned to Fort Frontenac, collected supplies, and was soon crossing the portage between the Chicago and Illinois rivers. On they went, till early in February their canoes floated out upon the bosom of the "Father of Waters" (1682).

Down the river they floated, passing the Missouri, the Ohio, and the Arkansas, where Joliet and Marquette had turned back. With the kindly help of new guides, they passed on until they found the Mississippi branching into three streams. La Salle divided his party, and each took a stream to the Gulf.

La Salle takes possession of new country

On shore, just above the mouth, a cross was raised and La Salle took possession of all the country he had explored "in the name of Louis the Great, King of France." The company shouted, "Long live the king!" La Salle's first great object had been accomplished.

Then the party began the slow journey up stream. La Salle finally reached Mackinac, and there again began to lay great plans. The first thing he did was to go to Starved Rock and build a fort for the protection of his union of Indian tribes.

Builds Fort St. Louis on Starved Rock

Starved Rock is a rough cliff which rises one hundred thirty-five feet high, right out of the valley. Its sides are almost perpendicular. La Salle and his men cut away the trees on top and built storehouses, log huts, and a palisade. They named it Fort St. Louis. In the valley below, hundreds of Indians came and built their wigwams that they might be safe from their enemies, the Iroquois. Tonti was put in command of the fort.

STARVED ROCK ON THE

Many interesting Indian legends are connected with this
above the river

La Salle misses the mouth of the Mississippi

La Salle's next step was to return to France and ask the king to plant a colony of Frenchmen at the mouth of the Mississippi River. The king agreed, and La Salle set sail for the Gulf of Mexico with a fleet of four ships and a colony of more than one hundred fifty persons (1684). But he missed the Mississippi and landed at Matagorda Bay in Texas. The colonists blamed La Salle. He tried in vain to find the Mississippi.

La Salle's death

Suffering and discontent increased until a party of La Salle's men lay in ambush and shot him, and left his body in the woods. More than a year went by before the faithful Tonti at Starved Rock heard of the sad fate of the great leader.

The heroic Tonti

The French king refused to send aid to the starving colonists in Texas, but the brave and heroic Tonti, though saddened by the death of La Salle, resolved to rescue them. His rescuing party suffered awful hardships. They deserted Tonti on the lower Mississippi, and he was at last forced to return to Starved Rock.

THE MEN OF NEW FRANCE

Men of New France lived as the Indians lived

62. Life of the Trapper, Jesuit Missionary, and Soldier of New France. For more than a hundred years after the explorations of Joliet and La Salle the French in Canada sent trappers, missionaries, and soldiers into the new territory. The trappers lived on friendly terms with the Indians. They took shelter in the Indian wigwam and sat at the Indian camp fire. Together they searched the forest for game, and paddled up and down the rivers and lakes in the Indian canoes. They joined in the Indian sports, lived as the Indians lived, and often married the Indian maidens.

The lives of the missionaries who went to preach among the Indians were full of self-sacrifice. They had great difficulties to overcome. The Indians were ignorant and hard to teach, but they treated the missionaries with respect and loved them for their kind deeds.

Long years of war

From the mouth of the St. Lawrence to the Gulf of

Mexico the soldiers of New France built many forts. Their chief danger was from the Iroquois Indians, who sided with the English in the long years of war. Many times their settlements were destroyed, their forts burned. But they were courageous and determined. They went on with their work of establishing New France in America, fighting the English and the Indians, until 1759. Then Wolfe captured Quebec and New France became English territory.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* La Salle was sent to complete the exploration of the Mississippi. *2.* La Salle made his way to the Gulf of Mexico and later built the fort at Starved Rock. *3.* The French sent trappers, missionaries, and soldiers into New France to strengthen it against the English. *4.* The French trappers lived on intimate terms with the Indians. *5.* With the fall of Quebec, England won New France.

Study Questions. *1.* Why was La Salle not satisfied merely to get rich? *2.* Describe the first voyage on the Lakes. *3.* Find on the map the places named, from Mackinac to Fort Crèvecœur. *4.* How did La Salle reach the Mississippi? *5.* Picture Tonti's fort on Starved Rock. *6.* Tell the story of the fate of La Salle. *7.* What Indian tribe sided with the English? *8.* What was the effect of the fall of Quebec?

Suggested Readings. LA SALLE: Wright, *Children's Stories in American History*,

316-330; Pratt, *Later Colonial Period*, 1-28.

GEORGE WASHINGTON, THE FIRST GENERAL AND FIRST PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES

THE "FATHER OF HIS COUNTRY"

Washington's birthday and birthplace

63. George Washington as a Boy. When Washington was born, February 22, 1732, in the old colony of Virginia, the early settlements had grown into towns, and planters had prospered. His father's house stood upon a gentle hill slope which ran down to the lazily flowing Potomac. Across the river one could see the wooded Maryland shore, broken with a few great farms and plantations.

The mother of Washington

Washington's father owned more than one plantation, and had many negro slaves. He was also a partner in some iron mines, and once had been captain of a ship carrying iron ore to London. It was in London that he had fallen in love with Mary Ball, called, on account of her beauty, the "Rose of Epping Forest." She, too, was a Virginian, and she married Augustine Washington, and became the greatly revered mother of George.

School in Fredericksburg

When George was but three years old his parents moved to the plantation on the Rappahannock. Across the river, in the old town of Fredericksburg, George went to a school taught by the church sexton. Both teachers and schools were scarce in Virginia then because the people lived miles apart on their great plantations.

THE BOYHOOD HOME OI

Here on the site of the farmhouse, a slope on the river Washington, the bricks from the great cl

In Washington's day the plantations were usually located on the rivers or bays. The rivers were the best roadways in those old times. Besides, the planter was glad to have the yearly ship from London stop at his door.

The yearly ship from London

The coming of the ship brought happy days to the young people, for it often brought furniture for the house and fine clothes for the family. Sometimes, too, it brought back some long-absent son or daughter, or letters from relatives in the old English home. Then there were the stories such as only sailors can tell.

When all the stores of tobacco and grain had been loaded, once more the great ship spread her wings and sailed away. Then many a Virginia boy longed to go on board and sail away, too.

Mary Washington

George's father died and left him, at the age of eleven, to the care of his mother. Mary Washington was a wise, firm mother, and always held the love and admiration of her children.

The eldest son in Virginia

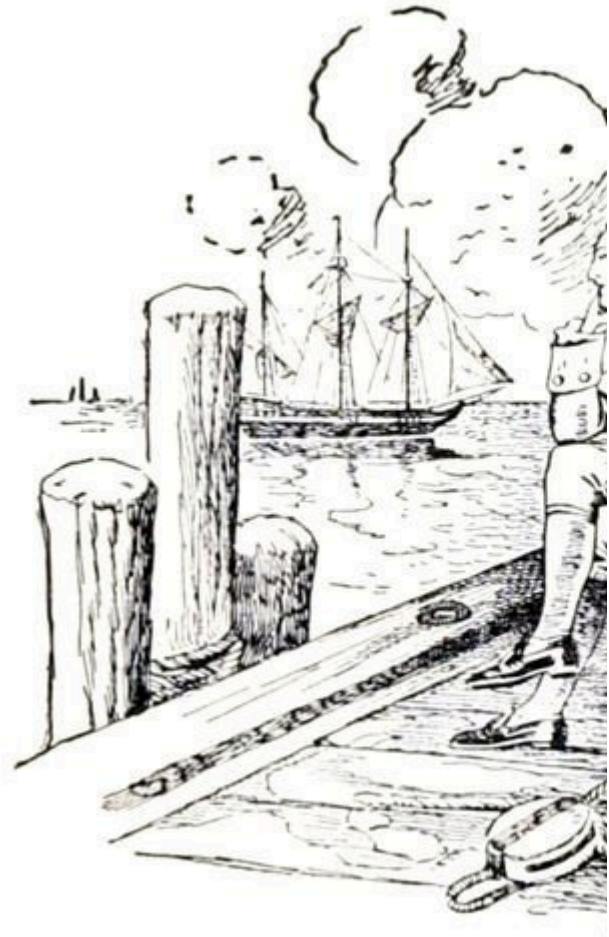
According to the custom of those old Virginia days, the eldest son, Lawrence Washington, received the beautiful plantation on the Potomac, which he named Mount Vernon in honor of Admiral Vernon, an English naval officer under whom he had fought in the West Indies.

George studied

hard and played hard

To George fell a smaller plantation on the Rappahannock. He could hardly hope to go to England to study, but went to a school near his birthplace. Here he studied hard, mastering mathematics, and business papers of all sorts. The book into which he copied business letters, deeds, wills, and bills of sale and exchange shows how careful he was and how he mastered everything he undertook.

At school, George was a spirited leader in all outdoor sports. He outran, outjumped, as well as outwrestled all his comrades. He could throw farther than any of them. The story is told that he once threw a stone across the Rappahannock, and that at another time he threw a stone from the valley below to the top of the Natural Bridge, a distance of more than two hundred feet.



WASHINGTON DREAMING O

Playing war

Washington was captain when the boys played at war. Every boy among them expected to be a soldier some day. George listened to the stories told by his brother Lawrence, who had been a captain in the

West Indies.

WASHINGTON'S SURVEYING INSTRUMENTS

A

horseback rider

As a boy George Washington also learned many useful things outside of school. He became a skillful horseback rider, for every Virginia plantation had fine riding horses. People lived so far apart that they had to ride horseback when they visited each other and when they went to church or to town. Whether George rode a wild colt to "break" it, or whether he rode with his neighbors through woods and fields, jumping fences or swimming streams, or in a wild chase after the fox, he always kept his seat.

A woodsman

Even while a boy Washington was learning the ways of a woodsman. With only a gun and a dog for companions, he made long trips into the deep, dark Virginia forests, where no road or path showed the way. He could cross rivers without bridge or boat, could build a shelter at night, could trap, and shoot, and cook over the fire by the side of which he slept. All this knowledge was soon put to use by Washington.

WASHINGTON AS A WOODSMA

Washington wanted to be a sailor

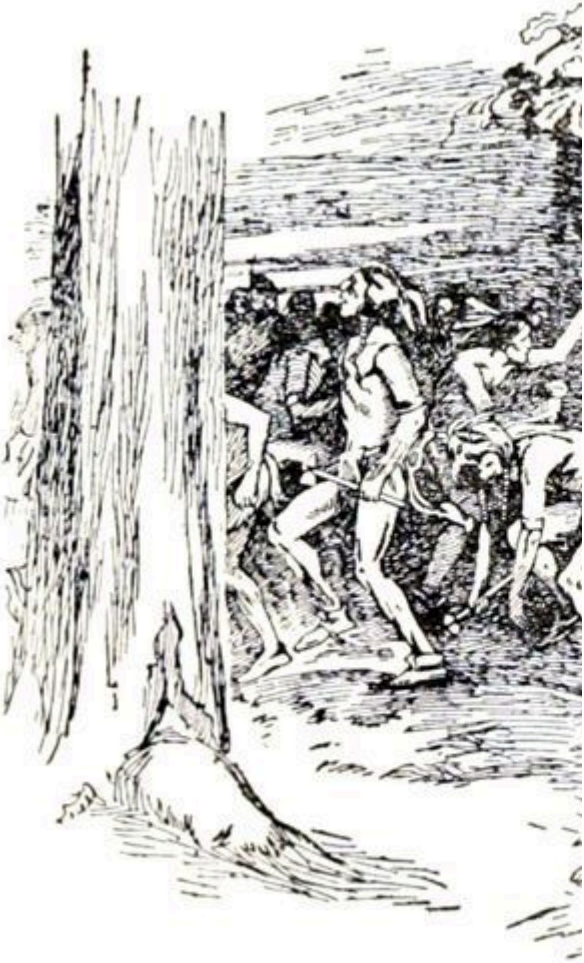
When George was fourteen it was decided that he might "go to sea." No doubt he dreamed of the time when he should be a seaman, or perhaps an officer on one of the king's great war ships. But when all was ready, he gave up his plans to please his mother and went back to school. He now studied surveying, and was soon able to mark off the boundaries of farms and lay out roads.

Lord Fairfax

George was now more and more at Mount Vernon, where he met many fine people. Among these visitors he admired most an old English nobleman, Lord Fairfax, who had come to spend the rest of his days beyond the Blue Ridge in the beautiful valley of the Shenandoah.

A surveyor at sixteen

64. Washington as Surveyor. Lord Fairfax was pleased with Washington, who was then tall, strong, active, and manly looking, although but sixteen years old. Accordingly, one spring Washington, with a number of companions, started over the mountains to survey the wild lands of Lord Fairfax.



THE SURVEYING PARTY AT AN

Life in the Shenandoah in 1748

The trip was full of danger. There were no roads, bridges, or houses after the party reached the mountains; but deep rivers, wild animals, and savage Indians were plentiful. Some nights they slept in rude huts, other nights in tents, but more often under the stars and around the camp fire. One night they saw a party of Indians dance their wild war dance to the music of a rude drum, made by stretching a hide over a pot, and to the noise of a rattle, made by putting shot in a gourd.

WASHINGTON SURVEYING LO

Work well done

Within a month Washington was back with maps and figures showing what lands belonged to Lord Fairfax.

Few men could have done better, and a warm friendship grew up between this white-haired English nobleman and the young Virginian. Lord Fairfax immediately built a great hunting lodge in the Shenandoah, near where Winchester is, and named it Greenway Court. It became a favorite visiting place for many Virginians.

A public surveyor

Washington had done his work so well that Lord Fairfax had him made a public surveyor, and invited him to make Greenway Court his headquarters.

For three years Washington was hard at work in that western wilderness marking out the lands of settlers. It was a rough but health-giving life and made his bones and muscles strong. He had to take many risks and face many dangers.

Once he wrote to a friend: "Since you received my letter in October I have not slept above three or four nights in a bed; but, after walking a great deal all the day, I have lain down upon a little hay, straw, fodder, or a bear skin, whichever was to be had, with man, wife, and children, like dogs and cats, and happy is he who gets the berth nearest the fire."

At Greenway Court

But the young surveyor was often at Greenway Court taking part in its pastimes, or spending his time in sober conversation with Lord Fairfax, or in reading the books on history which were found in his friend's library.

Heavy responsibility at twenty

65. Washington as a Soldier against the French. Suddenly Washington's whole life was changed. His brother Lawrence died and left to George the beautiful Mount Vernon home and the care of his only daughter. At the age of twenty Washington found himself at the head of two large plantations. But he had hardly begun his new duties before he was called to serve his governor and the king.

The French in Canada were building a chain of outposts from Lake Erie into Pennsylvania to the headwaters of the Ohio River so that they might have a shorter route to their trading posts on the Mississippi. Governor Dinwiddie of Virginia had sent orders for them to get out of the country, but his messenger did not get within a hundred miles of the French soldiers.

GREENWAY COURT, THE VIRGINIA

Surmounting the broad, sweeping roof, pierced by dormer for bells to call the settlers together when

It was probably Lord Fairfax who said to the governor: "Here is the very man for you; young and daring, but sober minded and responsible, who only lacks opportunity to show the stuff that is in him."

George Washington sent to order the French out of Virginia territory

In October, 1753, Washington, not then twenty-two,

set out with servants, horses, and two companions for the French posts. One companion was the old Dutch soldier who had taught Washington to use the sword, and the other was the famous backwoodsman, Christopher Gist. They pushed on through deep forests, over the mountains, across swift rivers, to the Indian village near where Pittsburgh now stands. From there Washington hurried on to the fort on French Creek.

The French commander received him with great politeness, and tried to keep him many days. But Washington saw that the French were really preparing to fight to hold this "gateway to the West."

The trip back to Virginia

The Frenchmen very politely said that they intended to hold that region at all hazard. Washington and his party at once started back with the answer.

Washington's party traveled through rain and snow, hurrying through dense forests where savages lurked ready to scalp them. An Indian shot at Washington, but missed him. Their horses gave out, and Washington and Gist plunged into the forest alone, on foot, anxious to lose no time. At last they reached Williamsburg.

WASHINGTON ON HIS WAY BACK FRO

Washington cuts a road over the mountains

War now seemed certain, and the governor hurried Washington forward with about one hundred fifty men to cut a road through the forests and over the mountains. But the French had already reached and built Fort Duquesne, where the Ohio is formed, and were then hurrying forward a party to look for the English. Just after Washington's men crossed the mountains they surprised the French scouts, killed their commander, and took the rest prisoners. Young Washington wrote home that he had heard the whistle of bullets and liked the music.

He wins one battle, and loses another

Although Washington's company soon grew to three hundred fifty men, he built Fort Necessity, for a French force numbering four times his own was now close upon him. A battle followed. Standing knee deep in mud and water, the English fired all day at the hidden foe. Their ammunition was about gone, and their men were falling. Washington surrendered the fort, and the little army, with sad hearts, started home along their newly made road.

Washington joins Braddock's army

66. Washington and Braddock. But these were stirring times in Virginia, for an English general, Braddock, had come up the Potomac; and soldiers, cannon, and supplies were passing right by the doors of Mount Vernon. Every day Washington looked upon the king's soldiers, and saw the flash of sword

and bayonet. How could he keep out of it? General Braddock liked the young Virginian, and made him an officer on his staff.

Braddock was a brave man, but he had never made war in the woods, or against Indians. One day Washington suggested that a long train of heavily loaded wagons would make the march very, very slow. He was thinking of Indians. Braddock only smiled, as if to say that a young backwoodsman could not teach him how to fight.

Braddock too vain to take good advice

Benjamin Franklin, a very wise man from Philadelphia, was also troubled when he thought of how the Indians and French would cut to pieces that long line of troops as they marched through the deep, dark forests. Braddock smiled again, and said: "These savages may be dangerous to the raw American militia, but it is impossible that they should make any impression on the king's troops."

A VIRGINIA RIFLEMAN

The army, over two thousand strong, slowly crossed the mountains, and by July had almost reached Fort Duquesne. One day nearly one thousand French and Indians swarmed on both sides of the road, and from

behind the safe cover of trees poured a deadly fire upon Braddock's men. "God save the king!" cried the British soldiers, as they formed in line of battle.

A great defeat

Washington thanked for his bravery by the Burgesses

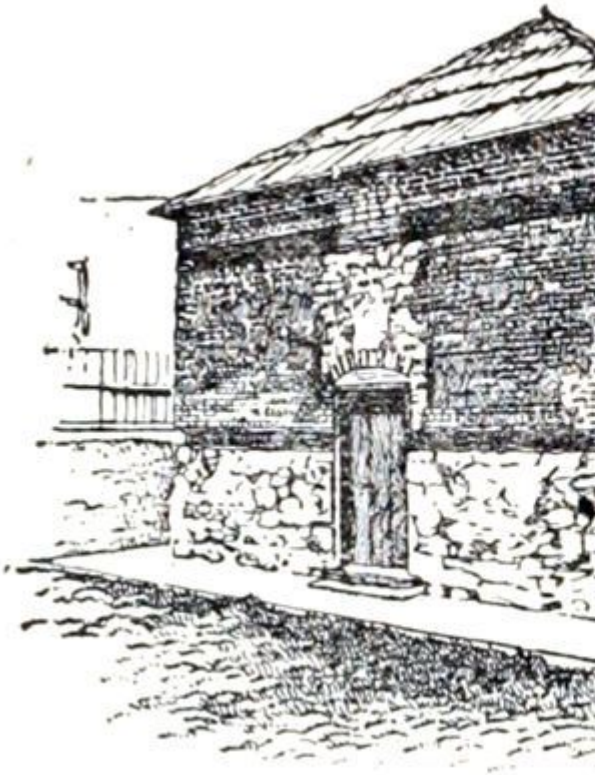
Washington urged Braddock to permit the English to take to the trees and fight Indian fashion, as the Virginians were doing, but Braddock forced his men to stand and be shot down by the unseen foe. Braddock himself was mortally wounded. Washington had two horses shot under him and his clothes pierced by four bullets. The British regulars soon ran madly back upon the soldiers in the rear. They threw away guns and left their cannon and wagons, while the Virginians under Washington kept the Indians back. The British army retreated to Philadelphia, but Washington returned to Virginia, where he received the thanks of the Burgesses. He at once collected troops, and hastened into the Shenandoah Valley to protect the settlers from the French and Indians.

WASHINGTON AND THE VIRGINIANS

Colonel Washington visits Boston

The next year (1756) Washington journeyed on horseback to Boston. He wore his colonel's uniform of buff and blue, with a white and scarlet cloak over his shoulders. At his side hung a fine sword. With him rode two aids in uniform, besides two servants. Many an admiring eye was turned toward this stately young cavalier. After this journey he returned to the

frontier, near Greenway Court, and remained there a year or two more.



THE OLD BLOCK HOUSE

Still standing to-day in the heart of the

Washington introduced to Martha Custis

67. Washington Meets his Future Wife. One day while on his way to Williamsburg with war dispatches, Washington halted at a plantation to take

dinner with a friend. There he was introduced to Mrs. Martha Custis, a charming young widow of his own age.

After dinner the conversation with her was too interesting for the young officer to see the horses being led back and forth near the window. The horses were stabled again. After supper Washington was not yet ready to mount. Not until late in the afternoon next day did he mount and ride away with all speed for the capital. On his return he visited Mrs. Custis at her own beautiful plantation, and did not leave until he had her promise of marriage.

Wolfe made it easy to capture Fort Duquesne

Great armies were already gathering. William Pitt, who sent Wolfe to capture Quebec, also ordered General Forbes to march against Fort Duquesne. But it was November before the army reached the Ohio. The French and Indians had nearly all gone to fight on the St. Lawrence, and the place was easily captured. It is said that Washington himself ran up the English flag. The fort's name was changed to Fort Pitt.

A Virginia wedding

68. Old Days in Virginia. Washington now hastened home to claim his bride. To the wedding came the new royal governor in scarlet and gold, and the king's officers in bright uniforms. There, too, came

the great planters with their wives dressed in the best that the yearly ship could bring from London. The bride rode home in a coach drawn by six beautiful horses, while Washington, well mounted, rode by the side of the coach, attended by many friends on horseback.

Elected to the House of Burgesses

The hardy settlers of the frontier, grateful to their brave defender, had already elected him to represent them in the House of Burgesses. He was proud to take his young wife to the meeting of the Burgesses when the old capital town was at its gayest, and when the planters came pouring in to attend the governor's reception.

A RECEPTION AT THE

At these receptions gay cavaliers and high-born ladies trod reel

Too confused to make a speech

Washington had already taken his seat among the Burgesses when the speaker arose and, in a very eloquent speech, praised him and presented him the thanks of the House for his gallant deeds as a soldier. Washington was so confused to hear himself so

highly praised that, when he arose to reply, he could not say a word. "Sit down, Mr. Washington," said the speaker, "your modesty is equal to your valor, and that surpasses any language that I possess."

Washington took his young bride to Mount Vernon, and there began the life that he enjoyed far more than the life of a soldier. He felt a deep interest in everything on the plantation. Early every morning he visited his stables and his kennel, for he liked horses and dogs very much. He then mounted a spirited horse and rode over his plantation to look at the growing fields of tobacco or wheat, or at the work of his slaves.

When the king's inspectors in the West Indies and in London saw barrels of flour marked "George Washington, Mount Vernon," they let them pass without examining them, for they were always good. He looked after his own and his wife's plantations so well that in a few years he was one of the richest men in America.

FOX HUNTING IN V

In some sections of our country this popular sport of the Vi
George and Martha W

SCENE AT MOUNT VERNON IN THI

Old Mount Vernon days

But besides such duties, there were many simple pleasures to be enjoyed at Mount Vernon. Here his soldier friends always found a warm welcome. Lord Fairfax and other Virginia gentlemen went often to Mount Vernon to enjoy a fox chase. Sometimes Mrs. Washington and the ladies rode with dash and courage after the hounds. Now and then boating parties on the wide Potomac were the order of the day. Many times the halls and grounds of Mount

Vernon rang with the shouts and laughter of younger people, guests, who had come from miles around, for George and Martha Washington were young in spirit.

Washington took sides with Patrick Henry

69. The Mutterings of War. One day in June, 1765, Washington came back from Williamsburg and told his family and neighbors about the bold resolutions and fiery speech of a rustic-looking member named Patrick Henry. He said that many of the older members opposed Henry. Washington took Henry's side, but his friends, the Fairfaxes, took the king's side in favor of the Stamp Act.

When the king put a tax on tea, Washington and many of his neighbors signed an agreement not to buy any more tea of England until the tax was taken off. When he heard that Samuel Adams and the "Mohawks" had thrown the tea into Boston Harbor, he knew that exciting times would soon be at hand.

Sent to the Continental Congress

The very next year the king ordered more soldiers to go to Boston and put in force the Boston Port Bill and other unjust laws. The colonies saw the danger, and sent their best men to hold the first Continental Congress at Philadelphia. Virginia sent George Washington, Patrick Henry, Richard Henry Lee, and other great men. Washington, however, was not an orator, and made no speech in the Congress, as

others did. He was a man of deeds. His time had not yet come.

WASHINGTON DRILLING

A youthful colonel

Many persons were surprised to find him so young, for twenty years before they had heard of his deeds against the French, and how he had saved the broken pieces of Braddock's army. A member of Congress declared that "if you speak of solid information, and of sound judgment, Colonel Washington is unquestionably the greatest man on the floor."

The Congress, among other things, resolved to stand

by Boston, if General Gage should make war on that town. Washington knew what that meant. He was not at home many months before he was busy drilling his brave Virginians, many of whom had been with him in the French and Indian War.

In Congress again

What John Adams said

70. Washington Made Commander of the American Armies. In the last days of April, 1775, the news of the fight at Lexington and Concord was spreading rapidly southward. Washington, dressed in the buff and blue uniform of a Virginia colonel, hurried to Philadelphia to the meeting of the second Continental Congress. His day had come. It was now a time for deeds. The American army that surrounded Gage in Boston must have a head. John Adams arose in Congress and said that for the place of commander he had "but one gentleman in mind—a gentleman from Virginia—whose skill and experience as an officer, whose independent fortune, great talents, and excellent universal character would command the approbation of all America, and unite the colonies better than any other person in the Union."

What Washington said to Congress and wrote to his wife

Before all these words were spoken, Washington, much moved, had left the room. Congress elected him unanimously to be commander in chief of its armies. When he accepted the honor, he said: "I beg it may be remembered by every gentleman in this room, that I this day declare, with the utmost sincerity, I do not think myself equal to the command I am honored with."

Washington wrote immediately to his wife: "You may believe me, my dear Patsey, that so far from seeking this appointment, I have used every endeavor in my power to avoid it, not only from my own unwillingness to part from you and the family, but from the consciousness of its being a trust too great for my capacity." Great men are often the most modest.

On the way to take command

News from Bunker Hill

Washington was soon on the way to Boston by the very route he had gone nearly twenty years before. But how different the journey! Then he was a Virginia colonel. Now he was the honored commander of all the American armies. Then only a few friends were with him. Now congressmen, citizens of Philadelphia, and great crowds cheered him on the way. Only twenty miles out from Philadelphia, they met the news from Bunker Hill. When Washington heard how the Americans faced

the British bayonets, and twice forced the Redcoats to retreat, he exclaimed: "The liberties of the country are safe!"

Took command of the army, July 3, 1775

Through New Jersey he was hailed by the people with delight. A military procession escorted him through New York City, where he appointed that noble general, Philip Schuyler, to take command in New York. The students at Yale gave him a real college welcome—a parade with a band and student songs.

On Cambridge Common, under the famous Harvard Elm, on July 3, 1775, Washington drew his sword and took command of the Continental army. There was a great task before him. He had to drill the troops, collect cannon from Ticonderoga, which Americans had captured, and get ready to drive the British out of Boston.

A COLLEGE WELCOM

A bloodless victory

It took all winter to do these things. One night in March, 1776, Washington secretly sent some of his best troops to build a fort on Dorchester Heights. The next morning Howe, the new British general, saw Washington's cannon pointing down on his army and ships. He immediately put his army on board and sailed away. This was a victory without a fight.

WASHINGTON TAKING COMM

Washington outwits Howe

Washington took his army to New York, and built a fort on Long Island to protect the city. He was none too quick, for Howe came with thirty thousand men and many war ships.

In the battle on Long Island a part of Washington's army was defeated. General Howe planned to capture the defeated troops next day, but Washington was too shrewd. In the night he

collected all the boats in that region and rowed his army over to New York before the British knew what he was doing.

ENTERTAINING GENERAL HOW

At Murray Hill, then a great farmstead, now the heart of N
delightfully two hours slipped away, and t

New York captured

The great British army and fleet took the city, but by the help of a patriotic lady, Mrs. Murray, who

entertained General Howe and his officers too long for their own good, all of Washington's regiments got away safely up the Hudson. During the fall of 1776, General Howe tried to get above Washington's army and capture it. But he did neither, for Washington's troops defeated the British both at Harlem Heights and at White Plains.

Heroic Nathan Hale

While at Harlem Heights Washington felt that he must learn some secrets about the enemy. Nathan Hale, a young officer, volunteered to bring General Washington the information he wanted; but Hale was caught by the British and hanged. "I only regret," he said, "that I have but one life to lose for my country."

Washington retreats, but fights

Howe then turned back as if to march against Philadelphia and capture Congress. Washington quickly threw a part of his army across the Hudson into New Jersey, but he had to retreat. The British followed in a hot chase across New Jersey. Washington crossed the Delaware, and took with him all the boats for many miles up and down the river. The British decided to wait till they could cross on the ice. Some of their generals thought the war was about over, and hastened back to New York to spend the Christmas holidays.

Americans discouraged

71. The People Did Not Know Washington. Those were, indeed, dark days for the Americans. Hundreds of Washington's soldiers had gone home discouraged, and many other faint-hearted Americans thought the cause lost, and were again promising obedience to George III. But the people did not yet know Washington.

On Christmas night, with two thousand five hundred picked men, Washington took to his boats, and crossed the Delaware in spite of the floating ice. Nine miles away, in Trenton, lay the Hessians, those soldiers from Hesse-Cassel, in Europe, whom George III had hired to fight his American subjects, because Englishmen refused to fight Americans.

SCENE OF WASHINGTON'S CAMI

On went the little army in spite of the biting cold and the blinding snow. During this fearful night two men froze to death and many others were numb with cold.

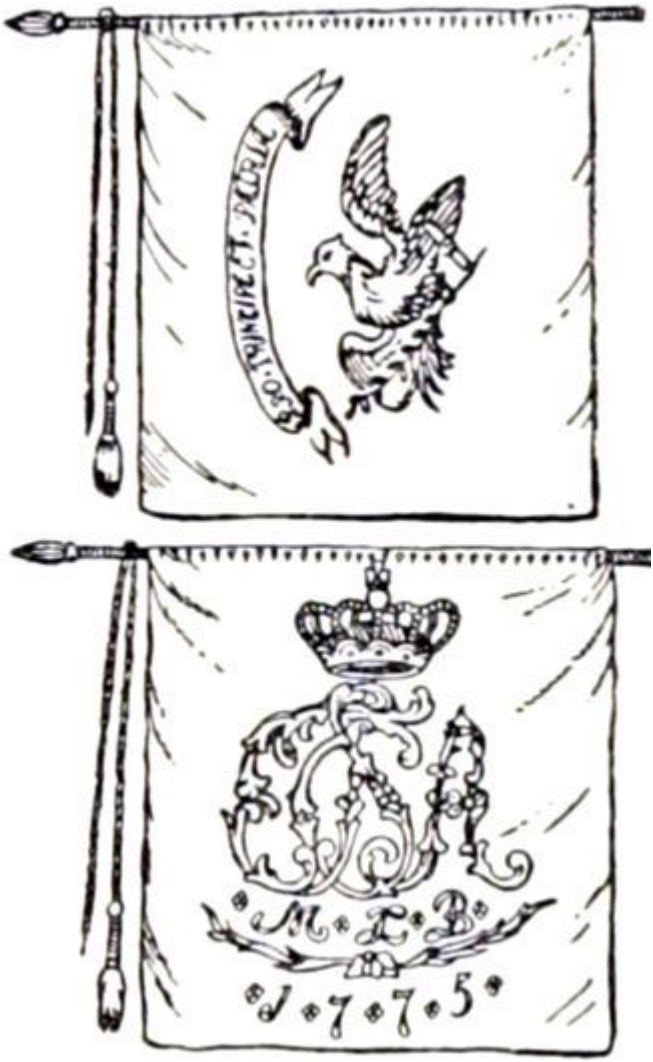
WASHINGTON ON THE MAI

An early morning surprise

"Our guns are wet," said an officer. "Then use the bayo
rush of tramping feet and the roar of cannon in the str
thousand of his men s

All night, thinly clad, many without shoes and with bleedi
shivering men, bringing at daybreak disaster to the H

These were a strange lot of prisoners. Not one could speak a word of English or cared a thing for George III. No doubt they wished themselves at home on that morning. But the Hessians were not more surprised than the British generals in New York.



HESSIAN FLAG

From a photo of the flag taken by Washington from the H Trenton and now in the museum at Alexandria

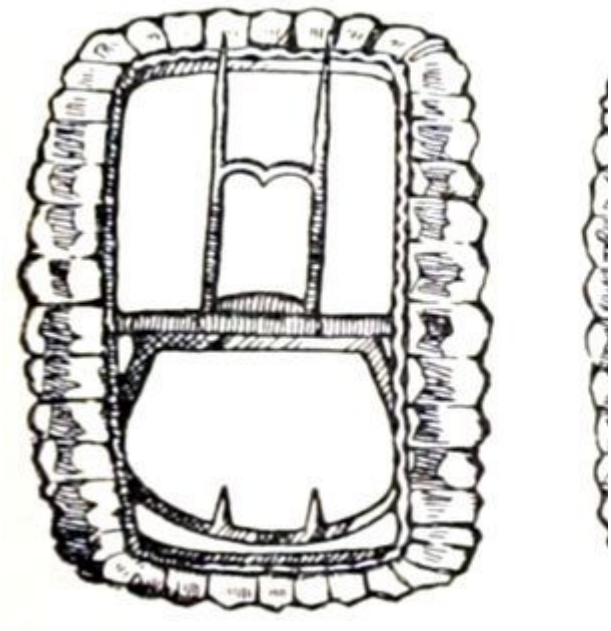
Washington

outwits another English general

Cornwallis, the British commander, hurried forward with troops to capture Washington, but rested his army at Trenton. That night Washington's army stole away, and Cornwallis awoke in the morning to hear the booming of Washington's cannon at Princeton, where Washington was defeating another part of the British army. Cornwallis hastened to Princeton. It was too late. Washington was safe among the heights of Morristown, where Cornwallis did not dare attack him.

These two victories turned the tide and aroused the Americans. Reënforcements and supplies made Washington's army stronger and more comfortable.

The next spring (1777) General Howe decided to capture Philadelphia. But Washington boldly moved his army across Howe's line of march. Howe did not want to fight, so he put his army on board his ships, sailed around into the Chesapeake, landed, and marched for the "rebel capital," as the British called Philadelphia.



KNEE BUCKLES WORN BY GEN

Washington and Howe meet at the Brandywine

At Brandywine Creek, south of Philadelphia, Washington faced him. A severe battle was fought. Each side lost about one thousand men. The Americans slowly retreated. In this battle Lafayette, a young French nobleman, was wounded. Lafayette had heard in France how the American farmers had beaten the king's regulars at Lexington, and he had made up his mind to go to help them. On his arrival Congress had made Lafayette a general in the Continental army.

Valley Forge

72. The Winter at Valley Forge. After the battle at Brandywine Creek the British slowly made their way to Philadelphia. Washington took post for the winter at Valley Forge, on the Schuylkill River, twenty miles northwest of Philadelphia. There, in the deep woods among the hills, and in log huts built by their own hands, the American forces passed a winter so full of suffering that it makes one shudder to read the story.

What the soldiers suffered for independence

When the army marched into Valley Forge, "their route could be traced on the snow by the blood that oozed from their bare, frost-bitten feet." Washington wrote to Congress that nearly three thousand of his men were "barefoot or otherwise naked."

A part of the army had no bread for three days, and for two days no meat. Hundreds had no beds, and gladly slept on piles of straw. Others had no blankets, and sat up nights before the fire to keep from freezing. Many sickened and died. But in Philadelphia the well-fed British soldiers had a gay season, with balls and banquets.

CAMP AT VALLEY

Steuben helps drill the men

Washington grieved over the suffering of his men, but never lost heart. All the long winter through, with the aid of General Steuben, a noble German officer, he drilled his men. In the spring when the British started back to New York, he gave them such a bayonet charge at Monmouth, New Jersey (1778),

they were glad to escape that night, instead of stopping to rest and bury their dead.

73. The Crowning Victory at Yorktown. For the next three years the British army remained in New York, not daring to come out and attack Washington.

GEORGE WASHINGTON

From the Gibbs-Channing portrait painted by Gilbert Stu
Washington, now in the possession of Samuel P. A

Good news

from Lafayette

Finally, in the summer of 1781, General Lafayette, who had now recovered from his wound, and had fought with the Americans at Monmouth, was sent to Virginia by Washington to watch the British army there. Lafayette sent Washington word that Cornwallis had come up from the Carolinas, and had taken post at Yorktown. After receiving more soldiers, Lafayette followed Cornwallis to Yorktown and stationed his army near that place. Washington also got word that a large French war fleet was coming to the coast of Virginia to aid the Americans. This fleet had been sent to aid the Americans by the King of France. Washington also had six thousand fine French troops under the command of General Rochambeau. This aid had been secured through the influence of Lafayette, who had visited his home in France in 1779.

Washington again outwits Cornwallis

Washington now saw his chance. He ordered Lafayette to watch Cornwallis while he himself took two thousand ragged Continentals and four thousand French troops in bright uniforms, and slipped away from New York. He was almost in Philadelphia before the British or his own soldiers could guess where he was going.

At Yorktown, Washington and his army found both Lafayette and the French fleet keeping watch. Day and night the siege went on amid the roar of cannon. When all was ready, then came the wild charge of

the Americans and the French in the face of British cannon and over British breastworks. The outer works were won, and Cornwallis saw that he must surrender. Seven thousand of the king's troops marched out and gave up their arms.

THE SURRENDER OF C

After the painting by John Trumbull which hangs in

Cornwallis surrenders

The victory at Yorktown made all Americans happy, and they rang bells, fired cannon, built bonfires, and praised Washington and Lafayette. But England was now tired of war, and many of her great men declared in favor of peace, which was soon made, in

1783.

WASHINGTON'S RES

After the painting by Trumbull in t

A touching scene

74. Washington Bids Farewell to his Officers and to Congress. Washington bade farewell to his brave soldiers, with whom he had fought so long. The parting with his officers in Fraunces' Tavern, New York, was a touching scene. With tears in his eyes, and with a voice full of tenderness, he embraced each one as he bade him good-by. It was like the parting of a father from his sons.

MOUNT VERNON, THE HOM

A noble act

Washington now journeyed to Annapolis, Maryland, where Congress was then held, to give back the authority of commander in chief which Congress had bestowed on him eight years before. How unselfish had been the conduct of Washington in refusing pay for his services! How noble was the act of giving up his power over an army which idolized him, and which he might have used to make himself king! But he did not think of these things as he hastened to his beautiful Mount Vernon to enjoy Christmas time once more with his loved ones.

How the

war had changed things

Many people visit Washington

But what a change had come to Virginia! Eight years before George III was king over all the Thirteen Colonies, and Virginia was ruled by one of his governors. Now the people were ruling themselves, and had elected one of Washington's neighbors, Benjamin Harrison, to be their governor. He missed some old friends. Some had died on the field of battle; others, like Lord Fairfax, had gone back to England, where they could be ruled by George III. Soon visitors began to come—old soldiers, beloved generals, and great statesmen from America, as well as distinguished people from Europe. They all wanted the honor of visiting the man who had led the American armies to victory, but who, again, was only a Virginia planter.

75. Lafayette Visits Washington. The year after peace was made Lafayette came back to America to visit General Washington. There were great times at Mount Vernon. Washington, Lafayette, and other noble men sat around the table and there told stories of their struggles and of their triumphs.

LAFAYETTE AT MOUI

After a painting by Rossi

Lafayette visited many other places and received a warm welcome wherever he went; he had taken active part in many battles of the Revolution; his blood had flowed for the American cause. At Monmouth he had saved the Americans from retreat by sending for Washington. He had had an important part in the crowning victory at Yorktown. The Americans loved and admired him, and did all in their power to show their gratitude. Many years after, on another visit to America, Congress voted him two hundred thousand dollars and twenty-four

thousand acres of land as a reward for his great services.

Another call to duty

76. Washington Elected First President. The American people would not let Washington long enjoy Mount Vernon, for when they met to make a new constitution, or plan of government, he was chairman of the meeting, and when that government was to go into operation they would have no other man for their first president than George Washington.

A triumphal procession from Mount Vernon to New York

In 1789 he once more bade Mount Vernon and his aged mother good-by, and began the journey to New York, which was at that time the capital of the new nation. What a journey! It was almost one continual procession and celebration! At every town and roadside the people came to show their love for Washington, whom they rightly called the "Father of his Country." School children scattered flowers in his way and beautiful young women sang patriotic songs as he passed under decorated arches. When he reached New York Harbor the bay was white with the sails of many nations. Crowds thronged the streets, cannon boomed, and flags were thrown to the breeze to welcome him.

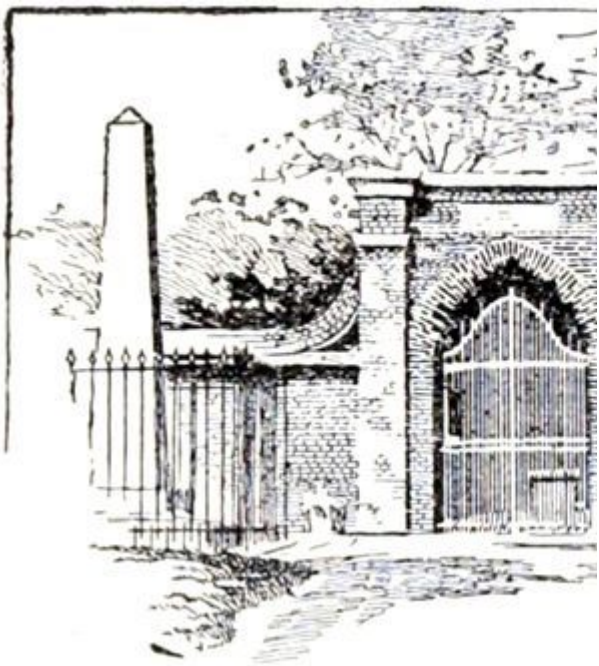
Washington takes the oath as first president

On April 30, 1789, standing on the balcony of Federal Hall in Wall Street, Washington took the oath of office, and pledged himself to govern the people according to the Constitution they had just made. He reverently bent and kissed the Bible, and became the first President of the United States. From the street, from doors and windows, and from the housetops, the people cried out: "Long live George Washington, President of the United States!"

His new office was almost as hard a task as the Revolution had been. He was now in charge of the affairs of the country. He had to see to it that laws were made to protect the rights of every one. Then he had to see that these laws were carried out. He could not guide himself by what another president had done, for there had been none before him.

WASHINGTON'S GRAND ENTRY INT

From a chromo-lithograph after an origi



WASHINGTON'S TOMB, M

But Washington directed the new ship of state so that it suffered no harm. When it looked as though we should have another war with England, he wisely preserved peace. So well were the people satisfied that they made him president a second time. When they offered him the office for a third term he refused. Thousands gathered to see him leave the capital. As he gave them his final farewell, tears rolled down his cheeks, and men cried like children.

Death in 1799

He was glad to get back to Mount Vernon, for he had grown old and weary in serving his country. He spent his remaining years among the scenes he loved

so well. There he died in 1799, mourned as a father by the whole people.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Washington was born on the Potomac, spent his early days on the Rappahannock, and went to school at Fredericksburg. *2.* He learned many things outside of school, such as horseback riding, fox hunting, and how to find his way in the deep forests. *3.* He became a surveyor in the Shenandoah for Lord Fairfax. *4.* Governor Dinwiddie sent Washington to order the French to leave the Ohio. *5.* Washington joined Braddock's campaign against the French, and in the battle tried to save the army. *6.* Washington married young Mrs. Martha Custis, and was elected to the House of Burgesses. *7.* Heard Patrick Henry's fiery speech, went to first Continental Congress, and the second Congress made him commander over the Continental army. *8.* Washington drove the British out of Boston, outwitted them around New York, retreated across the Jerseys, and then beat them at Trenton and Princeton, *9.* He fought at Brandywine, suffered at Valley Forge, penned the British up in New York, and finally captured Cornwallis at Yorktown. *10.* Washington gave up his command and retired to Mount Vernon, but was called to be the first president of the new republic.

Study Questions. *1.* Who was Washington's father and where did he meet Washington's

mother? *2.* What was a plantation and why so large? *3.* What things did Washington love to do besides study? *4.* Why did George make a good captain? *5.* Picture the yearly ship from London at Mount Vernon. *6.* Who was Lord Fairfax and what did he engage Washington to do? *7.* What did Washington do at Greenway Court? *8.* Why was Washington chosen for the mission to the French, and what was the result? *9.* What were the preliminary events before the great war? *10.* Picture Braddock's defeat. *11.* How old was Washington when he first visited Boston? *12.* How did he become so rich? *13.* What news did Washington bring back to Mount Vernon in 1765? *14.* Who went to Congress with George Washington, and how did a member speak of him? *15.* What did he learn at Congress? *16.* Picture the scene in the second Congress. *17.* Describe the trip to Boston. *18.* What task did he set before himself, and how did he accomplish it? *19.* How did Washington outwit Howe? *20.* Who was Nathan Hale? *21.* What discouraged the Americans? *22.* Picture the surprise and capture of the Hessians. *23.* How did Washington outwit Cornwallis? *24.* What effect did these victories have? *25.* What sort of a time did the soldiers spend at Valley Forge? *26.* Who was Steuben, and what did he do? *27.* How did Lafayette aid Washington? *28.* Picture the surrounding and capture of Cornwallis. *29.* What changes had the war made in Virginia? *30.* In what way did Congress honor Lafayette? *31.* Picture Washington's journey to New York.

Suggested Readings. WASHINGTON: Cooke, *Stories of the Old Dominion*, 94-139; Blaisdell and Ball, *Hero Stories from American History*, 62-76, 123-155; Hart, *Camps and Firesides of the Revolution*, 239-255, 261-266, 307-309; Glascock, *Stories of Columbia*, 101-113; Baldwin, *Four Great Americans*, 9-68; Hart, *How our Grandfathers Lived*, 45-47; Mabie, *Heroes Every Child Should Know*, 274-288; Hawthorne, *Grandfather's Chair*, 186-191; Magell, *Stories from Virginia History*, 56-78, 79-94; Brooks, *True Story of Lafayette*; Wister, *The Seven Ages of Washington*; Mace, *George Washington: A Virginia Cavalier*.

THE MAN WHO HELPED WIN INDEPENDENCE BY WINNING THE HEARTS OF FRENCHMEN FOR AMERICA

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, THE WISEST AMERICAN OF HIS TIME

Born in colonial times

77. Benjamin Franklin, the Boy Printer. When Franklin was born in Boston (1706) there were men still living who had seen John Winthrop, the first governor of Massachusetts, and Roger Williams, the founder of Rhode Island.

The scholar of the family

Franklin's father was a poor but hard-working man. He made soap and candles. Benjamin's nine brothers had learned trades, but his parents had decided that he should be the "scholar of the family." At eight he went to school to prepare for college and was soon at the head of his class.

Put to work

But it was hard to feed and clothe a family of seventeen, and Benjamin was sent to another school where he could fit himself for business. But he did poorly in arithmetic, and at ten was taken out of school and put to work with his father.

Longs for the sea

In the port of Boston Franklin saw the ships and sailors of all nations, and longed to go to sea, but his father took him to visit the shops, where he saw men busy at work with all kinds of tools. Although Benjamin liked to work with tools, he liked to read better, and spent all his little earnings in buying books. He borrowed books when he could not buy them.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN

From the original portrait by Joseph Siffrein Duplessis, in Boston

How he

improved his language

Finally Franklin's parents decided that since he loved books so well he might be a printer, and put him to learn the trade with an older brother. Benjamin was to serve his brother for his board and clothes until he was twenty-one. He worked hard at his trade, and read more books than before. He improved his own language by writing out in his own words what he had read, and then comparing his account with the author's.

He now offered to take half the money that his board cost, and board himself. His brother agreed to this plan, and Benjamin saved money and bought more books.

Writes for his brother's paper

He longed to write something for his brother's paper. He did so, and put it at night under the door, but he did not dare sign his name to what he had written. His brother showed it to his friends. They praised it, and it was printed. It was fun for Benjamin to hear people guessing that the writer must be some great man in Boston. Franklin wrote several other articles, and called them the "Dogood Papers," but his brother was angry when he learned who wrote them.

Leaves home

Franklin was now only seventeen, but because of his brother's cruelty he sold his books and took a boat

for New York without saying good-by to his parents. He afterwards said that leaving home in this way was a great mistake.

From New York to Philadelphia

No one in New York wanted a printer, so young Franklin took a boat for Perth-Amboy, New Jersey, on his way to Philadelphia. His ship was caught in a storm, and the passengers were wet and hungry when they landed.

Franklin set out on foot across the state for Burlington. For nearly three days he walked in the rain along muddy roads, looking so rough people thought he was a runaway servant. He was tired and homesick. But he took boat again, and reached Philadelphia on Sunday morning, landing at the foot of Market Street.

FRANKLIN AND DEBORAH REE

The first meeting of Franklin and the young girl wh

His sorry plight

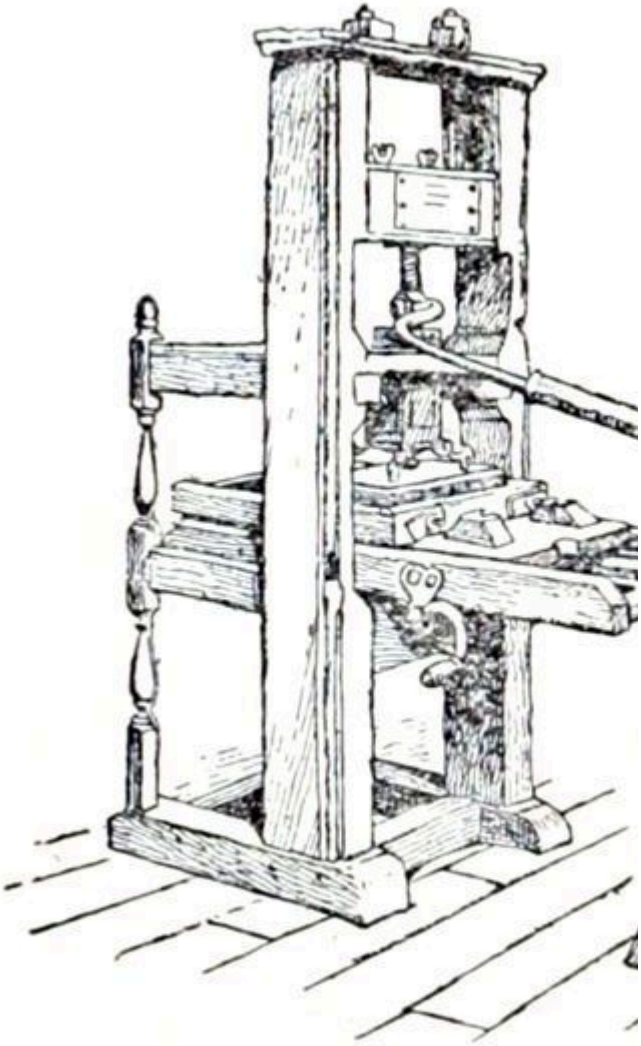
He was so hungry, he thought more of something to eat than of dressing up for Sunday. He was in a sorry plight. With his pockets stuffed with soiled shirts and stockings, and a roll of bread under each arm and one in his hand, Franklin walked up Market Street, and passed the home of his future wife, Deborah Reed. No wonder she laughed at him. She would have laughed more if some one had said: "There goes a boy who will some day become your husband and the greatest man in Philadelphia."

Good books and good company

Franklin found work in a printing office, saved his money, and bought books to study. He got acquainted with other young people who also loved books, and he often spent his evenings with them.

A call from the governor

To the surprise of Franklin and his brother printers, one day Sir William Keith, the governor of Pennsylvania, called at the shop to see Franklin. Governors did not then pay much attention to poor printers. The governor, who was dissatisfied with Philadelphia printers, promised to send him to England to buy a printing press.



PRINTING PRESS

From a photo of the press used by Franklin when in Lond National Museum, Washington, D.C.

Returns

home before going to London

Franklin, with the governor's letter in his pocket, hastened back to Boston in order to get his father's help to go to London. How happy were parents, brothers, and sisters to see the long-absent son and brother! But his father could give him no aid, and the young printer returned to Philadelphia. The governor, however, promised to pay his expenses, and Benjamin took ship for England.

The governor had not even given him letters of introduction, to say nothing of money, and Franklin found himself a stranger in one of the largest cities in the world.

In a London printing office

He did not whine or spend his time grumbling, but went bravely to work in a printing office. He set a good example to his beer-drinking comrades by drinking only water and proving he was stronger and able to do more work and do it better than any of them.

A FRANKLIN STOVE

After a model in the rooms of the American Philosophical Society, Philadelphia

Returns to

Philadelphia and marries

The next year a Philadelphia merchant persuaded Franklin to return to America to become his clerk. But in a few years he went to work again at his old trade as printer, and in a short time became the editor of the *Pennsylvania Gazette*.

Franklin had already married Miss Reed, the young lady who had laughed at him for making a show of himself on his first day in Philadelphia.

Founds three great institutions

78. A Rising Young Man. He was now a rising young man in the old Quaker city. From year to year he did many things to help others. He started a circulating library, the first in America, out of which has grown the Philadelphia Public Library. He founded a school which has become the great University of Pennsylvania, and a society, called the American Philosophical Society, which still holds important meetings.

Invents a stove

Forms the first fire department

Franklin improved the heating of houses by inventing the "Franklin stove," but refused to take out a patent and thus make himself rich at other

people's expense. He also formed the first "fire department" in any American town.

Poor Richard's sayings

Who has not heard of *Poor Richard's Almanac*? Franklin printed it, and the people liked it so well that he sometimes printed ten thousand copies. Here are a few of the quaint and true sayings: "A word to the wise is enough." "God helps those who help themselves."

> "Early to bed and early to rise,
> Makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise."

Economy is the road to wealth

Franklin and his young wife kept these rules faithfully. She worked in the printing office as well as in the house. They hired no servants: Their furniture, dress, and food were plain. He ate his breakfast of bread and milk out of a wooden bowl with a pewter spoon. Mrs. Franklin surprised him one day by giving him a china bowl and a silver spoon. She said her husband deserved such things as well as other men.

Elected to office

The people of Philadelphia admired Benjamin Franklin more and more. At the age of thirty he was chosen clerk of the Assembly of Pennsylvania, and afterward was elected a lawmaker in the Assembly.

Every year for ten years his neighbors elected him to help make the laws of the colony.

MILESTONE, LYME, CON

This milestone, still standing at Lyme, marks the distanc

Deputy postmaster-general

In a few years Franklin was made deputy postmaster-general for all the colonies by the king. He surprised the people by declaring that the mail should be carried from Philadelphia to Boston every week! He was postmaster-general for more than twenty years.

Franklin plans a union of the colonies

In 1754 Franklin was sent by the colony of Pennsylvania to Albany, New York, to meet men from other colonies to make a treaty with the Iroquois, and to plan a union of the Thirteen Colonies. While George Washington was still a surveyor, before Wolfe captured Quebec, and when Patrick Henry was yet a boy, Franklin wrote out a plan of union which pointed the way toward that greater Union, the United States of America.

Fame begins to come

Franklin was now becoming famous outside of Pennsylvania. Yale College honored him with the degree of Master of Arts. The old University of Cambridge, England, gave him the same degree.

All the wise men in England and France were excited by news of an experiment made by Benjamin Franklin. He had made electricity by using glass tubes, and he had seen the lightning flash in the

storm cloud. He decided to prove, if he could, that lightning and electricity are the same. No one had yet done this.

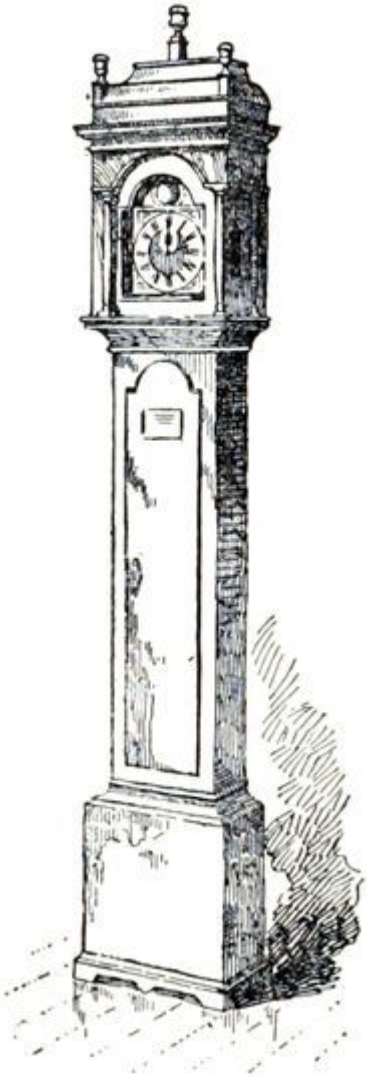
Proves that lightning and electricity are the same

He made a kite out of silk, to which he fastened a small iron rod. Then he tied a hempen string to the kite and the rod. To the lower end of the string he tied a silken cord to protect his hand from the electricity. On the string he tied a key.

One day when the storm clouds came rolling up, Franklin sent his kite high up among them, while he waited. Soon the loose fibers on the hempen string moved. Franklin placed his knuckles close to the key, and sparks came flying at his hand.

More honors

When the news of this experiment was published some very wise men smiled; others said it was a trick. The great universities of Oxford and Edinburgh, however, gave him the doctor's degree, and societies of wise men in England, France, and Spain elected him a member. He was now the most famous American.



FRANKLIN'S CLOCK

Sent to England to defend the colonies

79. Franklin's Part in the Revolution. Already we have seen that England and her colonies were beginning to quarrel. What wiser man could be sent to England to defend the colonies by tongue and pen than Benjamin Franklin? He made friends for America among the great men of England.

How Franklin helped the English understand the Stamp Act

When the Stamp Act was passed the members of Parliament asked him nearly two hundred questions about the effects of the Stamp Act on America. He wrote many letters to great men, and long articles to the English newspapers, explaining how the Stamp Act injured America. Both England and America rejoiced when the king and Parliament repealed the Stamp Act, and Franklin sent his wife a fine London gown in honor of the event.

Franklin and Pitt

For eight years more, while America was busy opposing the tax on tea, Franklin was in England trying to get Parliament and the king to give the Americans better treatment. But it was all in vain. He often talked with William Pitt, the great friend of America, who introduced into Parliament a plan for making friends between the two countries. But the plan was defeated.

Hastens

home

Franklin saw that war would come, and hastened back to his beloved America, where he arrived just after the battle at Lexington and Concord (1775).

Franklin plans union

Pennsylvania sent him to the Congress of 1775, which, sitting in Philadelphia, made George Washington general of the Continental army. Franklin saw that if the thirteen scattered colonies were to defeat Great Britain they must unite. So he introduced into Congress a plan of union, but the other members were not ready for it.

Helps write the Declaration of Independence

Franklin was one of five men who were named by Congress to write the Declaration of Independence (1776).

Franklin in France

Soon after, Congress sent him to France to influence the king and the people of that country to aid America in winning independence. The French hated the English, but admired Benjamin Franklin. The king gave money secretly, and many French officers came to serve in the American army.

France sends aid

In 1778 Franklin influenced the King of France to take sides openly with the Americans. French warships and French soldiers by thousands now came to help fight our battles.

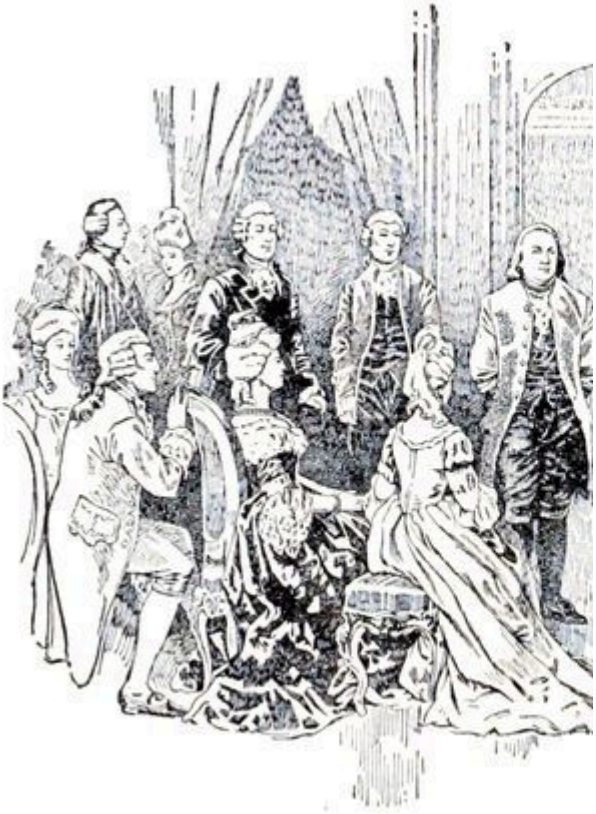
INDEPENDENCE HALL, PHILADELPHIA

From an old p

Treaty with England

After helping to make the treaty of peace with England in 1783, Franklin came home with many

honors. Though nearly eighty years old, the people of Pennsylvania immediately elected him governor.



FRANKLIN AT THE COU

Franklin did one more great work for his country. In 1787 the states sent their wisest men to Philadelphia to make a constitution, or plan of government. Pennsylvania chose Franklin, with others, to meet with these men in Independence Hall.

Helps make our Constitution

Franklin signs the Constitution

George Washington, as we have seen, was the president of this meeting. Many speeches were made, and there was debating for many weeks. The meeting was always glad to hear Franklin speak, for he was a very wise man. As he had helped to make, and had signed, the Declaration of Independence, so now, after helping make the Constitution, he signed it. Many persons did not like the Constitution. Franklin said there were some things in the new plan which he did not like, but declared that he signed it because of the good things it did contain. He showed his wisdom, for it is one of the best plans of government ever made.

Died in 1790

Franklin spent his last days with his daughter, and, surrounded by his grandchildren, died in 1790, at the age of eighty-four.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Franklin's parents were poor, had seventeen children; hence Benjamin, though a studious fellow, was put to the printer's trade. *2.* Franklin wrote the "Dogood Papers." Left home for New York, but went on to Philadelphia. *3.* Persuaded to go to London. He returned and married. *4.* Franklin started a circulating library, a school which became the University of

Pennsylvania, and a society called the American Philosophical Society. *5.* He invented a stove, founded the first fire department in America, and printed *Poor Richard's Almanac*. *6.* Wrote the first plan of an American Union, and won degrees from English and Scotch universities. *7.* Franklin was one of the committee to write the Declaration of Independence. *8.* Was sent to France, where he won the help of France in the War of the Revolution. *9.* Franklin was governor of the state of Pennsylvania, was a delegate to help make the Constitution, and died at the age of 84.

Study Questions. *1.* How long ago was Franklin born? *2.* Tell of his school experiences. *3.* Why did Franklin not go to sea? *4.* Tell the story of his bargain with his brother. *5.* What did Franklin hear about the "Dogood Papers"? *6.* Tell the story of the "runaway printer." *7.* How did he save his time in Philadelphia? *8.* How did he happen to go to London the first time? *9.* What good example did he set to London printers? *10.* Why did he return to Philadelphia? *11.* What three great institutions did he found? *12.* Why did the people like *Poor Richard's Almanac*? *13.* What public offices did he hold? *14.* Picture Franklin proving that electricity and lightning are the same. *15.* What did he go to England a second time for? *16.* How did Franklin aid in the repeal of the Stamp Act? *17.* In what great events did he have a part? *18.* What was his work in France? *19.* What was his last great work? *20.* How did he spend his last days? *21.* Point

out the obstacles he overcame all along in his career.

Suggested Readings. FRANKLIN: Baldwin, *Four Great Americans*, 71-122; Hart, *Camps and Firesides of the Revolution*, 158-162; Hart, *Colonial Children*, 197-199, 210-214; Wright, *Children's Stories of Great Scientists*, 71-89; Bolton, *Famous American Statesmen*, 38-66; Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 65-76.

PATRICK HENRY AND SAMUEL ADAMS, FAMOUS MEN OF THE REVOLUTION, WHO DEFENDED AMERICA WITH TONGUE AND PEN

PATRICK HENRY, THE ORATOR OF THE REVOLUTION

PATRICK HENRY

After the painting by Thomas Sully, owned by William
Richmond, Virginia

Why the king wished to tax America

80. The Stamp Act. The surrender of Quebec and the fall of New France caused great rejoicing among the thirteen colonies. But the long, hard war had left both England and her colonies deeply in debt. King George III, however, thinking only of England's debt, decided that England ought to tax the colonies to pay for an army which he wished to keep in America.

PATRICK HENRY SPEAKING IN THE HO

From an engraving after the original pai

What the Stamp Act

was

So the Parliament of England passed a law that all licenses to marry, all deeds to property, licenses to trade, newspapers, almanacs, and other pamphlets had to be printed on stamped paper. This paper ranged in value from a few cents to many dollars.

Leading men in every one of the thirteen colonies spoke and wrote against the Stamp Act. Of all the men who did so, Patrick Henry, of Virginia, was the most eloquent and fiery. He had been elected by the people of his county to go up to Williamsburg, the capital of Virginia, to help make the laws. There were many able men in that old House of Burgesses, but none of them wished to take the lead in opposing the king's plan of a stamp tax.

Patrick Henry in the House of Burgesses

One day young Henry, although a new member, snatched a blank leaf from a law book and wrote down a set of resolutions declaring that only the Virginia Assembly could tax Virginians, and that any one who asserted the contrary was an enemy of the colony.

Patrick Henry's famous speech

He backed up these resolutions with a speech that stirred the Burgesses. He was so fiery and bold that men almost held their breath while they listened to

the young orator. He closed by declaring that George III was acting like a tyrant, and that "Caesar had his Brutus, Charles the First his Cromwell, and George the Third—" "Treason! treason!" shouted the Speaker of the House. Waiting a moment till the noise ceased, the orator, with a calm and steady voice, added, "may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it."

Henry's resolutions were passed, and were printed in almost every newspaper in the colonies. They made the people more determined than ever not to buy stamped paper.

Who was this young lawyer that stirred these dignified Virginia gentlemen in powdered hair, knee breeches, and silver buckles?

Patrick as a boy

81. The Orator of the Revolution. Patrick Henry was born in Virginia (1736). His father was a well-educated Scotchman, who taught school and became a lawyer. His mother was of Welsh blood. Young Patrick went to school, but he liked to hunt and fish far better than to study. He was a puzzle to his parents.

Early failures

By the time he was eighteen he had failed as a student, as a clerk, and as a storekeeper. He then married. The parents on both sides helped them to start farming with a few slaves. In two years Patrick Henry was forced to sell. Once more he tried keeping a country store. In three years the store closed its

doors and Patrick Henry, aged twenty-three, was without an occupation.

Liked to study history and law

He now turned to the study of law. Although not in love with school when a boy, he loved to read the Bible. He also had a strong liking for history, and, in his youth, read the histories of Greece, of Rome, of England, and of the colonies. By a few months of hard study of the law he passed the examination. He succeeded from the first, and in less than four years had been engaged in more than one thousand cases.

Succeeded as a lawyer

Patrick's father the judge

82. The Parsons' Case. In 1763 Patrick Henry set all Virginia to talking about him as a lawyer. This colony had paid its clergymen from the beginning. Each one received a certain number of pounds of tobacco for his salary. But the price was now high and now low. A dispute arose because of this and was taken into court. But no great lawyer would take the people's side. Patrick Henry did. The courthouse was filled with people, many clergymen among them. In the judge's chair sat Patrick's own father.

PEOPLE OF THE COURT CARRYING PATRICK HENRY (

Henry's first great speech

The people overjoyed

Henry began his speech in an awkward way. The clergymen felt encouraged, while his friends and father felt uneasy. Soon he began to warm up. His

words came more freely, and his gestures grew more graceful. The people began to listen, and then to lean forward spellbound by the charm of his eloquence and the power of his argument. The clergy grew angry and left the room. His father, forgetting that he was judge, cried for joy. When Henry finished, the people seized him and carried him on their shoulders from the court room and around the yard, shouting and cheering all the while.

Elected a lawmaker

Patrick Henry was now the people's hero. At the election the following year his friends chose him to go to the House of Burgesses, and there, in 1765, he made his stirring speech against the Stamp Act.

ON THE WAY TO THE GREAT CON

The Stamp Act repealed

Many great Englishmen, such as William Pitt and Edmund Burke, opposed the Stamp Tax. Finally, King

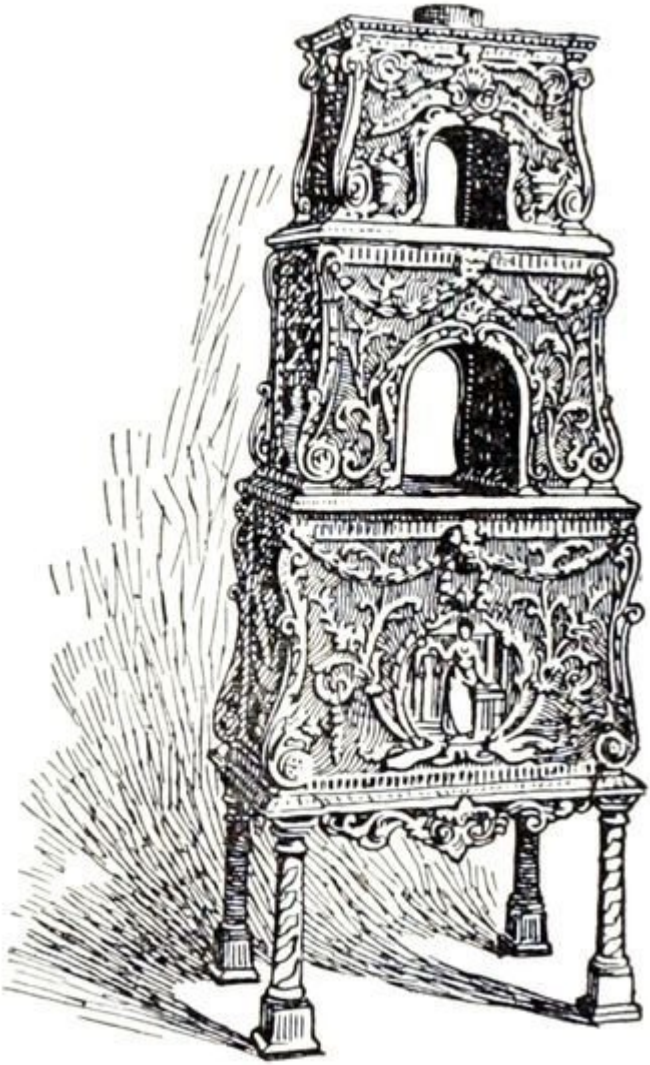
George and his Parliament repealed the unpopular act. The Americans were happy when they heard of its repeal.

ST. JOHN'S CHURCH,

The Americans angry over the Tea Tax

83. New Taxes. As if the king and Parliament could

learn nothing, they passed a Tea Tax the very next year, placing a tax on all the tea imported into the colonies. Then the Americans everywhere refused to buy the tea and pay the tax. When the tea ships came to America the people of New York and Philadelphia sent them back, and the "Sons of Liberty" at Annapolis burned a ship full of tea. The king's governor at Boston refused to permit the ships to carry the tea back to England, but the people, one night, threw the tea into the sea. King George grew angry at such "tea parties," and had laws passed to punish Boston. More British soldiers were sent there to force the people to obey these detested laws.



THE STOVE IN THE HOUSE OF THE BURGESSES

This stove is now in the State Library of Virginia

Patrick Henry

meets Samuel Adams at the great Congress

The colonies, more excited than ever, decided to hold a great Congress in Philadelphia (1774). Virginia, like the others, sent her best men. There in Carpenter's Hall, a building still standing, Henry made friends of leading men of other colonies. There he met Samuel Adams, who was doing with his pen what Henry was doing with his tongue, and they became life-long friends.

A new sentiment

One day, when speaking in favor of united action, Patrick Henry declared: "The distinctions between Virginians, Pennsylvanians, New Yorkers, and New Englanders are no more. I am not a Virginian, but an American."

As Patrick Henry talked with men from other colonies and heard how the king's troops were acting at Boston, he was convinced that war must come. He went home and urged the people of Virginia to arm for the coming struggle. The king's governor refused to permit meetings in the old capitol at Williamsburg, so they were held in St. John's Church, Richmond, a church still standing.

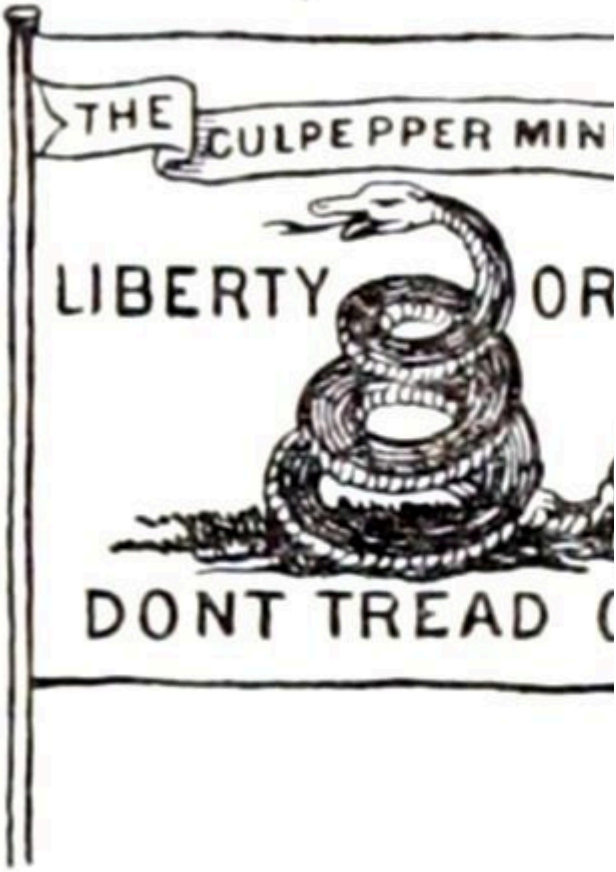
DECLAIMING PATRICK HENRY'S FAMOUS

As a favorite declamation this great speech still rouses th America

Patrick

Henry's new resolutions

Here Patrick Henry offered resolutions declaring that Virginia should arm herself for the coming war. It was a serious time, and these were serious resolutions. Should the thirteen colonies go to war with one of the greatest nations in the world? Would it not be wise to send more petitions to the king? Some of the ablest men in Virginia opposed Henry's resolutions.



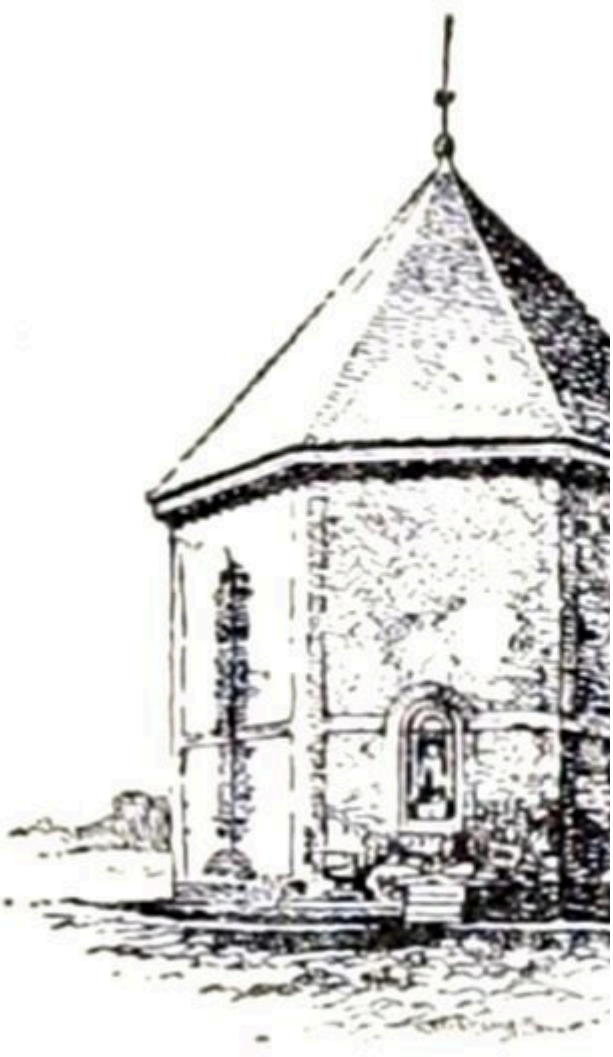
THE FLAG OF THE VIRGINIA MI

Patrick Henry's greatest speech

War is inevitable

84. Patrick Henry Defends his Resolutions.

Patrick Henry listened to the speeches with smothered excitement. When he rose to defend his resolutions his face was pale and his voice was trembling. But soon his audience forgot what other men had said. They leaned forward and listened as if no other man had spoken. He stirred their deepest feelings when he declared: "We must fight! I repeat it, Sir, we must fight! An appeal to arms and the God of Hosts is all that is left to us. They tell us, Sir, that we are weak; unable to cope with so formidable an adversary. But when shall we be stronger? Will it be the next week or the next year? Sir, we are not weak, if we make a proper use of the means which the God of Nature hath placed in our power. There is no retreat but in submission and slavery. Our chains are forged! Their clanking may be heard on the plains of Boston! The war is inevitable, and let it come! I repeat it, Sir: Let it come!—The war is actually begun! The next gale that sweeps from the north will bring to our ears the clash of resounding arms. Our brothers are already in the field! Why stand we here idle! Is life so dear, or peace so sweet, as to be purchased at the price of chains and slavery? Forbid it, Almighty God! I know not what course others may take; but as for me, give me liberty, or give me death."



OLD POWDER HOUSE, WILLIA

The removal of the powder from this house to a British ma the Virginians

What a

listener in St. John's Church saw and heard

One who heard this speech says that when the orator spoke the words "chains and slavery," he stood like a slave with his body bent, his wrists crossed, as if bound by chains, and that his face looked like that of a hopeless slave. After a solemn pause he raised his eyes and chained hands toward heaven, and said, as if in prayer: "Forbid it, Almighty God!" He then slowly bent his body still nearer the floor, looking like a man oppressed, heart-broken, and helpless, and said: "I know not what course others may take." Then, rising grandly and proudly, with every muscle strained, as if he would break his imaginary chains, he exclaimed: "Give me liberty, or give me death!"

PATRICK HENRY

From the bronze figure of the Washington monument by Cr Richmond

What

Washington saw in Boston in 1775

The men who heard this great speech never forgot it. The people of Virginia now pushed forward the work of arming her men. And when her own Washington went to take command of the army at Boston he found Virginia soldiers there wearing on their hunting shirts the words "Liberty or death!"

Patrick Henry loved by Virginians

From this time on Patrick Henry was in the forefront of the struggle with England. Virginia sent him to Congress, then she made him an officer in the army, and finally not only made him the first governor after independence was declared, but elected him to that office three times in succession, and offered him the same office three times more.

After independence was won Patrick Henry opposed the adoption of our constitution, although Washington, Madison, and many of his friends were in favor of it. When, however, he saw that the new constitution was a good one, he gave his support to his friend, President Washington.

Patrick Henry in his old age

Patrick Henry finally retired to his plantation and refused all offers of office. Many old friends and many great strangers went to visit him in his old age

as one of the great men of the American Revolution. In the year of his death (1799), when some danger threatened Virginia, Patrick Henry came forth at Washington's request, old and feeble as he was, and aroused the people once more with his burning words. They elected him to the House of Burgesses by a great majority, but he did not live to take office.

SAMUEL ADAMS, THE FIREBRAND OF THE REVOLUTION

Samuel Adams the pen of the Revolution

85. Samuel Adams. While Patrick Henry was stirring the feelings of the people by his fiery eloquence, Samuel Adams was stirring them by strong arguments in his writings, to oppose the acts of king and of Parliament.

SAMUEL ADAMS

From the original painting by John Singleton Copley, repre
1771, now hanging in the Museum of Fine Arts,

A student

Samuel Adams was born in Massachusetts (1722). While he loved school and books he cared very little for spending his time in outdoor amusements. At eighteen Samuel was graduated from Harvard College. His parents hoped that he would be a minister, but he began to study law. His mother was so opposed to his becoming a lawyer that he gave up the study and turned to business. He set up in business for himself, but, like Patrick Henry, soon lost all. He next went into business with his father, but in that, too, he failed. Finally Samuel Adams turned to politics.

Early love for politics

While a student in Harvard he had debated the question whether it was right to resist the king to save the country from ruin. He took an active part in debating clubs and very soon began to write for the newspapers, encouraging resistance. He never hesitated to take what he thought the right side of any question.

Why Adams opposed the Stamp Act

Speaking before a meeting of Boston people, Samuel Adams boldly declared that if England could tax the business of the colonies, then, "why not tax our lands

and everything we possess or make use of?" Such taxes, he said, would make the colonists slaves.

In a short time the people of Boston were reading in the papers the fiery resolutions and the still more fiery speech of Patrick Henry. Samuel Adams seized his pen and also began to pour hot shot into the Stamp Act.

How he opposed the Stamp Act

The Boston people elected him to be their representative in the Massachusetts Assembly. More and more he took the lead in the movement against the Stamp Act. He went about the shops, into the stores, wherever he found people to listen to him.

He helped them form a society, called the Sons of Liberty, which destroyed the hated stamps as soon as they arrived. He talked with the merchants, and they signed a pledge not to buy any more goods from England until the Stamp Act was repealed. At this the British merchants felt the loss of trade and joined in the cry against the Stamp Act.

86. The Tea Tax. We have seen that Parliament, after the Stamp Act was repealed, passed the famous Tea Act. The Americans were angry again, and the Sons of Liberty declared that no tea should be landed. The merchants took the pledge again to buy no more English goods, and patriotic women began to make tea out of the leaves of other plants.

SAMUEL ADAMS WRITING THE FAMOUS

Samuel Adams writes the "Circular

Letter"

Samuel Adams again sharpened his pen, and wrote the famous old "Circular Letter," which urged all the colonies to unite and stand firm in opposing the tax on tea. This letter made King George very angry, but Samuel Adams only wrote the more.

Night after night as the people passed his window they saw by his lamp that he was busy with his pen, and said to one another: "Samuel Adams is hard at work writing against the Tories." People in England and America who took the king's side in these disputes were called Tories.

Conflicts between people and soldiers

The king now sent two regiments of soldiers to Boston to force the people to pay the Tea Tax. There were frequent quarrels between the soldiers and the people. One evening in a street quarrel the soldiers killed three men and wounded eight others (1770). Immediately the fire bells rang and great crowds of angry people filled the streets. The next day they filled to overflowing Faneuil Hall, the "Cradle of Liberty." A still larger meeting in the Old South Church cried out that both regiments of soldiers must leave town.

Samuel Adams and the people drive the soldiers out of

Boston

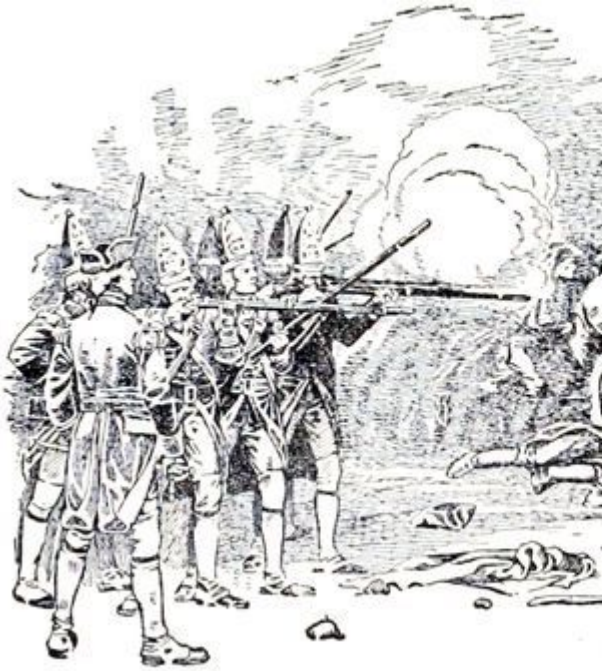
Adams and other leaders were sent to the king's officers to tell them what the people had said. Before the governor and the general, backed by the king's authority and by two regiments, stood plain Samuel Adams, with only the voice of the people to help him.

The governor, unwilling to obey the demand of the people, said he would send one regiment away. But Samuel Adams stood firm, and said: "Both regiments or none!" The governor finally gave up, and Samuel Adams, the man of the people, was a greater leader than ever before.

The king now tried to trick the Americans into paying the tax by making tea cheaper in America than in England, but leaving on the tax. But the people everywhere declared that they did not object to the price, but to the tax.

The tea ships guarded while town meetings are held

87. The Boston Tea Party. When the ships carrying this cheaper tea arrived in Boston, Samuel Adams set a guard of armed men to keep the tea from being landed.



THE BOSTON MA

Town meeting followed town meeting. On December 16, 1773, the greatest one of all was held. Early that morning hundreds of country people started for Boston. They found the shops and stores closed and people standing on the street corners talking earnestly.

THE BOSTON TEA PARTY ABOARD TH

At ten o'clock the people met in the Old South Church, and voted that the tea should never be landed. They also sent the owner of the ships to the governor for permission to take the tea ships out of the harbor.

Permission to return tea denied

In the afternoon still greater crowds pushed and

jammed into the seats, aisles, and galleries of that famous church. Samuel Adams was chairman. He made a speech. Other leaders spoke. One stirred the audience by asking "how tea would mix with salt water." Evening came, and candles were lighted. The owner of the tea vessels returned and said the governor would not give him the permission.

The Boston Tea Party

Immediately Samuel Adams arose and said: "This meeting can do nothing to save the country!" In a moment the war whoop of the "Mohawks" sounded outside. The crowd rushed out and found the people following a band of men disguised as Indians down where the tea ships lay at anchor. The "Mohawks" went on board, brought up the boxes of tea, broke them open, and threw the tea into the sea.

Paul Revere's first ride

That very night Samuel Adams sent fast riders to carry the news to the country towns. The next day, with letters to the leaders in other colonies in his saddlebags, Paul Revere, the great courier of the Revolution, started on his long ride to New York and Philadelphia. As he went from town to town and told the story of the Tea Party the people cheered him, spread dinners for him, built bonfires, and fired cannon. He saw thousands of people gather in New York and Philadelphia, and heard them declare that they would stand by Boston.

Boston Port Bill

Boston soon needed help, for the king and Parliament passed a law that no ship could enter or leave Boston Harbor, and another which forbade town meetings. Other hard laws were also passed, and an army was sent to Boston to force the people to obey them.

88. The First Continental Congress. We have seen a call go forth for a Congress at Philadelphia (1774). The Massachusetts legislature chose Samuel Adams and his cousin, John Adams, with two others to go to the Congress.

ASSEMBLY ROOM IN CAR

Here met the first Continental C

Strange visitors

But Samuel Adams was very poor and could not afford to dress in a style suited to meet the rich merchants of New York and Philadelphia and the great planters of the southern colonies. One evening while the family was at tea, in came the most fashionable tailor of the town to take his measure. Next came a hatter, and then a shoemaker. In a few days a new trunk at his door told the story, for in it were a suit of clothes, two pairs of shoes, silver shoe buckles, gold knee buckles, a cocked hat, a gold-headed cane, and a fashionable red cloak. What proof of the people's love for their neighbor!

CARPENTER'S HALL, PHILADELP

Poor but loyal

Although Samuel Adams was a very poor man, George III did not have offices enough to bribe him or gold enough to buy his pen. Several times the king's officers had tried to do both, but they did not succeed.

What Samuel and John Adams saw on the way to Philadelphia

In a carriage drawn by four horses, the delegates to Congress were escorted by their friends right by the king's soldiers. The people of the large towns met them, escorted them, rang bells, fired cannon, feasted them at banquets, and talked of the Congress.

New and noble friends

At New York Samuel Adams and his friends were kept nearly a week. Many persons in carriages and on horseback came out to welcome them to Philadelphia, the city of William Penn. People were anxious to see the man who had written the "Circular Letter," who had driven the king's regiments out of Boston, who had planned the Tea Party, and whom the king could not bribe. Here, in Carpenter's Hall, for the first time, he met George Washington, Patrick Henry, and Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, Christopher Gadsden, who was called the "Samuel Adams of South Carolina," and many other noble men who became his life-long friends.

PAUL REVERE ALARMING '

The old Hancock House, where, guarded by the minutemen when Paul Revere rode by, stil

Other colonies to help

Boston

Soon Paul Revere came riding into Philadelphia with the news that the patriots of Boston were in danger of being attacked by the British. The Congress immediately declared that if the British made war on Boston, it was the duty of every colony to help her people fight. It now looked as if war might come at any moment.

Minutemen

When Congress was over, Samuel Adams hastened home to help form, in all the Massachusetts towns, companies of minutemen ready to fight at a moment's warning. The next spring the news got out that British soldiers were going to Concord to destroy the powder and provisions collected there by the minutemen, and also to capture Samuel Adams and John Hancock and send them to England to be tried for treason. Paul Revere agreed to alarm the minutemen the moment the soldiers left Boston.

Alarming the minutemen

89. Paul Revere's Midnight Ride. Standing by his horse across the river from Boston, one April evening, waiting for signals, Paul Revere saw two lanterns flash their light from the tower of the Old North Church. He mounted and rode in hot haste toward Lexington, arousing the sleeping villages as he cried out: "Up and arm, the regulars are coming!" Soon he heard the alarm gun of the minutemen and the excited ringing of the church bells. He knew the country was rising.

At Lexington minutemen who guarded the house where Samuel Adams and John Hancock were sleeping ordered Revere not to make so much noise. "You will soon have noise enough," he shouted. "The regulars are coming!" And he rode on toward Concord.

The first conflict of the minutemen

90. The Battle at Lexington and at Concord Bridge. As the British soldiers reached Lexington at sunrise, April 19, 1775, the captain of the minutemen gave the command: "Stand your ground. Don't fire unless fired upon. But if they mean to have war, let it begin here!" A bold speech for a captain of only about sixty men when facing as brave soldiers as Europe had ever seen! The minutemen stood their ground till seven were killed and nine wounded—nearly one third of their number. Then they retreated.

The retreat of the British

The British pushed on to Concord. But the minutemen, now coming from every direction, made a stand at Concord Bridge. Their musket fire was so deadly that the British started back, running at times to escape with their lives. At Lexington they fell upon the ground, tired out with the chase the minutemen gave them, and were met by fresh troops from Boston.

Many

redcoats fall

Soon the British soldiers were forced to run again, for minutemen by hundreds were gathering, and they seldom missed their aim. From behind rocks, trees, fences, and houses they cut down the tired redcoats. Nearly three hundred British soldiers were killed or wounded before Boston was reached that night.

Bunker Hill, June 17, 1775

91. The Battle of Bunker Hill. Day and night for weeks minutemen from other New England colonies, and even from as far south as Virginia, marched in hot haste to Boston. The British general soon found his army in Boston entirely cut off from the mainland. He resolved to fortify Bunker Hill, but what was his surprise to wake one morning (June 17) and find the Americans under Colonel Prescott already building breastworks on the hill.

THE BATTLE OF BUI

Three fierce charges

That afternoon three thousand picked troops, in solid columns and with bayonets gleaming, marched up the hill to storm that breastwork. "Don't fire till you can see the whites of their eyes!" said the commander of the minutemen. On came the lines of red, with banners flying and drums beating. From the breastworks there ran a flame of fire which mowed the redcoats down like grass. They reeled, broke, and ran. They rested. Again they charged; again they broke and ran. They were brave men,

and, although hundreds of their companions had fallen, a third time the British charged, and won, for the Americans had used up their powder, and they had no bayonets. More than one thousand British soldiers fell that day. The Americans did not lose half that number. But among the killed was brave General Joseph Warren.

Adams and Hancock on the way to the second Congress

92. The Second Continental Congress. Just as the British were marching into Lexington on that famous April morning, Samuel Adams, with John Hancock, was leaving for Philadelphia, where Congress was to meet again. As he heard the guns of the minutemen answer the guns of the regulars, Adams said to Hancock: "What a glorious morning is this!"

The members from Massachusetts, Connecticut, and New York were escorted across the Hudson to Newark, New Jersey, and entertained at a great dinner, with speeches. Near Philadelphia a large procession of armed men and carriages met and escorted them into the city, where bells told of their coming.

When this Congress met, Samuel Adams seconded the motion of his cousin, John Adams, that George Washington, of Virginia, be made the general of all the American troops. He saw his own neighbor, John Hancock, made president of the Congress.

Samuel

Adams among the first to favor independence

93. The Declaration of Independence. For more than a year Samuel Adams worked hard to get the Congress to make a Declaration of Independence. Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, introduced a motion into the Congress for independence. The Declaration was made, July 4, 1776, and Samuel Adams, as a great leader of the Revolution, had done his work.

AN OLD QUILL PEN

But, with other noble men, he still labored with all his powers, in Congress and at home, to help America win her independence.

Governor of Massachusetts

After independence had been won, Samuel Adams still served his state, and was elected governor of Massachusetts only a few years before his death, which occurred in 1803, at the age of eighty-one.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* The French and Indian War put both England and her colonies in debt, but the king thought only of England's debt. *2.* Great opposition to the Stamp Act in all the colonies. *3.* Patrick Henry made a great speech against the Virginia parsons, and a second on the Stamp Act. *4.* He went to the first Continental Congress and made many friends; came home and made a great speech saying that war would come. *5.* Made governor of Virginia many times. *6.* Samuel Adams studied hard, failed in several occupations, and went into politics. *7.* Led the patriots against the soldiers, the Stamp Act, and planned the Tea Party. *8.* Samuel Adams sent to Continental Congress, where he made many friends. *9.* Urged a Declaration of Independence in 1776. *10.* Made governor of Massachusetts.

Study Questions. *1.* Why were the colonists happy because England defeated France? *2.* What was the Stamp Act, and why did men in America oppose this act? *3.* What did

Patrick Henry say in his resolution and in his speech? *4.* Picture the scene while Patrick Henry spoke and afterwards. *5.* Why did not the Americans like the Tea Tax? *6.* Why did not the king like the American "Tea Parties"? *7.* What is a Congress; and why should Patrick Henry and Samuel Adams become good friends? *8.* Commit to memory a part of Henry's famous "liberty or death" speech. *9.* How did the people trust Patrick Henry? *10.* What did Samuel Adams do against the Stamp Act? *11.* What was the Circular Letter and why should the king be angry about it? *12.* Tell how Samuel Adams drove two regiments out of Boston. *13.* What caused a Congress? *14.* Tell what Samuel and John Adams saw and did on their way to Philadelphia. *15.* Why were people glad to see Samuel Adams? *16.* What made war seem likely to happen at any time? *17.* Read Longfellow's poem, "The Midnight Ride of Paul Revere." *18.* Give an account of the Battle of Lexington. *19.* Picture the retreat from Concord to Boston. *20.* Picture the charge of the British soldiers at Bunker Hill. *21.* What did Samuel Adams see on his way to the second Continental Congress? *22.* Who introduced the motion for independence into the Congress?

Suggested Readings. PATRICK HENRY: Cooke, *Stories of the Old Dominion*, 158-180; Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 93-101; Magill, *Stories from Virginia History*, 116-128.

SAMUEL ADAMS: Dawes, *Colonial*

Massachusetts, 42-72; Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 10-30; Hart, *Camps and Firesides of the Revolution*, 162-166; Hawthorne, *Grandfather's Chair*, 153-189, 205, 206.

THE MEN WHO FOUGHT FOR AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE WITH GUN AND SWORD

NATHAN HALE

Hale a leader in class affairs and athletic sports

94. Nathan Hale, the Martyred Patriot. Nathan Hale was born in Connecticut in 1755. He was brought up by his Puritan parents in the fear of God and in obedience to duty. At the age of sixteen Nathan left his native farm to enter Yale University. Here he soon became well liked for his gentle nature, lively spirit, and studious habits. In spite of his youth he was a leader in the affairs of his class and in all athletic sports. He graduated from college with honor and then taught school for almost two years. These were quiet days for the active young man.

Enrolled to fight for liberty

At this time the people were talking a great deal about their troubles with Great Britain. In secret, bands of young men were even forming companies of militia. Suddenly the news of the fight at Lexington came to the place where Nathan Hale was teaching. The citizens gathered in meeting and he made a speech, in which he said: "Let us march immediately and never lay down our arms until we obtain our

independence." The next day he and many others enrolled to fight for liberty.

NATHAN HALE

From the statue by William Ordway Partridge

Washington was in command of the Continental army at Boston and soon sent for Hale's company. None worked harder than he at drills, or did more to keep the men cheerful in hardships. On New Year's day, 1776, Congress made him captain for his bravery and faithfulness.

Captures a British war vessel

In the following spring Washington moved his army to New York. One night Nathan Hale and a small band of men slipped out into the harbor where a British sloop lay. They boarded the ship gently, locked the sailors in before they knew what had happened, then they sailed their prize past a British man-of-war and over to the American side. It was a brave feat, well carried out.

Offers to find out the British plans

Soon after, the American troops were badly defeated in the battle of Long Island. The army was half starved and losing hope. The British general, Howe, was preparing to attack again. If Howe should win, the American cause would be lost. Washington saw that it was necessary to find out the British plans, or he would be caught and his army destroyed. A brave man was needed to go into the British camp to spy out their plans. No one was willing to go. Hale had been sick, but when he heard of his country's need he offered himself. Friends pleaded with him in vain.

Passes the British lines safely

The young officer took off his uniform and put on the clothes of a schoolmaster. Under cover of night he was rowed to a place near the British camp. This was the last his friends saw of him. He spent several days with the British troops and got the needed information. On his return he passed safely through the whole British army. He went to the spot where the boat was to come for him. There he waited until the boat came into view and then walked down to the water's edge to meet it. A dozen muskets were leveled at him; instead of fellow-soldiers he found himself in the hands of the British!

Hale sentenced to death

Gives his life for his country

Hale was sent to New York immediately and placed before General Howe, to whom he said frankly that he was a spy. The British general wrote out his death warrant, "to be hanged to-morrow morning at sunrise." Not even the death of a soldier was to be his. His brutal guard refused to let him send a last letter to his people. Alone he spent the night, without the comfort of friend or minister. At daybreak he was dragged forth to execution. A crowd of strange people had gathered to see him die. It is said that the officer asked him if there was anything he wished to say. Brave to the last, Nathan

Hale answered: "I only regret that I have but one life to lose for my country." Thus, at the age of twenty-two, died Nathan Hale, who held his country dearer than his own life.

GENERALS GREENE, MORGAN, AND MARION, THE MEN WHO HELPED WIN THE SOUTH FROM THE BRITISH

Moultrie repulses attack on Charleston

95. The War in the South. Early in the Revolutionary War British vessels made an attack on Charleston, South Carolina (1776). But Colonel Moultrie, from his rude fort of palmetto logs, gave them such a welcome that they were glad to get away, and for two years the British gave the southern colonies little trouble.

NATHANAEL GREENE

From a painting by Charles Wilson Peale, once owned by M Greene, Jr., Princeton, New Jersey, and now in Indep Philadelphia

Charleston surrenders to Cornwallis

But in 1778 another British army captured Savannah, Georgia. In 1780 the city of Charleston, South Carolina, with General Lincoln's entire army, surrendered to Cornwallis. Congress hastened General Gates to the South to check the British, but Cornwallis surprised Gates and cut his army to pieces near Camden.

GREENE'S GUN

Now in the possession of the Rhode Island Historical Association

Greene goes south to watch Cornwallis

96. Nathanael Greene, the Quaker General. Washington now chose Nathanael Greene, the "Quaker general," to go south, take command of the American army, and to watch Cornwallis, who had just defeated Gates. Greene was born in Roger Williams' old colony, and was ten years younger than Washington. His father was a farmer, a miner, and a blacksmith on week days, and a Quaker preacher on Sundays.

The "learned blacksmith"

As a boy Nathanael had plenty of hard work to do, and at thirteen could "only read, write, and cipher." But he was hungry for more knowledge, and began to study Latin, mathematics, philosophy, and history. Besides, he made iron toys, and sold them to buy books. His family got into a lawsuit, and Nathanael took up the study of law. He was called the "learned blacksmith."

GREENE CONCEALING THE MU

He buys a musket

When Greene saw that King George was likely to force the Americans to fight, he joined the militia and went to Boston to buy a musket, a very unusual

thing for a man in Quaker dress to do. He hid the gun in his wagon. There he watched General Gage drilling British soldiers. He persuaded one of them to go with him to drill his company of minutemen.

News from Lexington sends Greene to Boston

When the stirring news from Lexington reached him, Greene was among the first to start for Boston, and there Washington found him when he arrived to take command of the army.

Greene was made one of Washington's generals, and followed his great commander till Washington sent him to the South to win back that part of the country from Cornwallis.

SCENE OF THE CAMPAIGNS IN THE SOUTH

He found only a small army in North Carolina, but he knew the southern men would fight if they had a chance, for the backwoodsmen had just killed or captured one thousand British soldiers at Kings

Mountain.

Men who helped Greene in the South

Besides, he had some of the bravest and ablest leaders in America to help him, among them Daniel Morgan, Francis Marion, William Washington (a cousin of General Washington), Henry Lee (called "Light Horse Harry"), and Thomas Sumter.

MORGAN'S ESCAPE FROI

Greene divides his army

Greene divided his army into two parts. He took one thousand men and marched into northeastern South Carolina, where Marion and Lee, with small bands of cavalry, stole upon the British outposts. In broad daylight they charged pellmell into Georgetown, captured the officer in command there, and got safely away before the British were over their fright.

Morgan goes to northwestern South Carolina

Greene sent General Morgan and Colonel William Washington with nine hundred men into northwestern South Carolina to threaten some British posts, and to encourage the patriots in the mountains. Very shortly after this, Washington and his cavalry swooped down on a party of British soldiers and captured two hundred fifty of them.

Tarleton sent to capture him

Cornwallis was now thoroughly roused, and resolved to put an end to such events. He therefore ordered his favorite cavalry officer, Colonel Tarleton, to take eleven hundred picked soldiers and capture Morgan and his men.

97. General Morgan. But Morgan was not the kind of man to be caught napping. When a young man, he had fought the French and Indians on the Virginia frontier.

Morgan's training

He was at Braddock's defeat. He had once knocked a British officer down for striking him. In an Indian fight he had been shot through the neck and thought himself dying, but, to escape being scalped, locked his arms tightly around his horse's neck, while the horse ran wildly through the woods.

DANIEL MORGAN

From a miniature painted by John Trumbull now in the A

At the head of a company of ninety-six Virginia backwoodsmen, Morgan had marched six hundred

miles in twenty-one days, and joined Washington at Boston.

Burgoyne's compliment

Later, Washington sent him to join in the capture of Burgoyne, at Saratoga. His men did such splendid fighting that Burgoyne said to Morgan: "Sir, you command the finest regiment in the world!" Fighting in the woods of America, such a man was likely to be a match for any British officer.

When Morgan heard of Tarleton's approach he retreated to a good place for fighting, called the Cowpens. On the top of a long, rising slope he placed the Continental troops—men trained to fight. In the rear he hid Colonel Washington and his cavalrymen.

Morgan places his men

Some distance in front of the Continentals he placed the militia with orders not to retreat till they had fired twice. In front of the militia Morgan hid a company of deadly sharpshooters in the woods on the right and another company in the woods on the left.

As soon as Tarleton's men came in sight they charged pellmell, thinking victory an easy matter. The militia and sharpshooters poured in their fire not twice, but several times, and retreated behind the Continentals, who now poured deadly volleys into the ranks of the on-coming British, and then made at them with their bayonets.

A brilliant victory

Just at this moment, Colonel Washington's cavalry dashed out and struck the right flank of the redcoats. In another moment the militia, which had reformed and reloaded, rushed out and struck their left flank. Most of Tarleton's men threw down their guns and surrendered on the spot. Only two hundred seventy redcoats got away. Tarleton barely escaped after being wounded in a hand-to-hand sword fight with Colonel Washington.

Stories of Tarleton

Tarleton was not permitted to forget his defeat. In conversation one day he remarked that he had never seen Colonel Washington. A patriotic lady present replied: "If you had only looked behind you at the battle of Cowpens, you would have had that pleasure."

THE BATTLE OF THE

Where General Morgan, in one of the most brilliant battles
General Tarleton, destroying the famous legion

THE LAST SALUTE T(

On another occasion it is told that Tarleton said to a lady, in a sneering way, that he understood Colonel Washington was so ignorant he could not even write his own name. This lady looked at Tarleton's wounded hand, and said: "You certainly carry proof that he can at least 'make his mark.'"

The defeat of Tarleton at the Cowpens roused Cornwallis. He destroyed all his heavy baggage, and started in hot haste after Morgan. But Morgan knew a thing or two, and marched for the fords of the Catawba River as soon as the battle was over.

Greene's great

march

There Greene joined him, and away the armies went for the Yadkin River. Greene had brought along boats on light wheels, and had no trouble in crossing, but Cornwallis had to march up the river until his army could wade across. Greene was already on his way to the Dan, which he crossed into southern Virginia.

General Morgan retires

General Morgan, now broken in health by long years of hard fighting, retired to his home, "Soldiers' Rest," in the Shenandoah Valley. After the war was over his neighbors elected him to Congress, where he gave hearty support to President Washington.

A touching scene

When Daniel Morgan died he was followed to the grave by the largest procession that the valley had yet seen. The people, who had come from near and far, witnessed a touching sight. They saw seven gray-haired veterans, with old rifles in their hands, stand beside the grave of the hero, and fire a military salute. They were the last of that hardy band of ninety-six which had marched with Morgan to Boston to join Washington, nearly thirty years before. This was their last military farewell!

Greene's "victory"

98. The Battle of Guilford Court House. General

Greene won a great victory by retreating. He and his army were still among friends, and his army was growing. Cornwallis was hundreds of miles from his supplies and from reënforcements. After a few weeks, Greene crossed back into North Carolina and fiercely attacked Cornwallis at Guilford Court House, and killed or wounded one fourth of his army.

Cornwallis claimed the victory, but instead of attacking Greene he marched his army rapidly to Wilmington, on the seacoast, and from there marched into Virginia, where Washington and Lafayette caught him in a trap at Yorktown.

Greene drives the British to Charleston

Greene turned back to South Carolina, where the British still held Charleston and a few other towns. The British lost so many men at Hobkirks Hill and at Eutaw Springs, their last important battles in the South, that they were compelled to retreat to Charleston, where they were when the news from Yorktown put an end to serious fighting.

Congress, South Carolina, and Georgia honor Greene

General Greene's work as a soldier was done. Besides the medal presented to him by Congress for the battle of Eutaw Springs, South Carolina, as a token of affection, gave him a large sum of money, and the

state of Georgia a beautiful plantation on the Savannah River, where he died in 1786. Greene's fame as a soldier of the Revolution stands next to that of Washington.

The "Swamp Fox"

99. Francis Marion. Of all the brave men who helped Greene win back the South, none was braver than General Francis Marion, whom the British named the "Swamp Fox." Marion was born in the same year as Washington. He was of French parentage. He was so very small in size that people wondered how he could be so great a soldier.

Marion's "Brigade"

Marion's "Brigade," as his company was called, was made up of only a handful of men, usually less than one hundred. But they owned and rode the swiftest horses, carried their own guns, and wore their own swords, hammered out of old saws by country blacksmiths.

FRANCIS MARION

After the portrait in the painting by T. Stotha

Marion and his men seldom were two successive nights in the same place. The night was their time for

work. At sundown they swung into their saddles, and were soon riding for the enemy's camp. When near, they quietly surrounded the camp, took aim by the light of the fires, fired, and then rushed upon the frightened British or Tories, and cut them down with their terrible broadswords.

How they escaped

Before daybreak, Marion and his men were hiding safely in some distant swamp or other safe place. If the British chased him too closely his men scattered in different directions, but always made their way to the common hiding place. In a few days they were ready to strike again.

ONE OF MARION

One hundred fifty prisoners set free

Just after Cornwallis defeated Gates, near Camden, Marion pounced upon a guard of British soldiers that

was taking one hundred fifty prisoners to Charleston, captured them all, and set the prisoners free.

Tarleton cannot catch Marion

At last Cornwallis ordered Colonel Tarleton to get "Mr. Marion," as he called him. But before Tarleton could act Marion had fallen on a large party of Tories going to join Cornwallis, and killed, captured, or scattered the entire party. Tarleton chased Marion for twenty-five miles, only to find a large swamp through which he could see neither road nor path. He gave up the chase in disgust, declaring he would pursue the "Swamp Fox" no farther.

Congress gives Marion a vote of thanks

When Greene returned to the last campaign in South Carolina he found no better, bolder, or more vigilant helpers than Marion and his "Brigade." Greene gave Marion high praise, and Congress gave him a vote of thanks.

Marion was the true soldier of liberty. He cared nothing for display, only for the success of the patriot cause. Marion thought of his men before himself. He was watchful, patient, and silent. He always struck his foes where and when they did not look for him. If they were too strong for him he vanished like smoke in a brisk breeze.

After the war

Marion was as true and gentle as he was bold and brave. He was never cruel to prisoners, and was greatly opposed to punishing the Tories after the war was over. Marion's neighbors often elected him to high office and in many other ways showed that they admired him, even if some did not agree with him.

"MARION AND HIS MEN" SUR

Dashing out of the swamp, Marion fell upon the guard of a British, then set the prisoners to

A potato feast

During the war a British officer was invited to take dinner with Marion. What was his surprise to see only sweet potatoes, baked in the ashes, set before him. After this feast the officer resigned, saying it was useless trying to defeat such soldiers.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* When Hale heard the news of the fight at Lexington he hastened to the front. *2.* He went inside the British lines to learn their plans, was caught, and executed. *3.* Greene went to Boston, saw the British army, returned home and prepared his minutemen. *4.* Washington sent him to the Carolinas after the defeat of Gates. *5.* In the retreat of the American army after the battle of Cowpens, Greene turned and fought the battles of Guilford Court House, Hobkirks Hill, and Eutaw Springs. *6.* Daniel Morgan with ninety-six men marched from the Shenandoah Valley to Boston to join Washington. *7.* He won the battle of Cowpens against Colonel Tarleton. *8.* Francis Marion's "Brigade" was made up of a small number, mounted on their own horses, and armed with their own guns and swords. *9.* He was called the "Swamp Fox," because his men, attacking after nightfall, usually escaped to a swamp before daylight.

Study Questions. *1.* What was Hale doing when war broke out? *2.* Why did he go

within the British lines? *3.* Where was Greene born, and why was he called "the learned blacksmith"? *4.* How did he get his company of minutemen drilled? *5.* What leaders did Greene have to help him? *6.* Who was General Morgan? *7.* What did Burgoyne say to Morgan? *8.* Explain how Morgan prepared for the battle of Cowpens. *9.* Picture the battle. *10.* What anecdotes are told of Tarleton? *11.* Picture the scene at General Morgan's burial. *12.* How did Greene win a victory by retreating? *13.* What became of Cornwallis after the battle of Guilford Court House? *14.* What other battles did Greene fight? *15.* What proofs of affection did South Carolina and Georgia give? *16.* What is the rank of Greene as a general? *17.* How many were in Marion's "Brigade," how were they armed, and how did they fight? *18.* Why did Tarleton call Marion the "Swamp Fox"? *19.* Who praised General Marion? *20.* Read *The Song of Marion's Men*, by William Cullen Bryant.

Suggested Readings. NATHAN HALE: Brown, *Nathan Hale, the Martyr Spy*.

NATHANAEL GREENE: Fiske, Irving's *Washington*, 430-456; Francis V. Greene, *General Greene*, 1-22, 94-105, 160-262; Frost, *Heroes of the Revolution*, 27-75.

DANIEL MORGAN: Blaisdell and Ball, *Hero Stories from American History*, 105-122; Brooks, *Century Book of the American Revolution*, 168-173; Frost, *Heroes of the Revolution*, 76-89.

FRANCIS MARION: McCrady, *South Carolina*

in the Revolution, 568-572, 577-652, 660-672, 748-752, 816-881.

THE MEN WHO HELPED WIN INDEPENDENCE BY FIGHTING ENGLAND ON THE SEA

JOHN PAUL JONES, A SCOTCHMAN, WHO WON THE GREAT VICTORY IN THE FRENCH SHIP, "BON HOMME RICHARD"

John Paul born in Scotland

100. John Paul. In 1747, in far-away Scotland, on the arm of the sea called Solway Firth, a great sailor was born. John Paul played along the seashore, saw tall ships, and heard wonderful stories of a new land called America, whose ships filled with tobacco came into the firth.

Sails on the "Friendship" to America

John Paul did not get much schooling, and at the age of thirteen he went as a sailor lad on the *Friendship* to America. The ship sailed into Chesapeake Bay and up the Rappahannock River to the town of Fredericksburg, where he found his brother William living on a plantation. In the very same town where George Washington had just been to school, John Paul also went to school. He studied hard to make up for lost time, and left a great name among the boys.

Returns and sails for Africa

He afterward returned to Scotland, and at the age of nineteen sailed as an officer on a slave-trading ship to Africa, and carried a load of negroes away from their native land. Many people did not then think it wrong to do this, but John Paul hated the cruel business, and left the slave ship as soon as he reached Jamaica.

Made captain

On his way back to Scotland the officers of the ship died, and John Paul, although but twenty years old, had to take charge. The owners of the vessel were so pleased with the way he handled it that they made him captain, and he went on many voyages to different countries.

JOHN PAUL JONES

From a painting by Charles Wilson Peale in Independence

In Virginia again

After a time John Paul went to Virginia to take care of his dead brother's plantation. While he was living in Virginia he watched the quarrel between England and her colonies break out in open war.

Offers his services to Congress

101. John Paul Jones Enters the American Navy. He hastened to Philadelphia and offered his services to Congress. He knew England would send thousands of soldiers to America; and that she would send her war ships along our seacoasts and up and down our bays and rivers, to capture and burn our towns. He also knew that the Congress did not own a single war ship when the war began.

Congress ordered war ships to be built. While these were being made, Congress ordered trading vessels to be fitted with cannon and sent out to capture British ships.

Changes his name

When John Paul went to Philadelphia he gave his name as Paul Jones, probably in honor of Willie Jones, a friend who lived in North Carolina. Some have thought that he did not want the British to know him, if they should capture him in a sea fight.

THE FIRST AMERICA

This, the first flag to float above an American mar

Really wants to fight

What he could do

Although Paul Jones really knew more about war ships than most of the men in Philadelphia, Congress gave him a very low office. But that made no difference to him, for he really wanted to get into a sea fight. In 1775 he was made a lieutenant, and joined an expedition to capture cannon and powder from the British in the West Indies. He did so well that Congress made him captain and gave him a ship. He then went on a cruise to the West Indies, where in six weeks he captured sixteen prizes and destroyed a number of small vessels.

Sent to France

Congress afterward gave him command of the ship *Ranger*, and sent him to carry letters to Benjamin Franklin, who was in France trying to get the king to take sides with the Americans.

With the "Ranger" at Whitehaven

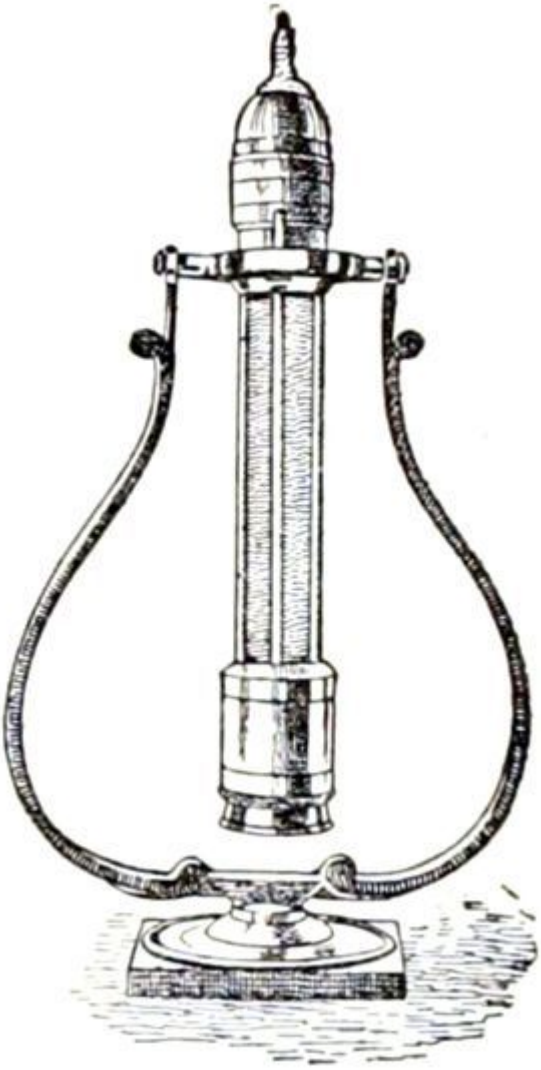
Franklin planned for Jones to take the *Ranger* to the coast of England, and show that American as well as English ships could burn, destroy, and fight. He captured two vessels, made straight for his old town of Whitehaven, "spiked" the cannon in the fort, set some ships on fire, and escaped without harm.

Near by this place, his sailors took all the silver from the home of a rich lady. This robbery troubled him so much that, afterward, at great expense to himself,

he returned the silver to its owner.

"Paul, the Pirate"

"Look out for Paul Jones, the pirate!" the people said; and the *Drake*, carrying two more cannon than the *Ranger*, was sent to capture her. Five boatloads of people went to see the pirate captured. The fight lasted more than an hour. When the *Drake* surrendered, her captain and forty-two men had been killed. The *Ranger* had lost only two men. After this fight the English towns were still more afraid of Paul Jones.



MARINE CANDLESTICK

From man-of-war "Constitution"

The "Good Man

Richard"

There was great joy in France when Paul Jones sailed into port. The king, who was now making war on England, promised him a larger fleet of war vessels. So, in 1779, he found himself captain of a large ship armed with fifty cannon. He called the ship the *Bon Homme Richard* in honor of Franklin's Almanac, the "Poor Richard." Three smaller vessels joined him, and he again set sail for the English coast. The news of his coming caused great alarm.

The "Richard" and the "Serapis"

102. A Great Sea Fight and a Great Victory. As Paul Jones sailed along the British coasts he captured many trading ships and frightened the people. At last he came upon two British war ships. Just at dark the *Richard* attacked a larger English ship, the *Serapis*. At the first fire two of Jones' cannon burst, tearing up the deck and killing a dozen of his own men.

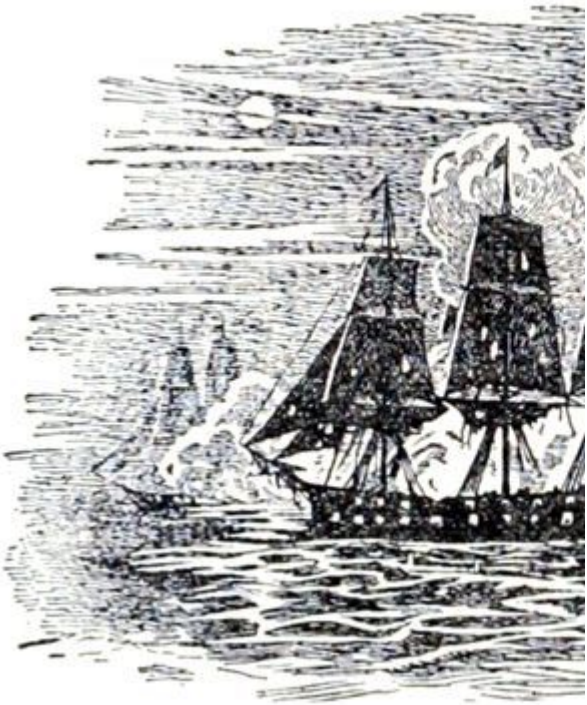
NAVAL PITCHER

This was made in commemoration of the Americ

The great sea fight

The fight went on for an hour, when the *Serapis* came near, and Jones ran the *Richard* into her. "Have you struck your colors?" called out the English captain. "I

have not yet begun to fight!" replied Captain Jones. When the ships came together again Paul Jones himself seized a great rope and tied them together. Now the fighting was terrific. The cannon tore huge holes in the sides of the ships.



THE CAPTURE OF TH

Because of this victory three nations, France, Russia, and
Paul Jones as "the valiant assertor

A great explosion on the *Serapis* killed twenty of her men. Both ships were on fire, and the *Richard* began to fill with water. The men on each ship had to fight fire. It was ten o'clock at night.

The British prisoners on the *Richard* had to help pump out water to keep the ship from sinking.

A great victory

Only a few cannon on each ship could be fired. The decks of both ships were covered with dead and wounded, but neither captain would give up. Finally Paul Jones, with his own hands, pointed two cannon at the great mast of the *Serapis*. Just as it was about to fall, the English captain surrendered.

A great naval hero

All night Jones and his men were kept busy fighting fire and pumping water, while the wounded were removed to the *Serapis*. The *Good Man Richard* sank the next day at ten o'clock. Paul Jones sailed to France with his two English ships, where he was praised and rewarded by the King of France. He was a great hero in the eyes of the French people, and in the eyes of the Americans, too.

Finally buried in America

After the war Paul Jones was an officer in the Russian navy. He died in France in 1792. His grave was forgotten for many years, but was discovered in 1905, and his bones were brought to America with great honor, and buried at Annapolis, Maryland.

JOHN BARRY, WHO WON MORE SEA FIGHTS IN THE REVOLUTION THAN ANY OTHER CAPTAIN

Barry visits America

103. John Barry. Although born on a farm in Ireland (1745), John Barry wanted to be a sailor lad. While still young he was put to service on board a merchant ship. Here young Barry learned more than being a mere sailor. Between voyages he studied hard, and soon gained a useful education. At the age of fifteen he came to Philadelphia, and was so pleased with the country and the people that he resolved to make America his home.

Offers his services to Congress

He rose rapidly as a sailor and, when the news of the first bloodshed between England and her colonies came, he offered his services to Congress.

JOHN BARRY

From the portrait painted by Colin Campbell Cooper after
in Independence Hall, Philadelphia

Made captain of the "Lexington"

In 1776 Congress made him captain of the ship *Lexington*, the first Continental vessel to sail from William Penn's old city. Barry immediately put to sea, and met and captured the *Edward* after a fierce fight. Thus the *Lexington* was the first ship to bear the American flag to victory.

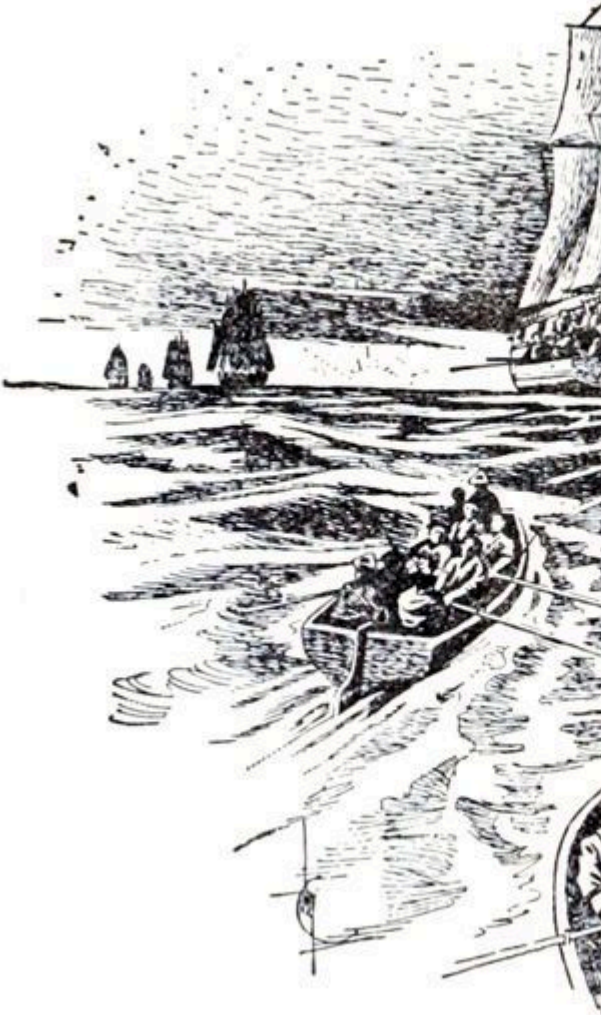
Congress, pleased with the result, put him in charge of a larger ship, called the *Effingham*. The British, however, bottled up the *Effingham* in the Delaware.

But Barry was not idle. Arming four boatloads of men, with muffled oars he rowed down the Delaware at night.

He captures a British vessel and four transports

Just as the sun was rising Barry saw a British vessel of ten guns. With this ship were four transports loaded with forage for the British army. Barry's boats made for the British ship. His men climbed on board with guns and swords in hand. The British soldiers threw down their arms and ran below. Barry fastened down the hatchways, and then turned his attention to the four transports, which quickly surrendered. Barry then took his five prizes across

the river to an American fort.



BARRY'S BOATS ATTACKING T

He takes command

of the "Raleigh"

In 1778 Congress promoted John Barry to the command of the *Raleigh*. He set sail for Boston, and on his way met a British ship carrying thirty-two guns. His sailors had taken an oath never to surrender. They fought bravely, and had every hope of winning, when a British 64-gun ship came in sight. To keep their oaths, they ran the *Raleigh* ashore, and set her on fire. The British put out the fire and saved the ship.

Wounded, but forces the British to strike their colors

104. Barry Given Command of the "Alliance." In 1781 Barry was placed in command of the *Alliance*, a ship whose name was given in honor of France's helping America in this war. In May the *Alliance* met two British ships, and a hard battle followed. Barry was badly wounded, but would not surrender. He fought on and forced the British ships to strike their colors.

In 1783 Barry, in the *Alliance*, sailed on his last voyage of the Revolution. His companion ship was the *Luzerne*. Three British ships discovered the Americans and quickly gave chase. The *Luzerne* was slow and threw her guns overboard.

On his last voyage of the Revolution

Another vessel came into view; it was a French ship of fifty guns. With her aid Barry immediately decided to fight. He made a speech urging the men not to fire until ordered. A terrific battle with the foremost British ship followed. After fifty minutes' fighting, the British showed signals of distress. The remaining British ships now came up to rescue her, and the *Alliance* sailed away. The French ships took no part in the battle.

Named first commander of a navy

After the war was over, Congress provided for a navy, and General Knox, Washington's Secretary of War and of the Navy, named John Barry as first commodore. He served as the senior commander of the American navy until his death, in 1803. The people of Philadelphia have erected a monument to his memory (1907).

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* John Paul was born a sailor in Scotland and went to America. *2.* He was in America when war broke out; offered his service and was made lieutenant. *3.* Congress sent him to France, and Franklin sent him to prey on English commerce. *4.* Paul Jones won the great sea fight in the *Bon Homme Richard*. *5.* John Barry was born in Ireland, and went to sea early. *6.* Congress made him captain in 1776, in charge of the *Lexington*. *7.* Barry set the country talking by

capturing a war vessel and four transports. *8.* John Barry won more naval victories in the Revolutionary War than any other office. *9.* Named first commodore in 1794 by the Secretary of the Navy.

Study Questions. *1.* Give an account of John Paul's boyhood. *2.* What of his first visit to America? *3.* How did Paul happen, at so early an age, to have full charge of a vessel? *4.* Why did he go to Virginia a second time? *5.* Why did he hasten to Congress as soon as war began? *6.* How did Paul Jones prove his right to be captain? *7.* Tell the story of the battle between the *Drake* and the *Ranger*. *8.* Picture the battle between the *Bon Homme Richard* and the *Serapis*. *9.* What rewards came to Paul Jones? *10.* Where is he buried? *11.* Give an account of John Barry's youth. *12.* When the war came, what was Barry's action? *13.* What was the first victory on the part of the navy? *14.* What was the outcome of the battle on the *Raleigh*? *15.* What were Barry's experiences in the *Alliance*? Picture Barry's last battle.

Suggested Readings. PAUL JONES: Beebe, *Four American Naval Heroes*, 17-68; Abbot, *Blue Jackets of '76*, 83-154; Frothingham, *Sea Fighters*, 226-266; Hart, *Camps and Firesides of the American Revolution*, 285-289; Hart, *How Our Grandfathers Lived*, 217-219; Seawell, *Paul Jones*.

JOHN BARRY: Griffin, *Commodore John Barry*, 1-96.

THE MEN WHO CROSSED THE MOUNTAINS, DEFEATED THE INDIANS AND BRITISH, AND MADE THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER THE FIRST WESTERN BOUNDARY OF THE UNITED STATES

DANIEL BOONE, THE HUNTER AND PIONEER OF KENTUCKY

Boone born in Pennsylvania

105. A Famous Frontier Hero. Daniel Boone was born in Pennsylvania in 1735. He was only three years younger than Washington. While yet a boy he loved the woods, and often spent days deep in the forest with no companion but his rifle and dog.

Moved to the Yadkin

Boone's parents moved to North Carolina, and settled on the Yadkin River. There he married at the early age of twenty, and, pioneer-like, moved farther into the forest, where people were scarcer and game more plentiful. He built a log cabin for his bride, and made a "clearing" for raising corn and vegetables. But his trusty rifle furnished their table with all kinds of wild meat, such as bear, deer, squirrel, and turkey.

Crossed the mountains in 1760

In 1760 Boone with a friend crossed the mountains to the Watauga in east Tennessee, on a hunting expedition, where he killed a bear, and cut the date

of the event on a beech tree, which still stands on Boone's Creek in east Tennessee.

BOONE AND HIS BEAR TREE

News from

across the Cumberland

One of Boone's hunter friends came back from a journey across the Cumberland Mountains and told of the beauty of the land beyond—its hills and valleys, its forests and canebrakes, full of game. Boone was anxious to go. Too many people were settling near him. But Kentucky was a dangerous country, even if beautiful. It was called "No-man's-land," because not even Indians lived there, and also the "dark and bloody ground," because the tribes from the north and from the south met there in deadly conflict.

Boone and companions go to Kentucky

106. Boone Goes to the Land of Canebrakes and Blue Grass. While the people along the seacoast were disputing with the king, Boone and five companions, after climbing over mountains, fording rivers, and making their way through pathless forests, reached Kentucky, the land of salt springs, canebrakes, and blue grass.

Danger from animals

They built a log camp and spent several months enjoying the wild life so dear to the hunter. But it was full of danger. Sometimes it was a battle with a father and a mother bear fighting for their little ones. The sneaking panther or the lurking wildcat threatened their lives. Now and then, hundreds of

buffaloes came rushing through the canebrakes.

Danger from Indians ever present

But danger from the Indians was present every moment. Day and night, sleeping in their camp or tramping through the woods, the hunters had to be ready for the death grapple. One day Boone and a companion named Stewart were off their guard. The Indians rushed upon them and captured them.

Captured but escapes

Boone and his companion understood the ways of the Indians, and won their confidence. One night, as the savages slept around the camp fire, Boone arose and quietly awoke Stewart. They stole silently from the camp and hastened by night and day back to their old camp, only to find it destroyed and their comrades gone.

News from the old home

One day Daniel Boone saw his brother coming through the woods. What a happy meeting five hundred miles from home! The brother brought good news from kindred and friends.

BOONE FIGHTING OVER THE

His brother returns home for supplies

Stewart was shot by the Indians, but Boone and his brother remained all winter in Kentucky. Powder, lead, and salt were growing scarce. What should be done? Boone's brother returned home for supplies, but Daniel remained without even a dog for a companion. He very seldom slept twice in the same

place for fear of the Indians.

He wandered to the banks of the Ohio, and was charmed with all he saw. He then decided that some day he would make Kentucky his home.

Brings supplies and both go home

Boone's brother returned in the spring, bringing supplies on two pack horses. After further explorations the two brothers returned to their home on the Yadkin and told their neighbors of the wonders of the new land.

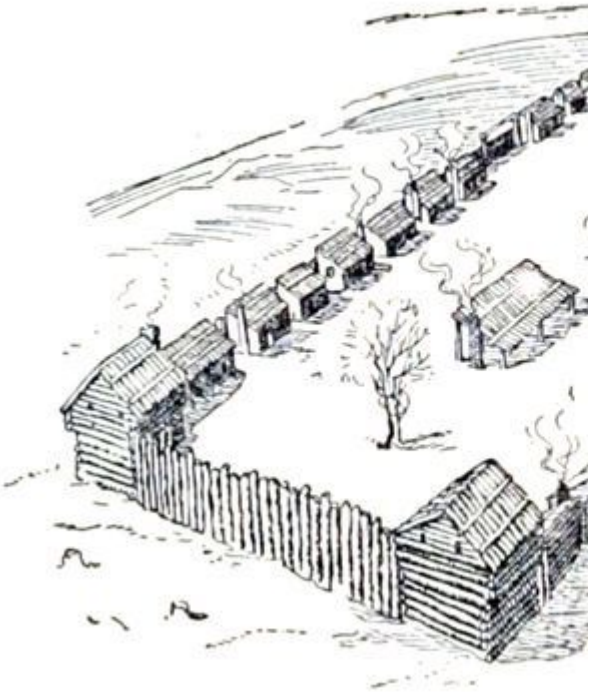
An Indian attack

In the fall of 1773 several families, with cattle and horses, bade farewell to their friends and started for Kentucky, a "second Paradise," as Boone called it. Before they reached the new land Indians fell upon them and killed six. Among the killed was Boone's eldest son. The party returned for a time to a settlement in Virginia.

Making the "Wilderness Road"

Richard Henderson, a rich planter, claimed a great tract of land in Kentucky, and put Boone at the head of thirty brave men to cut and blaze a road from the Holston River over the mountains, through Cumberland Gap to the Kentucky River. The result was the famous "Wilderness Road," the first road

across the mountains, and over which hundreds of pack horses and thousands of settlers made their way.



FORT BOONESBORO

After the plan by Colonel Henderson in Collins

Fort Boonesboro

When the road was finished to the banks of the Kentucky River, Daniel Boone built Fort Boonesboro. The fort was about two hundred sixty feet long, and one hundred fifty feet wide. At each corner of it stood a two-story blockhouse with loopholes,

through which the settlers could shoot at Indians. Cabins with loopholes were built along the sides of the fort. Between the cabins a high fence was made by sinking log posts into the ground. Two heavy gates were built on opposite sides of the fort. Every night the horses and cattle were driven inside the fort.

His family in the "second Paradise"

107. Boone Takes His Family to Kentucky. When the fort was finished Boone brought his family, and several others, over the mountains to his "second Paradise." Other settlers came, and Boonesboro began to grow. Some of the bolder settlers built cabins outside of the fort, where they cut away and burned the trees to raise corn and vegetables.

Three girl prisoners

To the Indian all this seemed to threaten his hunting ground. The red men were anxious, therefore, to kill and scalp these brave pioneers. One day Boone's daughter and two girl friends were out late in a boat near the shore opposite the fort when the Indians suddenly seized the girls and hastened away with them. The people heard their screams for help, but too late to risk crossing the river.

The chase and the capture

What sorrow in the fort that night! Had the Indians

scalped the girls, or were they hastening to cross the Ohio with them? The next day Boone with eight men seized their guns, found the Indian trail, and marched with all speed. What if the Indians should see the white men first! On the second day Boone's party came upon the Indians building a fire, and fired before they were seen. Two of the Indians fell, and the others ran away, leaving the girls behind, unharmed, but badly frightened.

BOONE AND HIS MEN TRAIl

Kentucky in the War of the Revolution

The War of the Revolution was already raging east of the mountains, and the Indians were taking the side of the British. In April, 1777, a small army of Indians crossed the Ohio and attacked Boonesboro. The little fort made a bold fight. The Indians retreated, but returned on the Fourth of July in large numbers, to destroy the fort and scalp the settlers. For two days and nights the battle went on. The fierce war cry of the Indians filled the woods around the fort. The white men took deadly aim. The women aided by melting lead into bullets. The Indians again failed, and finally retreated.

The prize prisoner

While making salt at the "Blue Licks," Boone and twenty-seven of his men were captured by the Indians and marched all the way to Detroit, the headquarters of the British army in the Northwest. The British offered the Indians five hundred dollars for Boone, but the savages were too proud of their great prisoner, and marched him back to their towns in what is now Ohio.

Adopted by an Indian family

Here he was adopted by an Indian chief. They

plucked out all of Boone's hair except a "scalp lock," which they ornamented with feathers. They painted and dressed him like an Indian. His new parents were quite proud of their son. Sometimes he went hunting alone, but the Indians counted his bullets and measured his powder. But Boone was too shrewd for them. He cut the bullets in two, and used half charges of powder.

Steals away to Boonesboro

One day he saw four hundred fifty painted warriors getting ready to march against Boonesboro. He went hunting that day, but he did not come back. What excitement in that Indian town! Soon the woods were full of Indians hunting for Boone. In five days—with but one meal—he reached Boonesboro.

All hands fell to repairing the fort. The horses, cattle, and provisions were brought inside the fort, and water was brought from the river.

The Indians came, and Boone's Indian "father" called on him to surrender. Boone asked for two days to think about it, but he used this time in getting ready to fight. At the end of the two days Boone told him that his men would fight to the last.

DANIEL BOONE

From a portrait made in 1819 when Boone was 85 years
Chester Harding, and now in possession of the Massachu
Society, Boston, Massachusetts

An Indian trick spoiled

The Indians then proposed that twelve from each side meet to make a treaty of peace. Boone took his strongest men. While parleying, each Indian suddenly seized a white man. The white men broke away, and ran for the fort. Boone's riflemen were ready, and poured a hot fire into the Indians.

The Indians cannot capture Boone's fort

The Indians climbed into trees to shoot down into the fort. They tried to set the fort on fire, but failed. They then tried to dig a tunnel under the fort, but failed in that also.

After nine days of failure, and after losing many warriors, the Indians gave up the fight and recrossed the Ohio. Although the settlers had to keep a daily watch for Indians, and had to fight them in other parts of Kentucky, they never attacked Boonesboro again.

Boone's reason for again moving west

During the Revolutionary War other brave men came as pioneers into Kentucky, and built forts, and defended their settlements against the Indians. As the

settlements grew thicker, game grew scarcer. Boone resolved once more to move farther west. When asked why, he replied: "Too much crowded. I want more elbow room."

Moves to Missouri

At the age of sixty, while Washington was still president, and after he had seen Kentucky become a state, Daniel Boone and his faithful wife made the long journey to the region beyond the Mississippi, into what is now Missouri. There he lived and hunted. He saw this region pass from Spain to France, and from France to the United States (1803). He was still a hunter at eighty-two, and saw Missouri preparing to enter the Union as the twenty-fourth state.

Died in 1820

He died in 1820 at the age of eighty-six. Years afterward, remembering the noble deeds of the great pioneer, Kentucky brought his body to the capital city and buried it with great honors.

The Louisiana country and the French

108. Life in the Mississippi Valley. When Boone led his brave men into Kentucky, white men had been living for years in the Mississippi Valley, farther west. These were the French of Louisiana, as they called their country. Their chief settlement was St.

Louis.

These people came at first to dig lead from the old Indian mines of southern Missouri and to trade for furs. They were a quiet people who knew little and cared less about the rest of the world. They did not work hard, and they loved good times. A traveler who visited them says they were "the happiest people on the globe."

JOHN SEVIER, "NOLICHUCKY JACK"

Sevier born in Virginia

Early life in the Shenandoah

109. A Famous Indian Fighter. John Sevier was born in the Shenandoah Valley in 1745. His mother taught him to read, but he obtained most of his schooling in Washington's old school town, Fredericksburg. He quit school at sixteen. He built a storehouse on the Shenandoah and called it Newmarket. He lived there, selling goods and fighting Indians, until, at the early age of twenty-six, he was a wealthy man. He had already made such a name as an Indian fighter that the governor made him captain in the militia of which George Washington was then colonel.

Fine looking

Sevier was a fine-looking man. He was tall, slender, erect, graceful in action, fair skinned, blue eyed, and had pleasing manners, which had come to him from his French parents. He charmed everybody who met him, from backwoodsmen up to the king's governor at Williamsburg.

He goes to the Watauga

A most promising future opened before him in Virginia. But hearing of a band of pioneers on the Watauga, he rode over one day to see them and resolved to cast in his lot with them.

JOHN SEVIER

After an engraving from a miniature now in possession of York

Tennessee

in the Revolution

During the Revolutionary War, British agents went among the Cherokee Indians and gave them guns and ammunition. Indian-like, they planned to take Fort Watauga by surprise. They came creeping up to the fort one morning just at daybreak. Forty deadly rifles suddenly blazed from portholes and drove them back to the woods. During the siege of three weeks, food grew scarce at the fort, and the men became tired of being cooped up so long. Some of them ventured out and were shot or had very narrow escapes from death.

KATE SHERRILL RACI

The story of Jack Sevier and Kate Sherrill

The story is told that Sevier, during the siege, fell in love with the beautiful, tall, brown-haired Kate Sherrill. One day she ventured out of the fort. It was a daring act, for four men had lost their lives in this way. The Indians tried to catch the girl, for they did not want to kill her. But she could run like a deer, and almost flew to the fort. Sevier was watching, and shot the Indian nearest her. The gate was closed, but she jumped with all her might, seized the top of the stockade, drew herself up, and sprang over into the arms of Sevier. Not long after she became his wife.

Sevier acts quickly

In 1778 Sevier heard that the Indians were coming again. He quickly called his men together, took boats, and paddled rapidly down the Tennessee to the Indian towns. He burned the towns, captured their store of hides, and marched home on foot. How surprised the Indians were when they returned!

Moves to the Nolichucky

110. Nolichucky Jack. The Watauga Settlement was growing in numbers, and Sevier went to live on the Nolichucky, a branch of the French Broad River. There he built a large log house, or rather two

houses, and joined them by a covered porch. Outside were large verandas, while inside were great stone fireplaces.

Welcomes rich and poor

Here Sevier gave hearty welcome to friend and stranger, no matter how poor, if they were honest. The settlers far and wide, and new settlers from over the mountains, partook of his cider, hominy, corn bread, and of wild meat of many kinds. Sometimes he invited them with their families to a barbecue. Whether people came for advice or to call him to arms against the Indians, no one was turned away. "Nolichucky Jack," as his neighbors loved to call him, held a warm place in every settler's heart.

British challenge

In 1780 Cornwallis, then victorious in South Carolina, sent Colonel Ferguson with one thousand British soldiers into western North Carolina to punish the backwoodsmen. Ferguson grew bold, and sent word across the mountains, threatening to punish Sevier and his brave riflemen. This was enough. Colonel Shelby of Kentucky and Sevier resolved to rouse the frontiersmen, cross the mountains, and teach Colonel Ferguson a lesson. Colonel Campbell with his men from the Holston, in Virginia, joined them. A thousand well-mounted backwoodsmen, with their long rifles, fringed hunting shirts, and coonskin caps, began the march from the Watauga across the mountains. Once across they were joined by several hundred Carolinians. Ferguson retreated

to Kings Mountain, too steep on one side to be climbed. He felt safe behind his thousand gleaming bayonets.

The plan of battle

Battle of Kings Mountain

The backwoodsmen picked nine hundred men to make the charge up the mountain in face of the bayonets, although among themselves there was not a bayonet. Three divisions, one for each side, marched up the mountain. Down the mountain side came the flashing bayonets. The backwoodsmen in the center retreated from tree to tree, firing steadily all the time. The British, now shot at from both sides as well as in front, turned and charged at one side. Then one division fired into their backs and the other on their side. What could bayonets do in the midst of trees?

The result

The backwoodsmen kept to the trees and their rifles seldom missed their aim. The British retreated to the top of the mountain. Colonel Ferguson was killed and his entire army was killed or captured. This victory caused great rejoicing among the Americans and prepared the way for the work of Greene and Morgan.

A deadly blow

Sevier and Campbell hastened back over the mountains, for the Indians were scalping and burning again. With seven hundred riflemen, they marched against the Indian towns and burned a thousand cabins and fifty thousand bushels of corn. This was a hard blow, but the Indians kept fighting several years longer.

Sevier, in all, fought thirty-five battles. He was the most famous Indian fighter of his time.

THE BATTLE OF KING'S

Where 900 frontiersmen attacked and totally destroyed 1,

"NOLICHUCKY JACK'S

Sevier welcomed by the congregati

Governor of Tennessee many times

Indians

trusted him

When Tennessee became a state the people elected him governor. They reëlected him till he had held the office for twelve years. The people of Tennessee almost worshiped the bold pioneer. He had spent all his time and all his wealth in their service. And while he was governor, and living in Knoxville, the early capital, one or more of his old riflemen were always living at his home. Even the Indian chiefs often came to visit him. When the people of Tennessee were debating questions of great importance, they always asked: "What says the good old governor?"

The boy's disappointment

One Sunday, when all the people of a backwoods settlement were at the country church, a bareheaded runner rushed in and shouted, "Nolichucky Jack's a-coming!" The people rushed out to see their governor. As he came near, he greeted one of his old riflemen, put his hand upon the head of the old soldier's son, spoke a kindly word, and rode on. The boy looked up at his father and said: "Why, father, 'Chucky Jack' is only a man!"

Died in 1815

Sevier died in 1815, while acting as an officer in marking the boundary line between Georgia and the Indian lands. Only a few soldiers and Indians were present. There he lies, with only the name "John Sevier" cut on a simple slab. But for generations the children of the pioneers went on repeating to their

children the story of the courage and goodness of "Nolichucky Jack." His name is yet a household word among the people of eastern Tennessee. Their children are taught the story of his life. In the courthouse yard at Knoxville stands a monument erected to his memory.

GEORGE ROGERS CLARK, THE HERO OF VINCENNES

Clark born in Virginia

A surveyor

111. A Successful Leader against the Indians and the British. George Rogers Clark was born in Virginia in 1752. From childhood Clark liked to roam the woods. He became a surveyor and an Indian fighter at the age of twenty-one. Like Washington, with chain and compass, and with ax and rifle, he made his way far into the wild and lonely forests of the upper Ohio.

INDIANS ATTACKIN

Again and again, when a surprise was not possible, the Indi
a garrison

A scout

Clark was a scout for the governor of Virginia in the expedition which defeated the great Shawnee chief Cornstalk at the mouth of the Kanawha.

Two years later Clark made his way alone over the mountains and became a leader in Kentucky, along with Boone. The Kentucky hunters chose Clark to go to Virginia as their lawmaker.

GEORGE ROGERS CLARK

From a painting on wood by John Wesley Jarvis, now in the Virginia

In

Kentucky

He told Governor Patrick Henry that if Kentucky was not worth defending against the Indians, it was not worth having. At this the Virginian lawmakers made Kentucky into a Virginia county and gave Clark five hundred pounds of powder, which he carried down the Ohio River to Kentucky.

Life at Harrodsburg

Clark lived at Harrodsburg where, for more than a year, he was kept busy helping the settlers fight off the Indians. This was the very time when Boonesboro and other settlements were so often surrounded by Indians who had been aroused by the British officers at Detroit. These officers paid a certain sum for each scalp of an American the Indians brought them.

Turns to Patrick Henry in time of need

After having seen brave men and women scalped by the Indians, Clark decided to strike a blow at the British across the Ohio. But where could he find money and men for an army? Kentucky did not have men enough. Clark thought of that noble patriot across the mountains, Patrick Henry. He mounted his horse and guided some settlers back to Virginia, but kept his secret. In Virginia he heard the good news that Burgoyne had surrendered.

Governor Henry was heart and soul for Clark's plan. He made Clark a colonel, gave him six thousand

dollars in paper money, and ordered him to raise an army to defend Kentucky.

A colonel with a secret

112. The Campaign against Old Vincennes. In May, 1778, Clark's little army of about one hundred fifty backwoodsmen, with several families, took their flatboats and floated down the Monongahela to Fort Pitt. Clark did not dare tell the riflemen where they were going, for fear the British might get the word. Here they took on supplies and a few small cannon.

Floating down the beautiful Ohio

On they floated, in the middle of the river to keep away from the Indians who might be hiding in the deep, dark forests on the river banks. At the falls of the Ohio, on Corn Island, Clark landed his party. He built a blockhouse and cabins, and drilled the riflemen into soldiers while the settlers planted corn. This was the beginning of the city of Louisville.

Clark tells his secret

One day Clark called his men together and told them the secret—he was really leading them against the British forts on the Illinois and the Wabash rivers.

A few of the men refused to go so far from home—a thousand miles—but the rest were willing to follow their leader.

A long march begun

In June, Clark's boats "shot the falls" and were soon at the mouth of the Tennessee, where a band of hunters joined the party. There Clark hid the boats and began the long march through tangled forests and over grand prairies. But they did not know what minute the Indians might attack, or some British scout discover them and carry the news to General Hamilton at Detroit.

Kaskaskia, July 4, 1778

They reached the old French town of Kaskaskia at dusk on July 4. They did not dare give a shout or fire a gun, for the British officer had more men than Clark.

Surrounds the town

Clark sent part of his men silently to surround the town, while he led the others to the fort, where they heard the merry music of the violin and the voices of the dancers.

CLARK'S SURPRISE AT

Virginia, not Great Britain

The French settlers alarmed

Clark himself slipped into the great hall, folded his arms, and looked in silence on the dimly lighted scene. An Indian lying on the floor saw Clark's face by the light of the torches. He sprang to his feet, and

gave the terrible war whoop. Instantly the dancing ceased, the women screamed, and the men rushed toward Clark. But Clark simply said: "Go on with your dance, but remember that you dance under Virginia and not under Great Britain!" The British general surrendered, and the French inhabitants trembled, when they learned that the backwoodsmen had captured the town. They sent their priest, Father Gibault, and other chief men to beg for their lives. Imagine their surprise and joy when Clark told them that not only were their lives safe, but that the new republic made war on no church, and protected all from insult.

The treaty with France

He also told them that the King of France had made a treaty with the United States and was sending his great war ships and soldiers to help America. The town of Cahokia also surrendered.

Vincennes surrenders

Father Gibault went to Vincennes to tell the French settlers about the doings of Clark and to give them the news that France had taken sides with the Americans. The people rejoiced, and ran up the American flag. Clark sent Captain Helm to command the fort.

General Hamilton at Detroit was busy planning to attack Fort Pitt and to encourage the Ohio Indians to kill and scalp Kentuckians.

General

Hamilton stirred up

Stays in Vincennes until spring

How astonished he was when he heard that the forts on the Illinois and the Wabash had fallen! He gathered a mixed army of British, Canadians, and Indians, crossed Lake Erie to the mouth of the Maumee, and "poled" and paddled up that river to the portage. Down the Wabash they floated, five hundred strong. Vincennes surrendered without a blow. Hamilton decided to stay there for the winter and march against Clark in the spring. This was a blunder. He did not yet know Clark and his backwoodsmen.

"I must take Hamilton or Hamilton will take me," said Clark, when he heard the news. He immediately set to work to build a rude sort of gunboat, which he fitted out with his cannon and about forty men. He sent the *Willing*, as it was called, down the Mississippi, around into the Ohio, and up the Wabash to meet him at Vincennes.

Clark begins the march

All was excitement in the French towns. Forty or fifty French joined Clark's riflemen. Father Gibault gave them his blessing, and the march overland to Vincennes began.

CLARK'S MEN ON THEIR WAY THROUGH THE DRC

On the march

Clark divided his men into parties. Each, in its turn, did the hunting, and at night invited the others to sit around great camp fires to feast on "bear ham, buffalo hump, elk saddle, and venison haunch." They ate, sang, danced, and told stories. No doubt they often talked of their loved ones far away in the cabins of Virginia and Kentucky.

The drowned lands

On they pushed till they came to the "drowned lands of the Wabash," and there they saw miles and miles of muddy water. They made a rude boat to carry them over the deepest parts. The horses had to swim.

THE BIG TROOPER CARRIED THE DRUMMER BOY

The morning gun

Soon they were near enough Vincennes to hear the "morning gun" at the fort, but they did not dare fire a gun themselves for fear of being discovered by parties of hunters. Food grew scarce, game was hard to find, and starvation threatened them.

Terrible suffering

Sometimes, after wading all day, they could hardly find a dry spot to camp for the night. Some grew too weak to wade and were carried in boats. The stronger sang songs to keep up the courage of the weak. When they finally reached the opposite shore of the Wabash many fell, worn out—some lying partly in the water.

Those who were well built great fires and warmed and fed the faint ones on hot deer broth. But these brave men soon forgot their hardships and again were full of fight.

Clark's letter

Clark now decided to take a bold course. He sent a letter to the people of Vincennes telling them that he was about to attack the town. He advised all friends of America to remain quietly in their homes, and asked all friends of the British to go to the fort and join the "hair buyer," as the backwoodsmen called Hamilton.

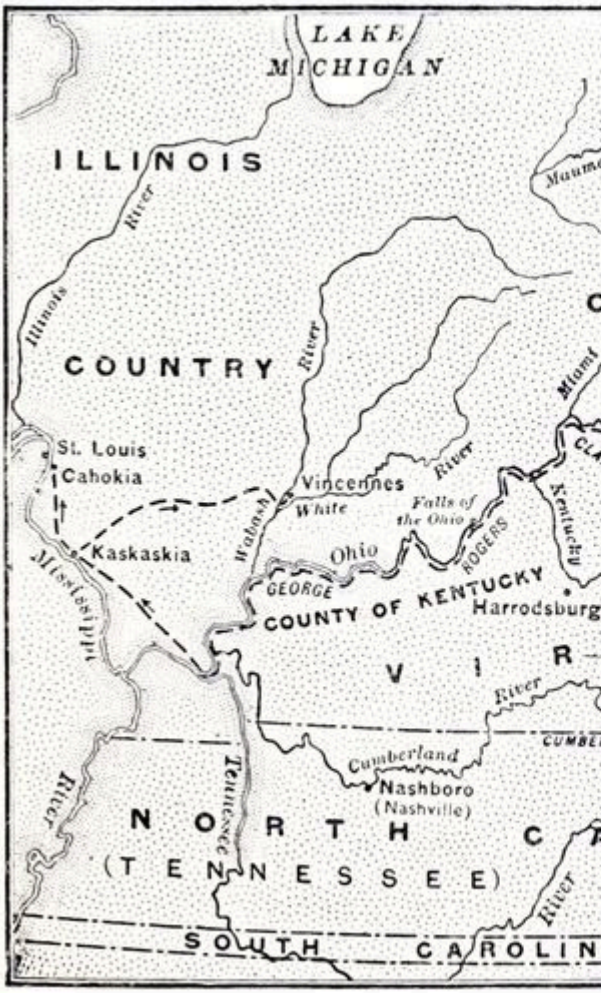
The attack

At dark, Clark's men charged into the town and attacked the fort. The fight went on all night. As soon as it was daylight the backwoodsmen fired through the portholes and drove the gunners from the cannon.

Hamilton surrenders

Clark's men begged to storm the fort. Only one American had been wounded, but several British soldiers had been killed and others wounded. In the afternoon Hamilton surrendered and once more the Stars and Stripes floated over "old Vincennes."

The *Willing* appeared in a few days. Her men were deeply disappointed because they were too late to take part in the fight.



EXPEDITIONS TO THE WEST AND THE SCENE OF

Clark put men in the forts at Kaskaskia, Cahokia, and Vincennes, and made peace with the Indians round about. But he was never able to march against Detroit, as once he had planned to do.

Clark's

Grant

Virginia rewarded the brave men who had followed Clark by giving to each three hundred acres of land in southern Indiana. The land was surveyed and is known to-day as "Clark's Grant."

Clark and his men had performed one of the greatest deeds of the Revolutionary War. They made it possible for the United States to have the Mississippi River for her western boundary when England acknowledged our independence.

Clark unrewarded

George Rogers Clark was never properly rewarded. He spent his last days in poverty at the falls of the Ohio, on Corn Island, and died in 1818. In 1895 a monument was erected in honor of his memory in the city of Indianapolis, Indiana.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Boone loved the woods, crossed the mountains into east Tennessee, and later went to Kentucky. *2.* He wintered alone in Kentucky; his brother returned home for supplies. *3.* Boone built the "Wilderness Road," and also built Fort Boonesboro. *4.* Boone took part in the War of the Revolution, was captured by the Indians, carried to Detroit, but escaped. *5.* Years after his death his remains were taken to Frankfort, Kentucky.

6. John Sevier studied at Fredericksburg;

fought Indians in the Shenandoah. *7.* He went over to the settlement on the Watauga; helped defend it against the Indians. *8.* Sevier helped win the great victory at Kings Mountain. *9.* He was many times governor of Tennessee.

10. George Rogers Clark loved the woods; was a surveyor and an Indian fighter at twenty-one. *11.* Moved to Kentucky, saw men and women scalped, and resolved to capture the British posts north of the Ohio. *12.* Clark received permission from Patrick Henry, collected his little army, and floated down the Ohio to the falls. *13.* He drilled his men; set out for Kaskaskia, which he captured. *14.* Clark marched for Vincennes through the drowned lands; attacked and captured Vincennes. *15.* Clark was not rewarded by the government, but the state of Indiana has erected a great monument to his memory.

Study Questions. *1.* What did Boone do that was pioneer-like? *2.* What was the country doing in 1760? *3.* Why did Boone wish to leave North Carolina? *4.* What were the early names of Kentucky, and what did these names mean? *5.* Tell the story of Boone's first visit to Kentucky. *6.* Picture the capture and escape of Boone and Stewart. *7.* Find the places on the map which are named on Boone's Wilderness Road. *8.* Picture the scene in Boonesboro the night of the capture of the girls and also their rescue and return home. *9.* Go with Boone to Blue Licks and help make salt. *10.* Be captured, and tell of

the long journey to Detroit, what you saw there, and how and why Boone made his escape. *11.* Tell the story of the last attack on Boonesboro. *12.* Why did Boone move to Missouri?

13. What famous men went to school at Fredericksburg? *14.* What famous men have lived a part of their time in the Shenandoah? *15.* What changed Sevier's career? *16.* Tell what happened to Sevier at the siege of Fort Watauga. *17.* Why did Sevier leave Watauga, and what sort of life did he lead on the Nolichucky? *18.* Tell of the gathering of the clans, and picture the battle of Kings Mountain. *19.* Why did the people of Tennessee love Sevier? *20.* Why was the boy disappointed?

21. What were Clark's surroundings in boyhood? *22.* When was he a scout? a leader in Kentucky? *23.* What made Clark learn to hate the British? *24.* Tell the story of his secret. *25.* Picture the voyage to the falls of the Ohio. *26.* What did Clark do here? *27.* Tell the story of events from the falls of the Ohio till he reached Kaskaskia. *28.* Picture the scene of the dance at Kaskaskia. *29.* What news did Clark give Father Gibault? *30.* Where were the British, and what did they do? *31.* Picture Clark's march to Vincennes. *32.* Be one of the soldiers of Clark and tell what was seen, heard, and done the night of the attack on Vincennes and the next day. *33.* Where was Clark's Grant? *34.* Why do we call Clark's conquest of Kaskaskia and Vincennes one of the greatest events in

American history? *35.* Where is a monument erected to his memory? *36.* Find on the map the places mentioned in the campaign.

Suggested Readings. DANIEL BOONE: Wright, *Children's Stories of American Progress*, 1-40; Glascock, *Stories of Columbia*, 138-147; Hart, *Camps and Firesides of the Revolution*, 101-116; McMurry, *Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley*, 68-83.

JOHN SEVIER: Blaisdell and Ball, *Hero Stories from American History*, 90-104; McMurry, *Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley*, 104-123; Phelan, *History of Tennessee*, 57-66, 241-257.

GEORGE ROGERS CLARK: McMurry, *Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley*, 124-149; Blaisdell and Ball, *Hero Stories from American History*, 1-17; Eggleston, *Tecumseh and the Shawnee Prophet*, 41-51; Roosevelt, *The Winning of the West*, II, 31-85.

DEVELOPMENT OF THE NEW REPUBLIC

ELI WHITNEY, WHO INVENTED THE COTTON GIN AND CHANGED THE HISTORY OF THE SOUTH

Eli at work in his father's tool shop

113. What a Boy's Love of Tools Led to. Before the Revolution there lived in a Massachusetts village a boy named Eli Whitney. His father had a farm, on which there was also a tool shop. This was the most wonderful place in the world to young Eli. Whenever he had a moment to spare, he was sure to be working away with his father's lathe or cabinet tools. At the age of twelve he made a good violin. After that people with broken violins came to him to have them mended.

One day, when his father had gone to church, Eli got Mr. Whitney's fine watch and took it all apart. He then showed his wonderful mechanical ability by putting it together again, and it ran as smoothly as before. During the war he made quite a bit of money as a nail-smith. At college he helped pay his expenses by mending things and doing a carpenter's work.

Goes to Georgia to teach

If Eli Whitney were living to-day he would surely

have been an engineer. But there were no engineers in those days, so he decided to teach. He found a position in far-off Georgia, and took passage on a ship to Savannah. On board ship he found the widow of the old war hero, General Nathanael Greene, whom he had met a short time before. She liked the young man for his friendly nature and his intelligence. He had a very pleasant voyage. But sad was his disappointment when he arrived at Savannah! The people who had asked him to come had engaged another tutor, and he was left without a position.

Invited to Mulberry Grove

He was in a strange place, without money, and did not know what to do. Just then came an invitation to visit at Mulberry Grove, where Mrs. Greene lived. He went gladly and was treated very kindly. He made many new friends. The men liked the interest he took in their farms and their work. The children were his friends because he made for them wonderful toys of all sorts.

Cotton fiber separated from seed by hand

One day some visitors were talking with Mrs. Greene about cotton. This plant was little grown at that time. People knew that it had a fine soft fiber which could be made into excellent cloth. But the fiber had to be separated from the seed before it could be spun. In those days the seeds were taken out by

hand, and even a skillful slave could clean only about a pound a day. Think of working a whole day for a handful of cotton! Because of this difficulty, cotton was very expensive, more so even than wool or linen. Only well-to-do people could wear cotton clothes.

ELI WHITNEY WORKING ON

114. The Cotton Gin Invented. One of the visitors said that a machine ought to be invented which would clean the cotton. Mrs. Greene thought of Whitney. She had seen him make many wonderful things. She believed he could make such a machine, and asked him to try. He thought about it, and believed he could make iron fingers do the work that the fingers of the slaves had done.

Whitney sets to work

Invents cotton gin

Whitney got a basketful of cotton and fixed up a shop. Then he went to work. He had a good deal of trouble, but he kept on. One day he called in Mrs. Greene and her overseer and proudly showed them his little machine, made of rollers and wires and brushes. Into this he poured the cotton just as it came from the field. When he turned a crank the soft, clean cotton came tumbling out of one side and the seeds out of another. This was the cotton gin, which in a few years was to change the entire life of the South.

A few years before Whitney made the cotton gin a vessel came to Liverpool with cotton from the United States. The people in Liverpool were astonished. They did not know that cotton grew in America! As soon as Whitney began to sell his new machines, all the South became a great cotton field. In 1825, the year of Whitney's death, the South shipped abroad thirty-seven million dollars' worth of cotton, more than that of all other goods exported from this country!

More slaves brought into the South

Before this time many planters had thought that slavery was unnecessary. But when Whitney's gin

made cotton growing so profitable, they had to have many more laborers to raise this new crop. Thousands of black slaves were sold to the cotton-growing parts of the South. The planters then believed they could not grow cotton without slaves, and it took a terrible war to settle the great question of slave labor.

THOMAS JEFFERSON, WHO WROTE THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE, FOUNDED THE DEMOCRATIC PARTY, AND PURCHASED THE LOUISIANA TERRITORY

WHERE JEFFERSON WENT TO SCHOOL BEFORE HE

Jefferson born in Virginia

A lover of books from boyhood

115. The Early Years of Jefferson. The author of the Declaration of Independence was born in 1743, near Charlottesville, Virginia. Like most other Virginia boys, Thomas Jefferson lived on a large plantation, and spent much time in hunting, fishing, and horseback riding. While yet a boy, and throughout his long life, Jefferson loved books and studied hard every subject that came before his mind.

Goes to William and Mary College

When seventeen years old he rode away to Williamsburg to attend the College of William and Mary, the second oldest college in America.

THE OLD CAPITOL, WI

Here Jefferson heard Patrick Henry make his fa

A wonderful old town

Although Williamsburg was the capital of the largest and oldest of all the colonies, it had scarcely more than two hundred houses, and not more than a thousand people. But it was a wonderful town in Jefferson's eyes, although it had but one main street. The capitol stood at one end of the street and the college at the other. It was the first town Thomas Jefferson had ever seen.

At the opening of the House of Burgesses, Jefferson

saw the best people in the Old Colony come pouring in. The planters came in fine coaches drawn by beautiful horses. The wives and daughters came to attend the governor's reception, and to enjoy meeting their old friends.

He knew great men

Jefferson became acquainted with the great men of his colony, and with many young men who were to be the future leaders in America. Here he met Patrick Henry, a student in a law office. Jefferson liked the fun-making Henry, and the two young men enjoyed many happy hours together, playing their violins.

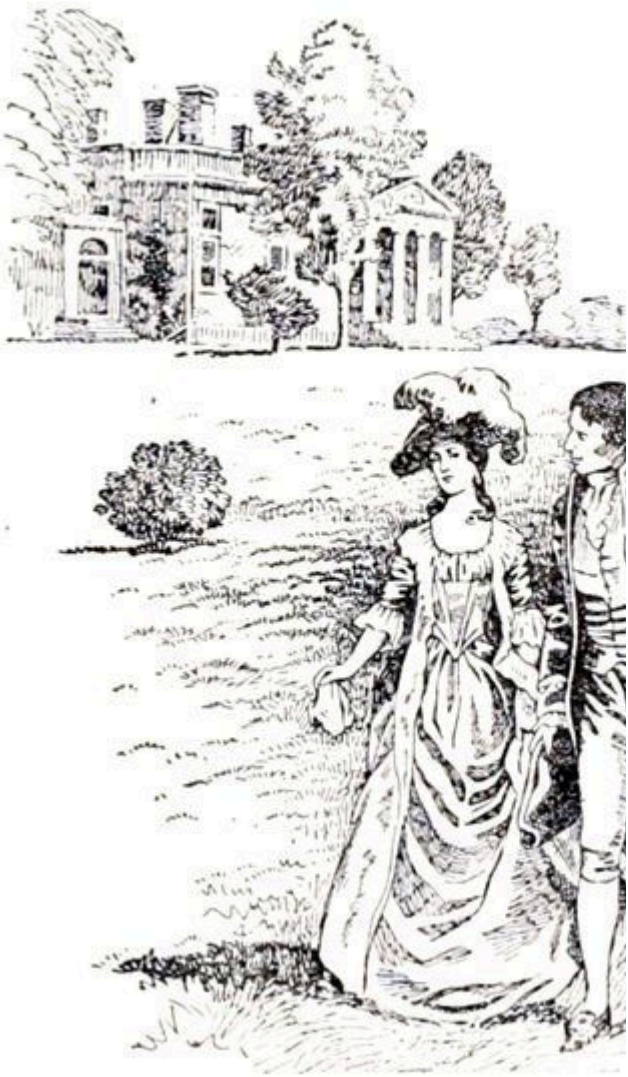
Studies law

After his graduation Jefferson remained in his old college town to study law in the office of one of Virginia's ablest lawyers. Henry often lodged in Jefferson's rooms when he came to attend the meetings of the Burgesses. When Henry made his stirring speech against the Stamp Act, Jefferson stood in the doorway of the House and listened spellbound to his friend's fiery eloquence.

Jefferson a member of the House of Burgesses

In a few years Jefferson himself was honored with a seat in the House of Burgesses. He immediately took a leading part in opposing the tax on tea. The king's governor became angry and sent the members of the

House of Burgesses home. But before they went, the bolder ones met and signed a paper which pledged the people of Virginia to buy no more goods from England.



JEFFERSON AND HIS WIFE AT MO

Marries and begins life at Monticello

The next important event in Jefferson's life was his falling in love, and his marriage to a young widow. She was beautiful in looks, winning in her manner, and rich in lands and slaves. Jefferson took his young wife to a handsome mansion which he had built on his great plantation. He called the home Monticello. Here these two Virginians, like Washington and his wife at Mount Vernon, spent many happy days.

A rich man

Jefferson, with his wife's estate added to his own, was a very wealthy man. Together they owned at this time nearly a hundred thousand acres of land and three hundred slaves.

THE RALEIGH TAVERN, V

When barred from the House of the Burgesses the Com

Committee of Correspondence

But stirring events took Jefferson away from the quiet life at Monticello. After his marriage, he went to the meeting of the Burgesses, and there with other leaders formed a Committee of Correspondence. This committee wrote to the other colonies to get news of what the leaders were doing, and to tell them what the men in Virginia were planning to do. Each of the other colonies appointed committees of correspondence. They kept the news going back and forth as fast as rapid horsemen could carry it. These committees had a strong influence in uniting the colonies against England.

In the Continental Congress

116. Writes the Declaration of Independence. In 1775 the Burgesses chose Thomas Jefferson, Richard Henry Lee, and Benjamin Harrison as delegates to the Continental Congress in Philadelphia. In this Congress Richard Henry Lee made a motion declaring that the thirteen colonies were free and independent of Great Britain.

The Congress appointed Thomas Jefferson of Virginia, John Adams of Massachusetts, Benjamin Franklin of Pennsylvania, Roger Sherman of Connecticut, and Robert R. Livingston of New York, to draw up a Declaration of Independence.

Jefferson writes the Declaration of

Independence

When these great men met to talk over the Declaration, the others urged Jefferson to do the writing, for he was able to put his thoughts on paper in plain, strong words. How important that the Declaration should be well written, and should contain powerful reasons for breaking away from England and setting up an independent government! A large number of people in America were opposed to separating from England. Besides, good reasons must be given to those brave Englishmen who, like Pitt and Burke, had been our defenders in Parliament.

The other members liked what Jefferson wrote

When Jefferson showed what he had written, the others liked it so well only a few words were changed. Even after several days' debate in Congress, only a few more words were changed. Then it was signed by the members of the Congress and sent out for all the world to see why America was driven to fight for independence.

SIGNING THE DECLARATION

From the first historical painting of John Trumbull, nov

John Hancock, the president of the Congress, was the first to sign the Declaration, and he did so in large letters, saying that George III might read his name without spectacles. He also said: "We must all hang together in this matter." "Yes," replied Franklin, "we must all hang together, or we shall hang separately."

Jefferson returned to Virginia, and later became governor, on the resignation of Patrick Henry.

Minister to France

Helps

France become a republic

After the war was over and England had taken her armies home, Congress sent Thomas Jefferson as minister to France (1785). The French people liked Jefferson very much, because, like Franklin, he was very democratic, and treated all men alike. The French people were just beginning to overthrow the power of their king, and plan a republic. Jefferson told them how happy the Americans were since they had broken away from George III.

JEFFERSON WELCOMED BACK TO MO

Greeted by his slaves

After five years Jefferson returned home. When his negro slaves heard that he was coming back to Monticello they went several miles to greet him. When the carriage reached home they carried him on their shoulders into the house. The slaves were happy for Jefferson, like Washington, was a kind master, and hoped for the day to come when slavery would be no more.

First Secretary of State

Washington had just been elected the first President of the United States (1789), and was now looking for a good man to be his adviser on questions relating to foreign nations. He chose Thomas Jefferson to do that work and gave him the office of Secretary of State.

THOMAS JEFFERSON

From a painting by Rembrandt Peale, now in the possessi New York Historical Society, New York City

Leader of

the Democratic-Republican party

Congress disputed and debated over the best ways of paying the Revolutionary War debt, and also over the question as to whether America should take sides with France in the great war between that country and England. The people also disputed over these questions, and formed themselves into two parties. One, the Democratic-Republican, was led by Thomas Jefferson, and the other, the Federalist party, was led by Alexander Hamilton.

Elected president

117. Jefferson President. In 1800 the people elected Jefferson president. He was very popular because he was a friend of the poor as well as of the rich people. He declared that the new national government should in every way be plain and simple, instead of showy like the governments of Europe.

Presidents Washington and Adams had had fine receptions, where people wore wigs, silver shoe buckles, and fine lace. When Jefferson became president he did away with all this show and style.

Reduces expenses

Jefferson also pleased the people by reducing the expenses of the government. He cut down the number of government clerks, soldiers in the army, and sailors in the navy. He spent just as little money

as possible in running the government.

One of Jefferson's most important acts while president was the purchase of Louisiana. Thanks to George Rogers Clark and his brave men, England had been forced to give the United States the Mississippi as our western boundary.

Napoleon forces Spain to give France Louisiana

In 1800 Napoleon, the great French general, forced Spain to give France all the region then known as Louisiana, which extended from the Mississippi to the Rocky Mountains, and from Canada to the Gulf of Mexico. Spain, a weak country, had already refused to permit American boats to use the mouth of the Mississippi. What if Napoleon should send his victorious army to Louisiana and close the Mississippi entirely? Jefferson saw the danger at once, and sent James Monroe to Paris to help our minister, Robert R. Livingston, one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence, buy New Orleans and a strip of land on the east side of the Mississippi River near its mouth.

Sells Louisiana to America

Napoleon was about to enter on a terrible war with England, and needed money badly. He was only too glad to sell all of Louisiana for fifteen million dollars (1803). This was more than Livingston was told to

buy, but he and Monroe accepted his offer.

The greatness of the purchase

If you will count the number of great states which have been carved out of the "Louisiana Purchase," and look at the great cities and the number of towns which have grown up within "old Louisiana," you will understand why great honor is given to the men who purchased this vast region.

The Lewis and Clark expedition

In the very next year Jefferson sent out an expedition under the command of Meriwether Lewis and William Clark to explore this vast country of Louisiana. With white men, Indians, and boats they made their way slowly up the Missouri, across the mountains, and down the Columbia River to the Pacific coast.

THE UNITED STATES IN 1803, AFTER

Louisiana Purchase Exposition

The wonderful stories told by Lewis and Clark gave Americans their first real knowledge of parts of the Louisiana Purchase and of the Oregon region. In 1904, America, with the help of all the great nations of the world, celebrated at St. Louis the buying of this region by holding the Louisiana Purchase Exposition.

President a second time

Friends visit him at Monticello

In 1804 Jefferson was elected president again by a greater majority than before. After serving a second term, he, like Washington, refused to be president for a third time. He retired to Monticello, where he spent his last days pleasantly and where hundreds of friends from all parts of America and Europe came to consult him. The people called him the "Sage of Monticello."

Died July 4, 1826

Jefferson lived to see the first two great states, Louisiana and Missouri, carved out of the Louisiana Purchase. He died at Monticello, July 4, 1826. On the same day, at Quincy, Massachusetts, died his longtime friend, John Adams. These two patriots, one the writer the other the defender of the Declaration of Independence, died just half a century after it was signed.

LEWIS AND CLARK, AMERICAN EXPLORERS IN THE OREGON COUNTRY

A vast unexplored country

Gray visits the Pacific

118. Discovery of the Columbia River. The purchase of the Louisiana territory by Jefferson opened up a great new field for settlers. It was necessary to know something about the new territory. It was a vast unexplored country stretching from the Mississippi River to the Rockies. The Pacific shore had already been visited by explorers. Boston merchants had sent Captain Robert Gray to the Pacific coast to buy furs of the Indians. He did not try to find an overland route, but sailed around South America and up the coast to Vancouver Island, where he obtained a rich cargo of furs. He then made his way across the Pacific to China, and came back to Boston by way of the Cape of Good Hope—the first American to carry the Stars and Stripes around the world.

Discovers the mouth of the Columbia

On a second voyage to the same region, in the good ship *Columbia*, Gray discovered the mouth of a great river (1792). Up this river he went for nearly thirty miles, probably the first white man to sail upon its waters. Captain Gray named the river the Columbia after his vessel. The Indians had called it the Oregon.

CAPTAIN MERIWETHER LEWIS

From the original painting by Charles Wilson Peale in 1 Philadelphia

119. The Lewis and Clark Expedition. The next

important step in finding a route to the Oregon country was the great expedition undertaken while Thomas Jefferson was yet president.

Expedition leaves St. Louis

Lewis and Clark were two young men chosen by Jefferson to explore the region known as the Louisiana Purchase and to make their way across the Rocky Mountains to the Oregon country and to the Pacific. They chose forty-two men to go with them—some as soldiers, others as servants, and still others as hunters. From the little French village of St. Louis they began their adventurous journey in boats in the spring of 1804.

Up the Missouri River they slowly made their way against the current of the muddy, rushing stream. At one time it was so swift that they could not force boats against it, and at another time the brushwood that came down the river broke their oars.

Smoked the "pipe of peace"

Near where the city of Council Bluffs now stands, Lewis and Clark held a great meeting with the Indians. They told the Indians that the people of the United States and not the people of France were now the owners of this great land. Together they smoked the "pipe of peace," and the Indians promised to be friendly.

On they went till the region near the Black Hills was reached. It was the fall of the year and the trees were

bright with color, and the wild ducks and geese in large numbers were seen going southward.

Spent the winter with the Indians

The company spent the winter on an island sixteen hundred miles from St. Louis. The men built rude homes and fortified them. The Indians were friendly and the explorers spent many evenings around the wigwam fires listening to stories of the country the Indians had to tell them.

The Rocky Mountains

In the spring they bade the Indians good-by, passed the mouth of the Yellowstone, and traveled on till the Rocky Mountains with their long rows of snow-covered peaks came into view.

On the thirteenth day of June they beheld wonderful pictures of the "Falls of the Missouri." The water tore through a vast gorge a dozen miles or more in length.

CAPTAIN WILLIAM CLARK

From the original painting by Charles Wilson Peale in 1 Philadelphia

120. The Way over the Mountains. On they went

until their boats could go no farther. They had reached rough and rugged hills and mountains. They climbed the heights as best they could. From now on the suffering was very great indeed.

The source of the Missouri

One day Captain Lewis went ahead with three men to find Indian guides for the party. They climbed higher and higher until finally they came to a place where the Missouri River takes its rise. They went on and at last came to the western slope of the mountains, down which flowed a stream toward the Pacific Ocean.

STATUE OF SACAJAWEA

This Indian woman, as interpreter and guide, was a great aid to the exploring party

Finally Captain Lewis came upon a company of

Indian women who could not get away. They all bowed their heads as if expecting to be killed. They led the white men to a band of Indians, who received them with all the signs of kindness they could show.

Indians are friendly

Now they all turned back to find Clark and his party. When they reached Clark the Indians smoked the "pipe of peace" and Lewis and Clark told the Indians why the United States had sent them out.

They were the first white men these Indians had ever seen. They looked the men over carefully and took a deep interest in their clothing, their food, and in their guns.

Explorers suffer from hunger and cold

The mountains were now rough and barren and the streams ran through deep gorges. The explorers took an old Indian guide and crossed the Bitter Root Mountains into a valley of the same name. They followed an Indian trail over the mountains again and into the Clearwater. They suffered for want of food and on account of the cold. When they reached a tribe of the Nez Percé (Pierced Nose) Indians they ate so much they were all ill.

Reach the Columbia River

121. On Waters Flowing into the Pacific. In five log boats, which they had dug out of trees, they glided down the Clearwater to where it meets the Snake River. They camped near the spot where now stands the present town of Lewiston, Idaho. Then they embarked on the Snake River and floated down to where it joins the mighty Columbia.

They were among the Indians again, who had plenty of dried fish, for here is the home of the salmon, a fish found in astonishing numbers. The men had never seen so many fish before.

Explorers reach the Pacific

The number of Indians increased as they went toward the Pacific. Finally the party of explorers passed through the Cascade Mountains and were once more on the smooth current of the Columbia. They soon beheld the blue waters of the Pacific.

During their five months' stay on the Pacific, Captain Clark made a map of the region they had gone through. They repaired their guns and made clothes of the skins of elk and of other game.

Lewis and Clark travel different routes

The Indians told them of a shorter route to the Falls of the Missouri, and Captain Lewis and nine men went by this route while Captain Clark with others retraced the old route. They saw nothing of each other for two months, when they all met again in

August on the banks of the Missouri.

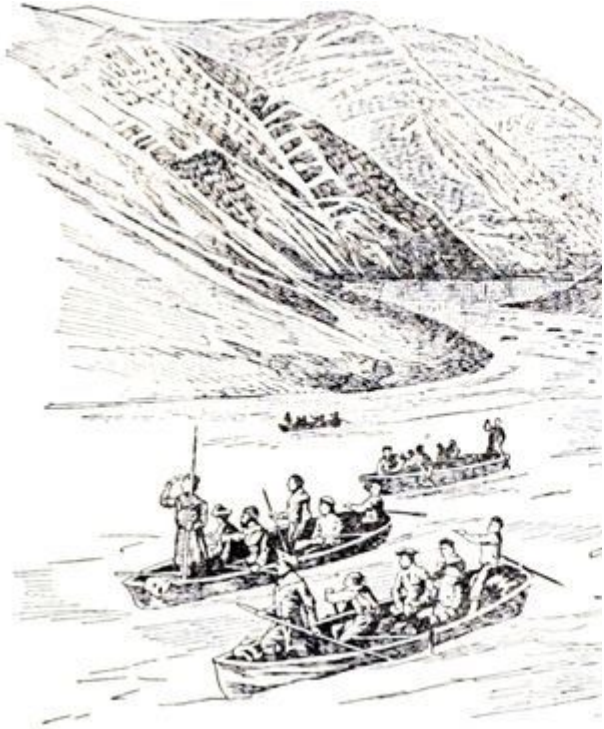
All return to St. Louis

They reached St. Louis September 23, 1806. The people of the United States were glad to hear of the safe return of the exploring party, for they had long thought the men were dead.

Rewarded by Congress

Both President Jefferson and Congress put great value upon the useful information that the expedition gathered. Congress rewarded every one connected with the expedition. Each man was granted double pay for the time he spent and was given three hundred acres of land. To Captain Lewis was given fifteen hundred acres and to Captain Clark a thousand acres. Lewis was appointed first governor of Louisiana Territory and Clark was made the governor of Missouri Territory.

122. Fur Traders and Missionaries Lead the Way. Soon after this expedition the fur traders pushed their way across the Rocky Mountains from St. Louis to the Pacific. They found the "gateway of the Rockies," called the South Pass, which opened the way to the Oregon country (1824).



LEWIS AND CLARK ON THEIR WA

The coming of the missionaries

After the fur traders came the missionary, Nathaniel Wyeth, a New Englander who led a party to the Columbia and established a post (1832). Five missionaries followed him and began to work among the Indians. Very soon Parker and Whitman went out to the Nez Percé Indians, who came over the mountains to meet them near the headwaters of the Green River. Parker returned with the Indians and

visited Walla Walla, Vancouver, and the Spokane and Colville regions. Whitman returned East, was married, and found a missionary, Spaulding, and his wife, and the party went out to the Oregon country to work among the Indians.

The treaty of 1846

123. The Boundary Established. During this time fur traders from Canada and Great Britain were occupying the Oregon country as far as the Columbia River. The United States and Great Britain made a treaty by which they agreed to occupy the country together. This treaty lasted till settlers from the United States made it necessary to have a new treaty. In 1846 a new treaty was made and the present northern boundary was established.

OLIVER HAZARD PERRY, VICTOR IN THE BATTLE OF LAKE ERIE

A Rhode Islander

124. A Young Man Who Captured a British Fleet. Perry was born in Rhode Island in 1785. He went to the best schools, and learned the science of navigation. At fourteen years of age he was a midshipman on his father's vessel, and before he was twenty-one he had served in a war against the Barbary pirates.

Perry bitter toward the British

Ready for battle

When young Perry returned to his home the British were seizing American ships, claiming the right to search them for British sailors. Perry was very bitter toward the British for these insults to his country, and when war was declared he was eager to fight. A fleet of vessels was being built on Lake Erie, and Perry was sent as commandant to take charge of their construction. He promptly set to work, and in a few weeks the ships were ready for battle.

OLIVER HAZARD PERRY

After an engraving by Edwin made in 1813 from

He immediately set sail for Put-In-Bay, where the British fleet was stationed. There he arranged his ships for battle and raised a banner containing the last words of Captain Lawrence, who had been killed earlier in the war while bravely fighting. "Don't give up the ship!" were the words the flag showed as it was unfurled to the breeze.

Drives the "Lawrence" into the British fleet

Driving his flagship, the *Lawrence*, right in among the enemy's ships, Perry made them turn all their cannon against it. The loss of life was dreadful, but Perry kept cool. When the last gun of the *Lawrence* could no longer be fired, he ordered a boat to be lowered and with some brave men rowed through a storm of shot and shell to the *Niagara*, another of Perry's large ships. Then he drove this ship into the midst of the fight. In fifteen minutes the two largest British ships struck their colors. The remainder of the fleet then surrendered.

Broke British power in the West

This victory broke the British power in the West. Congress voted resolutions in praise of Perry and ordered a gold medal struck in his honor. Wherever he went the people paid him great attention, and at

his home he was given a royal welcome.

ANDREW JACKSON, THE VICTOR OF NEW ORLEANS

Jackson a Scotch-Irishman

125. How a Poor Boy Began to Rise. Andrew Jackson was born of Scotch-Irish parents who had emigrated from Ireland to South Carolina. His father died and his mother moved to North Carolina to be among her own people. Here, a few days after his father's death, in the same year in which England passed the Tea Act (1767), Andrew was born.

Learns from the woods

Schools were few and poor. In fact, Andrew was too poor himself to do anything but work. He learned far more from the pine woods in which he played than from books. At nine he was a tall, slender, freckle-faced lad, fond of sports, and full of fun and mischief. But woe to the boy that made "Andy" angry!

Learns to hate the British

When thirteen, he learned what war meant, for it was in the days of the Revolution when Colonel

Tarleton came along and killed more than a hundred and wounded one hundred fifty of Jackson's neighbors and friends. Among the killed was one of the boy's own brothers. Andrew never forgave the British.

JACKSON REFUSES TO SHINE TH

A prisoner of war

Loses his mother

At fourteen he was taken prisoner by the British. "Boy," shouted an officer, "clean these boots!" "I will not," replied Jackson. "I am a prisoner of war, and claim to be treated as such." The officer drew his sword and struck Jackson a blow upon the head, and another upon the hand. These blows left scars which Jackson carried to his grave. He was taken a prisoner to Camden, where smallpox killed his remaining brother and left Andrew poor and sickly looking. His mother had come to Camden to nurse her sons. A little later she lost her life in caring for American prisoners on British ships in Charleston Harbor, so Jackson was now an orphan of the Revolution.

THE HERMITAGE NEAI

This historic house, the home of Andrew Jackson,

A lawyer before twenty

After the Revolutionary times had gone by, Jackson studied law and at the age of twenty was admitted to practice in the courts of the state.

Follows the settlers over the

mountains

But stories of the beautiful country that were coming over the mountains from Tennessee, stirred his blood. He longed to go, and in company with nearly a hundred men, women, and children, Jackson set out for the goodly land.

They crossed the mountains into east Tennessee, where was the town of Jonesboro, not far from where Governor Sevier lived.

Outwits the Indians

Jackson and the others rested awhile before taking up their march to Nashville. From Jonesboro to Nashville they had to look out for Indians. Only once were they troubled. One night, when men, women, and children were resting in their rude tents, Jackson sat at the foot of a tree smoking his corncob pipe. He heard "owls" hooting near by. These were Indian signals. "A little too natural," thought Jackson. He aroused the people, and silently they marched away. Another party, coming an hour or two later, stopped in the same place, and were massacred by Indians.

Practicing law on the frontier

Arriving in Nashville, Jackson began the practice of law. To reach the court, he sometimes had to ride miles and miles, day after day, through thick forests where the Indians might lie in wait.

When Tennessee was made a territory, Jackson became district attorney. He had many "ups and

downs" with the bad men of the frontier. Jackson himself had a bad temper, and woe to the man who made him angry. He either got a sound thrashing or had to fight a duel.

In Congress

When Tennessee became a state, Jackson was elected to Congress. A year or so afterward (1797) he was appointed a United States senator to fill a vacancy. But such a position did not give him excitement enough, so he resigned the next year and returned to Nashville. He was a frontier judge for a time, then he became a man of business.

A call to arms

126. How Jackson Won a Great Victory. When the War of 1812 broke out there was a call to arms! The British will capture New Orleans! Twenty-five hundred frontiersmen rallied to Jackson's call. He was just the man to lead them. They decided to go to New Orleans by water.

Down the Cumberland to the Ohio in boats! Down the Ohio to the Mississippi, and down the Mississippi to Natchez! Here they stopped, only to learn that there were no British near.

How he won the name "Old Hickory"

The twenty-five hundred men marched the long, dreary way home. Jackson was the toughest one

among them. He could march farther and last longer without food than any of them. The soldiers nicknamed him "Old Hickory."

Once more he was at home, where he now was a great man among his friends. About this time Jackson had a fierce fight with Thomas H. Benton and received a pistol shot in the shoulder. Before he was again well the people who suffered from the Fort Mims massacre were calling loudly for help. Tecumseh had stirred up the Creeks to murder five hundred men, women, and children at this fort in Alabama.

JACKSON SHARES HIS ACORNS WITH THE H

Another call to arms

Jackson and the hungry soldier

Twenty-five hundred men answered Jackson's call. They marched south through a barren country. Food was scarce. His army, almost starved, threatened to go home. A half-starved soldier saw Jackson sitting under a tree and asked him for something to eat. Looking up, Jackson said: "It has always been a rule with me never to turn away a hungry man. I will cheerfully divide with you." Then he drew from his pocket a few acorns, saying: "This is the best and only fare I have."

But Jackson soon received reënforcements, and then, in spite of all these drawbacks, he broke the power of the Creeks in the great battle of Horseshoe Bend on the Tallapoosa River in Alabama. After that the Indians were only too glad to cease fighting and sue for peace.

A BREASTWORK OF CC

A third call to arms

Jackson was hardly home again before President Madison made him a major-general, and sent him with an army to guard New Orleans from the British.

After attacking and capturing Pensacola, a Spanish fort which the English occupied, he hurried his army on to New Orleans. Nothing had been done to defend the city. Jackson immediately declared martial law. He threw himself with all the energy he had into getting New Orleans ready, for the British troops were already landing.

A LITTLE BREASTWORK OF

The two armies

The British general had twelve thousand veterans, fresh from their victory over the great Napoleon. Jackson had only half as many men. But nearly every man was a sharpshooter. They were riflemen from the wilds of Kentucky, Tennessee, and Mississippi, and every man was burning with an ardent desire to fight and defeat the redcoats.

Jackson had not long to wait. On came the British in solid column, with flags flying and drums beating. The fog was breaking away. Behind the breastworks stood the Americans with cannon loaded to the

muzzle and with deadly rifles primed for the fight.

THE BATTLE OF NEW

Won by Jackson after peace was made, this battle helpe

The beginning of the battle

The cannon were the first to fire, but the redcoats closed up their shattered ranks, and moved on. Those lines of red! How splendid and terrible they looked! The Americans gave three cheers. "Fire!" rang out along the line. The breastworks were instantly a sheet of fire. Along the whole line it blazed and rolled. No human being could face that fire. The

British soldiers broke and fled.

ANDREW JACKSON

From a painting by Thomas Sully which hangs in the rooms of Pennsylvania at Philadelphia

The battle in earnest

The victory after the treaty

Once more they rallied, led by General Pakenham, a relative of the great Duke of Wellington. But who could withstand that fire? Pakenham was slain, and again his troops fled. The battle was over. The British had lost two thousand six hundred men and the Americans only twenty-one! This victory was won after peace had been made between England and America. A ship was then hurrying to America with the glad news.

Jackson a hero

Everywhere the people rejoiced greatly over the victory of New Orleans. Jackson was a great hero, and wherever he went crowds followed him, and cried out, "Long live the victor of New Orleans!"

For several years Jackson remained at the head of the army in the South. The Seminole War was fought, and those Indians were compelled to make peace.

Elected president

127. The People's President. The people of the United States elected Jackson president in 1828, and reëlected him in 1832 by a greater majority than before, showing that he was very popular.

Quarrels with the bank

Great men oppose Jackson

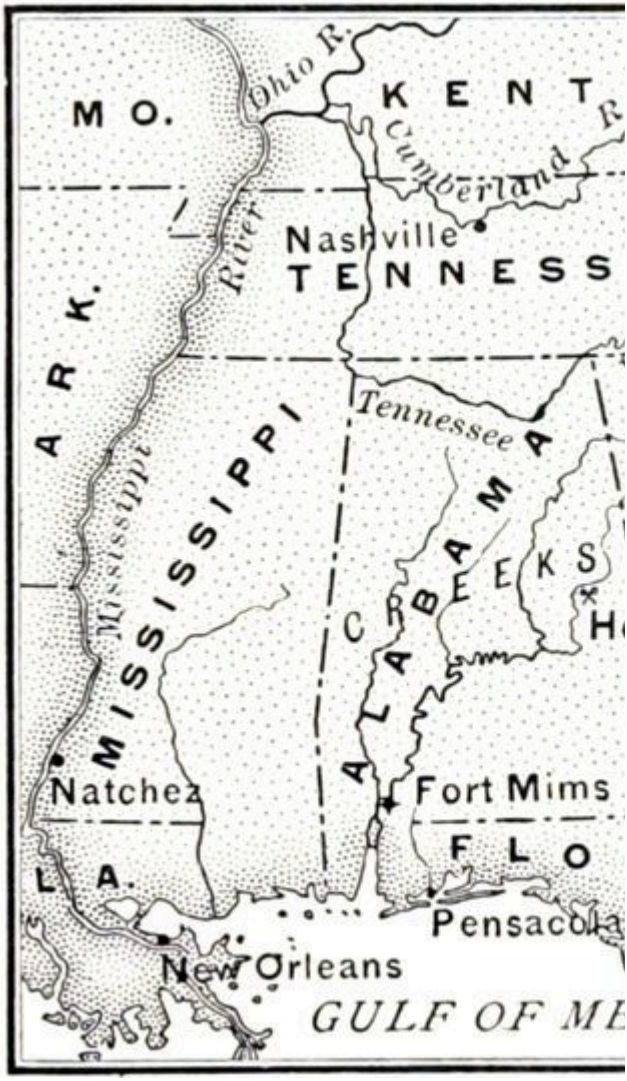
President Jackson had a quarrel with the men who were managing the United States Bank. This bank kept the money for the government. He ordered that the money of the government be taken out of this bank and put in different State Banks which were called "pet" banks. In the Senate of the United States at this time were three men of giant-like ability—Henry Clay, Daniel Webster, and John C. Calhoun. They joined together to oppose President Jackson in his fight against the United States Bank. These men made many long and very bitter speeches against the president.

The Senate finally passed a resolution blaming President Jackson for taking the money away from the United States Bank. President Jackson was furious. He wrote a protest and sent it to the Senate. The people in the states took sides, and the excitement spread to all parts of the country.

Jackson and Benton friends

In the Senate was another great man, Thomas H. Benton of Missouri. Although Jackson and Benton had once fought a terrible duel in Nashville, they now were good friends. Benton attacked Clay, Webster, and Calhoun in powerful speeches and

defended President Jackson in every way he could. At last, after several years, he succeeded in getting the Senate to expunge, or take away, from their records the resolution blaming President Jackson.



THE SCENE OF JACKSON'S CAMI

There was great rejoicing among Jackson's friends, and Senator Benton was the hero of the day. President Jackson gave a great dinner party in Washington in Benton's honor.

Nullification

For a long time South Carolina and other southern states had been complaining about the high tariff which Congress had passed. In 1832 South Carolina declared in a state convention that her people should not pay the tariff any longer. She resolved to fight rather than obey the law and pay the tariff. This act of the convention was called nullification.

THE TOMB OF ANDREW JACK

President Jackson's proclamation

President Jackson was very angry when he heard of this act of South Carolina. He told General Scott to take soldiers and war vessels to Charleston, and enforce the law at all hazards. The president published a letter to the people of South Carolina, warning them not to nullify a law of Congress.

Jackson a Union man

These acts made President Jackson very popular at the North, where the people all believed the president had saved the Union from breaking up.

In 1837 his second term as president expired and he retired from public life after having seen his good friend, Martin Van Buren of New York, made president.

Death at the Hermitage

Jackson returned to Tennessee, greatly beloved by the people. There, in his home, called the Hermitage, he spent the rest of his life. He died in 1845, at the age of seventy-eight.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Eli Whitney was born in Massachusetts. *2.* As a boy he was very much interested in tools, and worked in his father's shop with all kinds of mechanical contrivances. *3.* He earned his way through college doing carpenter work. *4.* After

graduation he set out to teach in Savannah. *5.* He failed to get the situation, and went to visit a friend who had taken much interest in him. *6.* The South needed a machine to separate the cotton fiber from the seed. *7.* Whitney set to work to make one, at the suggestion of his friend, Mrs. Greene. *8.* The cotton gin revolutionized the South. *9.* It made cotton raising the chief industry, and brought thousands of slaves into the country.

10. Thomas Jefferson, born in Virginia, loved books; while in college he met Patrick Henry. *11.* Went to the Burgesses and planned the committees of correspondence. *12.* Jefferson was sent to the Congress of 1776 and wrote the Declaration of Independence. *13.* After the war Jefferson was sent as Minister to France. *14.* Washington chose him as Secretary of State, and he founded the Democratic-Republican party. *15.* Jefferson was popular as president. *16.* He cut down expenses, and with his savings in running the government purchased Louisiana.

17. The Columbia River was discovered by Gray. *18.* The way to the Oregon country was made known by Lewis and Clark. *19.* The Indians received them with kindness along the route. *20.* They followed the Columbia until they reached the Pacific; Clark made a map of the region they had gone through. *21.* As a reward, Lewis was appointed governor of the Louisiana Territory and Clark of the Missouri Territory. *22.* Fur traders and missionaries soon found their way to the Oregon country.

23. Perry went to serve against the pirates, was eager to fight the English when war broke out, and was appointed commandant at Lake Erie. *24.* Perry built a fleet and won a famous victory over the English. *25.* A gold medal was struck in his honor by Congress.

26. Andrew Jackson was born of poor parents; learned from the woods more than from books. *27.* Jackson was captured by the British. *28.* His mother died nursing American soldiers. *29.* He studied law, went over the mountains to Nashville, and was elected to Congress. *30.* He also served as United States senator. *31.* Jackson defeated the Indians, captured Pensacola, and won a brilliant victory at New Orleans. *32.* Jackson was elected president and was opposed in his policy by Clay, Webster, and Calhoun. *33.* Threatened South Carolina over nullification. *34.* Died at the Hermitage in 1845.

Study Questions. *1.* What did Whitney like to do as a boy? *2.* How did he help himself through college? *3.* Why did he go to Savannah? *4.* Whom did he meet on the way? *5.* Describe how cotton was then separated from the seed. *6.* Describe the action of the machine made by Whitney. *7.* What was the effect of his invention? *8.* How did the value of cotton shipped out of the country compare with other goods? *9.* What effect did the invention have on negro slavery in the South?

10. Name some things boys did on a Virginia plantation in Jefferson's time. *11.* Name some of Virginia's great men whom Jefferson

knew. *12.* Explain how the committees of correspondence worked. *13.* Who were the men appointed to make a Declaration of Independence? *14.* Why did Jefferson write the Declaration? *15.* Why did French people like Jefferson? *16.* Picture Jefferson's return home. *17.* How was Jefferson fitted for Secretary of State? *18.* What were the people then disputing about, and who were their leaders? *19.* Why did Jefferson want the government to be plain and simple? *20.* Who wanted it different? *21.* Tell the story of the buying of Louisiana. *22.* Why did Americans think the buying a great event? *23.* Why did Jefferson not become president a third time? *24.* What can you tell of the friendship of John Adams and Thomas Jefferson? *25.* Describe the trip of Lewis and Clark up the Missouri River. *26.* How did the Indians on the way receive them? *27.* How did they return home? *28.* What offices were given Lewis and Clark?

29. What important command was given to Perry? *30.* Tell what he did when his ships were ready for the "Battle of Lake Erie." *31.* Picture the battle. *32.* What honors were given to Perry?

33. Where was Andrew Jackson born? *34.* Name some other boys who learned more from the woods than from books. *35.* Mention some early experiences Jackson had with the British soldiers. *36.* What other experiences did he have in the war? *37.* What led him to go to Nashville? *38.* Explain how Jackson outwitted the Indians. *39.* What

did he do as a young lawyer? *40.* Tell the story of Jackson's first call to arms. *41.* Give a full account of Jackson's second call to arms. *42.* Imagine yourself one of Jackson's soldiers, and tell what you saw and heard at the battle of New Orleans. *43.* Give an account of Jackson's fight against the United States Bank. *44.* Who was Thomas H. Benton, and why did he defend President Jackson? *45.* What action did South Carolina take in 1832, and what did the president do? *46.* Where did Jackson live after his last term as president?

Suggested Readings. ELI WHITNEY: Brooks, *The Story of Cotton*, 90-99; Southworth, *Builders of Our Country*, Vol. II, 108-116; Shillig, *The Four Wonders*, 1-32.

JEFFERSON: Wright, *Children's Stories of American Progress*, 55-85; Cooke, *Stories of the Old Dominion*, 180-192; Hart, *How Our Grandfathers Lived*, 317-320; Butterworth, *In the Days of Jefferson*, 32-168, 175-206, 216-264.

PERRY: Beebe, *Four American Naval Heroes*, 71-130; Wright, *Children's Stories of American Progress*, 130-144; Hart, *How Our Grandfathers Lived*, 241-242, 248-249; Glascock, *Stories of Columbia*, 172-174.

JACKSON: Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 162-172; Blaisdell and Ball, *Hero Stories from American History*, 185-198; Hart, *How Our Grandfathers Lived*, 284-291; Barton, *Four American Patriots*, 133-192; Frost, *Old Hickory*.

THE MEN WHO MADE THE NATION GREAT BY THEIR INVENTIONS AND DISCOVERIES

ROBERT FULTON, THE INVENTOR OF THE STEAMBOAT

How boats were driven

128. The Invention of the Steamboat. Once there were no steam engines to drive boats. On sea and river they were driven by wind, and on canals they were pulled along by horses.

Inventors before Fulton

James Rumsey on the Potomac, John Fitch on the Delaware, and William Longstreet on the Savannah had each invented and tried some kind of steamboat, before Robert Fulton.

Fulton was born of Irish parents, in New Britain, Pennsylvania, in 1765. At the age of three he lost his father. Young Fulton had a great taste for drawing, painting, and inventing.

ROBERT FULTON

After the painting by Benjamin West

He went to Philadelphia, then the largest city in the Union, when he was twenty, and engaged in painting and drawing. His first savings were given to his widowed mother to make her comfortable.

Studied under Benjamin West

Fulton finally decided to be an artist, and went to England to make his home with Benjamin West, a great painter who once lived at Philadelphia.

Influenced to become an engineer

There he became acquainted with the Duke of Bridgewater, who influenced him to become a civil engineer. Fulton now met James Watt, who had greatly improved the steam engine. At one time the young man aided Watt in building an engine.

Meets Livingston in France

Fulton next went to France, where he became interested in plans for inventing diving boats, torpedoes, and steamboats. Here he met Robert R. Livingston, a signer of the Declaration of Independence, then United States Minister to France. Livingston took a deep interest in his experiments in

driving boats by steam, and furnished him the means to make them.

Fulton's trial boats

Fulton made a "model" boat, which he left in France. Shortly afterward, he built a boat twenty-six feet long and eight feet wide. In this vessel he put a steam engine. The trial trips proved beyond a doubt that steamboats could be made.

Twenty years' rights

Livingston believed in Fulton and his steamboat. When he returned to New York, Livingston obtained from the legislature the right to navigate the waters of the state by steam for twenty years. The one condition was that the boat should go against the current of the Hudson at the rate of four miles an hour.

Gets engine in England

The "Clermont"

Fulton got his engine from the inventors, Watt and Boulton, in England—the only place where suitable engines could be found. The engine came in 1806. A boat called the *Clermont* was built to carry it. She was one hundred thirty feet long and eighteen feet wide. She had a mast with a sail. At both ends she

was decked over, and in the middle the engine was placed. Two large side-wheels dipped two feet into the water.

SCENE ON A C

129. The "Clermont" Moves. At one o'clock in the afternoon of August 7, 1807, a great crowd gathered to see the first voyage of the *Clermont*. Many people did not expect to see the vessel go. They believed Fulton and Livingston had spent their money for nothing. Fulton gave his signal from the deck of the *Clermont*. The people looked on in astonishment as the boat moved steadily up the pathway of the Hudson.

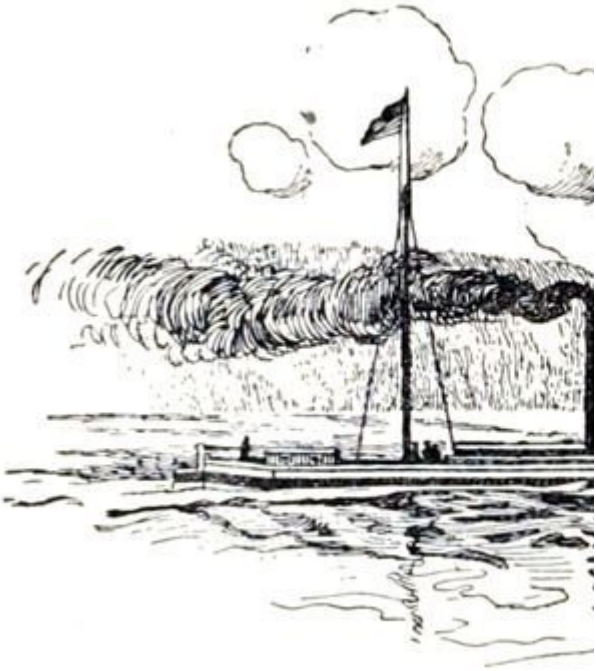
A great victory for

Fulton and Livingston

The *Clermont* kept on going till out of sight, and the crowds of wondering people went home hardly believing the evidence of their eyes. Up the river, against the current of the mighty Hudson, she made her way till Albany was reached. She had gone one hundred fifty miles in thirty-two hours, and won a great victory for Fulton and Livingston.

Name of boat changed to "North River"

When winter came the *Clermont* was taken out of the water and rebuilt. They covered her from stem to stern with a deck. Under the deck they built two cabins, with a double row of berths. Everything was done to make her attractive in the eyes of the people. They changed her name to the *North River*. In the spring she made her trips regularly up and down the Hudson.



THE "CLERMC

Steamboats appear on different rivers

130. Steamboats on All the Rivers. In 1809 a steamboat was built on Lake Champlain, another on the Raritan, and a third on the Delaware. From this time forward, steamboats, carrying passengers and freight from place to place, began to appear on all the great rivers in the settled portions of the United States.

WATCHING THE "CLERMONT" ON ITS FI

People along the Ohio frightened

In 1811 a steamboat was built on the Ohio River at Pittsburgh. It started on its trip down the beautiful Ohio. People gathered on the banks of the river to see it go by. The steamboat, at first, made a frightful noise. Hence when it came to places where news traveled slowly, the people were sometimes

frightened, and the negroes, terror stricken, ran crying into the woods.

A steamboat helped Jackson

In 1814 a steamboat carried supplies to General Jackson at New Orleans, and helped him to win the great battle fought there.

Seven steamboats were running on the Ohio and the Mississippi at the close of the War of 1812. Before another year went by, a steamboat had made its way from New Orleans against the currents of the Mississippi and the Ohio rivers to Louisville, laden with goods from Europe.

The steamboat had now won a place on the American rivers. It aided in the rapid settlement of the country. It made travel quick and easy, and it carried the goods of settlers up and down the rivers.

Robert Fulton dies, 1815

Robert Fulton died in 1815, deeply mourned by all his countrymen, and was buried in Trinity churchyard, New York City.

Steamboats carry goods up the Mississippi

Erie Canal

across New York

131. The Erie Canal. Before Fulton invented the steamboat, supplies had been carried to the western settlers over the mountains from the East. Now, however, steamboats puffed up the Mississippi from New Orleans loaded down with goods that had been brought all the way from Europe. The settlers could get all the supplies they wanted and at a much lower cost. For this reason the merchants of New York and the East were in danger of losing all their trade with the settlers. They saw that they must have some connection with the West by water, and so they planned the Erie Canal. It took seven years to dig. When it was finished it was three hundred sixty-three miles long, forty feet wide, and four feet deep. The depth was later increased to seven feet. It stretched straight across the state of New York from Lake Erie to the Hudson River.

In the autumn of 1825, when the canal was finished, there was a great celebration. A "fleet" of canal boats carried Governor Clinton of New York and a number of other distinguished men across the state.

New York recovered her trade

The merchants of the East were no longer afraid of the Mississippi route, for they had a route of their own. The canal became the great highway of commerce from the East to the West and from the West to the East. New York recovered her trade, and flourishing cities grew up along the canal.

But there were cities in the East that could not use

the canal. Farther south they could not dig a canal across the mountains. All their goods had to be carried over the Cumberland Gap on the backs of horses. But a new means of travel and transportation had been invented, which was to far surpass the steamboat and which was to help every city no matter where located.

The first railroad

132. Railroad Building. The first railroad in America was a very rude affair. There were no "palace cars" or steel rails, nor did the trains run at a speed of sixty miles an hour. Instead, cars that looked like huge wagons ran on wooden rails and were dragged along by horses.

Stephenson's "Puffing Billy"

But George Stephenson had thought out a plan for a machine that would pull the cars along by steam. He called his engine "Puffing Billy." He kept at work always improving it. In 1825, after eleven years of hard work, he made an engine that could pull both passengers and freight.

The first long railroad

In 1828 the first long railroad in America was started. A great ceremony took place. It was a very solemn occasion. Charles Carroll, the only living signer of the Declaration of Independence, drove the first spade into the ground where the first rail was to

be laid. As he did so he said, "I consider this among the most important acts of my life, second only to that of signing the Declaration of Independence." This railroad was the famous Baltimore & Ohio.

Inventors continued to improve the locomotive. In 1831 an American company built one which ran at the rate of fifteen miles an hour. At that time that was considered a very rapid rate.

By rail from Boston to Buffalo

Since then railroad building and transportation have improved wonderfully. By 1842 one could travel by rail from Boston to Buffalo. But it was not until ten years later that Chicago was connected by rail with the East.

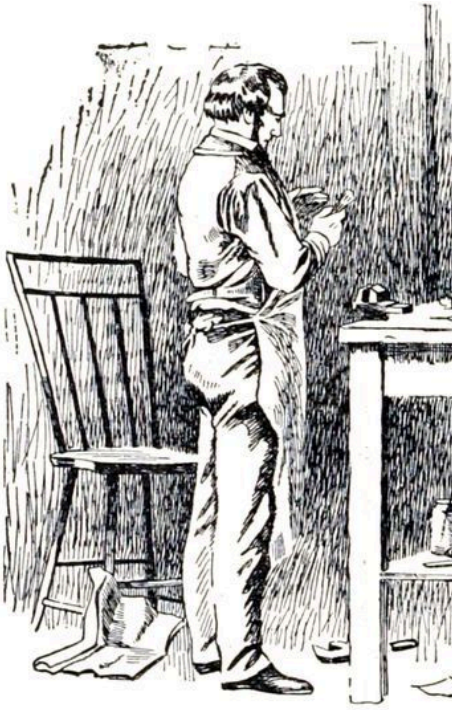
To the Pacific coast

Gradually the railroads spread a network over the country. In 1857 St. Louis and Chicago were connected. A railroad to the Pacific coast was much needed, and Congress voted an appropriation of $50,000,000 for the work. By 1869 the great work was completed. Other lines to the coast were started, and to-day many railroads cross the mountains, connecting the Pacific with the North, South, and Atlantic regions.

SAMUEL F. B. MORSE, INVENTOR OF THE TELEGRAPH

Morse, 1791

133. The Coming of the Telegraph. Samuel Morse was born in Massachusetts (1791). His father was a Presbyterian minister. Young Morse went to the common schools and to Yale College.



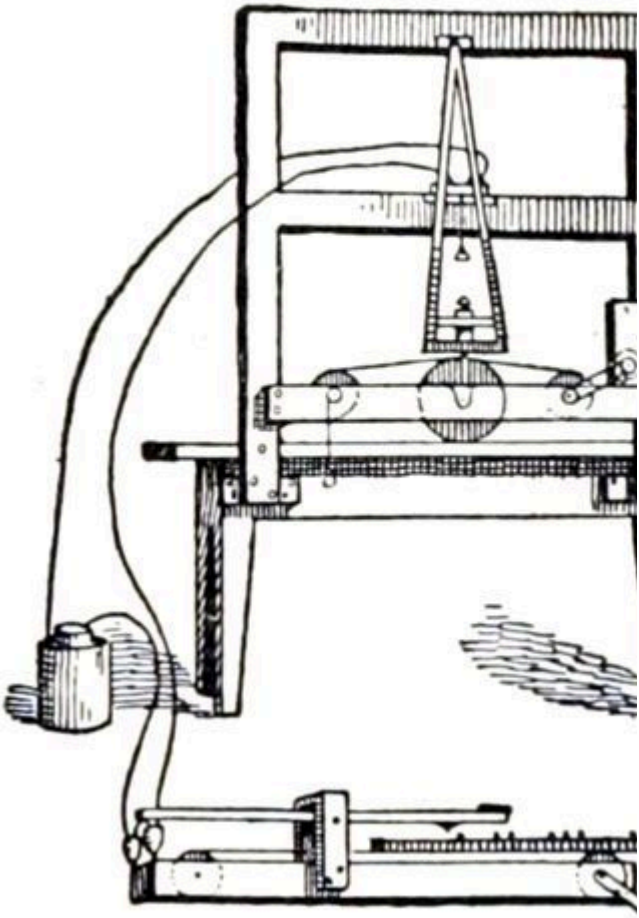
MORSE WORKING ON HIS M

Paints portraits

In college he used his spare time in painting, and after graduation he went to England and studied under the best artists. He came home and for a time painted portraits for a living.

The idea came to him of sending news by electricity

After having spent some years abroad, in work and study, Morse was again returning home from France when the idea of sending news by electricity first came to him.



THE FIRST TELEGRAPH INSTRUMENT

A machine and an alphabet

"Why can't it be?" said Morse to a friend, who answered, "There is great need of sending news by electricity." He began, then and there, to plan a machine and to invent an alphabet. This was all done on shipboard. When he reached land he went to work with a will at his new-found problem.

The hungry inventor

For a long time the work went on very slowly, for inventors must eat and sleep and pay their way in the world. While Morse was struggling over his machine and trying to make himself master of the strange force called electricity, he was very often hungry and at times even on the point of starvation.

Alfred Vail

Now came a bright spot in his career. A young man named Alfred Vail, an excellent mechanic, saw Morse's telegraph instruments, and immediately believed they would be successful. Young Vail borrowed money and became Morse's assistant in the great work. For what he did he deserves credit next to Morse himself.

Getting ready for Congress

Behind locked doors

A patent must now be had and the telegraph must be

so improved that they could show it to a committee of Congress. It was arranged that Vail and a mechanic by the name of Baxter should do the work behind locked doors. For, if some one should happen to see the instruments, and obtain a patent first, then Morse and Vail would be ruined.

The dot and dash alphabet

In the locked shop the two men worked steadily day after day. Vail made many improvements. Among these was the new "dot and dash" alphabet. At last, one day in January, 1838, everything was in complete working order. Baxter, hatless and coatless, ran for Mr. Vail's father to come at once and see the telegraph work.

MORSE SHOWING HIS CO

The final test

Patented in Morse's name

At one end of the wire stood young Vail, and at the other stood Morse. This wire was stretched around the room so that it was three miles in length. The elder Vail wrote: "A patient waiter is no loser." He said to his son: "If you can send this message, and Mr. Morse can read it at the other end, I shall be convinced." It was done, and there was great rejoicing. The invention was hurried to Washington,

and young Vail took out a patent in the name of Morse.

MORSE LISTENING TO CONGRESS MAI

Congressmen watch the instruments

Morse obtained permission to set up his telegraphic instruments in rooms in the capitol. These rooms were filled with congressmen watching the strange business. Members in one room would carry on witty

conversations with persons in the other room. This was great fun for those looking on. But it was slow work talking with members of Congress and winning their help.

SAMUEL F. B. MORSE

From a photograph taken by Abraham Bogardus, N

Congress makes fun of the idea

134. The Government Aids. Finally Morse asked for thirty thousand dollars to build a line from Washington to Baltimore. The bill met opposition, one member moving that a part of the money be used in building a railroad to the moon, another that it be used in making experiments in mesmerism.

Morse ruined if bill does not pass

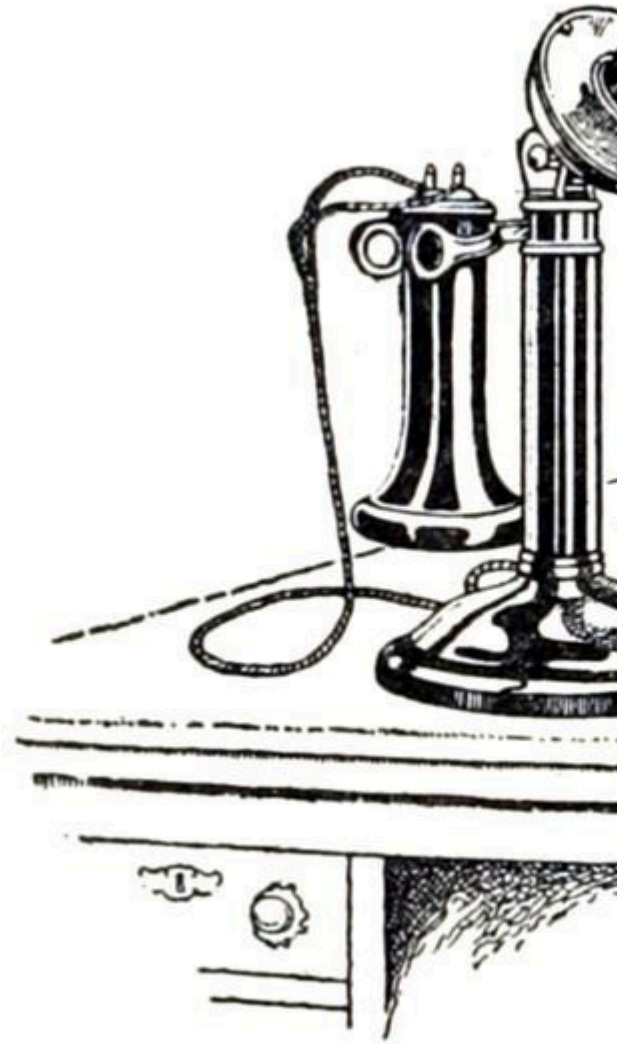
Morse stood leaning against the railing which separated the outsiders from the members. He was greatly excited, and turning to a friend, said: "I have spent seven years and all that I have in making this instrument perfect. If it succeeds, I am a made man; if it fails, I am ruined. I have a large family, and not money enough to pay my board bill when I leave the city."

Telegraph line to Baltimore built

The first message

It was ten o'clock, March 3, 1843, the last night of that Congress. Morse gave up and went to his hotel. In the morning a friend met and congratulated him

on the action of Congress in granting thirty thousand dollars for his telegraph line—the last thing Congress did that night. Morse was surprised. The telegraph line to Baltimore was built and the first dispatch was ready to send. Morse called the young woman who had been the first to congratulate him, to send this first message: "What hath God wrought."



THE TELEPHONE

Honors heaped on the inventor

The success of Morse was slow at first, but he lived to see the day when his instrument was used in Europe. He visited Europe again, was given gold medals, and received other rewards and honors from many of the rulers of the different European countries.

Morse dies, 1872

He died in 1872 at the good old age of eighty-one. Congress and state legislatures paid tribute to his memory.

The telephone

135. A Wider Use for Electricity. Samuel Morse was hardly in his grave before a wonderful invention was made which called electricity into far wider use in carrying news. This new invention was the telephone, and two men, Bell and Gray, applied for patents on it at almost the same time.

The instruments are wonderful conductors of sound, carrying, as they do, the actual words and tones of the voice.

Marconi beats them all

But Marconi has gone beyond them all in his invention. He sends the electric wave forth without the aid of a wire, thus giving rise to wireless telegraphy.

CYRUS WEST FIELD, WHO LAID THE ATLANTIC CABLE BETWEEN AMERICA AND EUROPE

Cyrus W. Field, 1819

In business for himself

136. The Atlantic Cable. Cyrus W. Field was born in Massachusetts in 1819. His grandfather was a Revolutionary soldier. Cyrus went to school in his native town of Stockbridge, and at fifteen was given a place in a New York store at fifty dollars a year. Before he was twenty-one he went into business for himself. At the end of a dozen years he was the head of a prosperous firm. In 1853 he retired from active business.

Why not span the Atlantic?

Field became interested in a man who was joining Newfoundland with the mainland by means of a telegraph line. "Why not make a telegraph line to span the Atlantic?" thought Field. He went to work, and put his schemes before Peter Cooper and other generous men. They believed in them.

Englishmen also approve the plan

Field next went abroad and laid his plan before a number of Englishmen. He pleaded so eloquently that they, too, were convinced. He returned to America to lay the matter before Congress and ask that body to vote him a sum of money.

President Pierce signs the bill

Congress was very slow about it, and the bill did not pass until the last days of that session. President Pierce signed it the last day of his term as president.

PRESIDENT PIERCE SIGNIN

Half a million dollars gone

Field returned to England and watched over the making of his "cable." In August, 1857, everything was ready. The cable lay coiled on shipboard, ready to be let out in the Atlantic. The great ship started, and everything went well till three hundred thirty-five miles of the cable had been let out, when it

broke in two. It was the same as losing half a million dollars.

A second trial

Breaks again

Field went back to England and began promptly to prepare for a second trial. He then came to America and made arrangements to use the *Niagara*, a large vessel. The British ship, *Agamemnon*, was also taken to help in this second trial. The ships started in mid-ocean, one going one way and one going the other way. This time only one hundred eleven miles were laid, when the cable again parted.

A council of war

Field hastened to London to meet the men who had backed him in his undertaking with their money. It was a council of war after a terrible defeat! But Mr. Field did not believe in surrender, even to the sea.

Success

On the seventeenth of July, 1858, the ships again set sail for mid-ocean. They "spliced" the cable, and the *Niagara* with Mr. Field on board sailed away for Newfoundland. The British ship went the other way. This time they were successful. Both countries were excited. Queen Victoria flashed a message under the sea to President Buchanan.

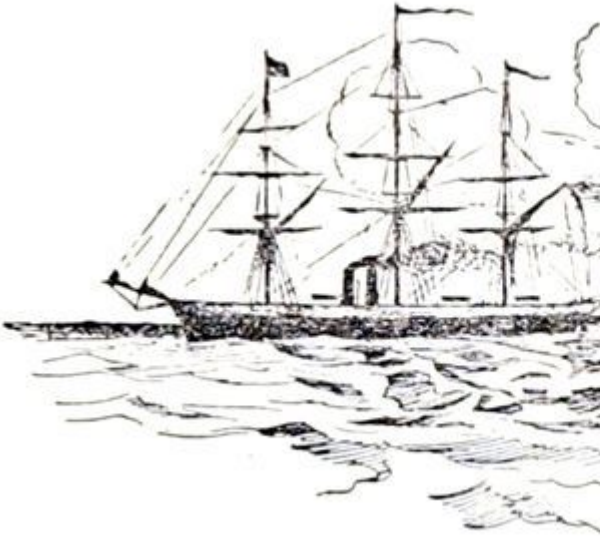
CYRUS W. FIELD

From a photograph by Elliott and Fry,

A great day in

New York

Great was the rejoicing in New York, the home of Mr. Field. A religious service, expressive of the deep interest of the people in the success of his work, was held in Trinity Church, at which two hundred clergymen in gowns appeared; national salutes were fired, a great procession was formed, an address was made by the mayor of the city and, at a very late hour, a grand banquet was held. While the banquet was going on, the cable gave its last throb, and parted.



LAYING THE FIRST ATL

The cable parts the third time

The very day that a whole city rose up to do honor to the Atlantic telegraph and its author, it gave its last

flash and then went to sleep forever in its ocean grave.

After a wait of five years

After five years of slow and toilsome work, caused by the fact that the Civil War was raging in the United States, Cyrus W. Field was again ready. When the vessel, bearing the cable, was within six hundred miles of land, the cable broke again.

The money subscribed

137. The Final Success. An Anglo-American Telegraph Company was now formed. Mr. Field subscribed $50,000, Daniel Gooch $100,000, and another person promised to bear a part of the expense. On a Friday they set out and on another Friday they reached America with the cable safely laid. Mr. Field sent this message to England:

"Hearts Content"

"Hearts Content, July 27, 1866. We arrived here at nine o'clock this morning. All well. Thank God, the cable is laid, and is in perfect working order."

Effect on the civilized world

Great

honor for Mr. Field

The success of this undertaking, after so many years of failure, produced a great effect throughout the civilized world. Mr. Field was the center of all rejoicing. Congress voted him a gold medal. England did honor to his name. The Paris Exposition of 1867 gave him the highest medal it had to bestow. From Italy he received a decoration. States and chambers of commerce in all parts of the nation passed resolutions in praise of his great work.

Finally he took a trip around the world and received honors from many nations. Mr. Field lived at Tarrytown, New York. He died in New York City in 1892, at the age of seventy-three.

CYRUS H. McCORMICK, INVENTOR OF THE REAPER

138. Making Bread More Plentiful for Millions. It was only natural that Cyrus H. McCormick should be interested in inventions. His father, Robert McCormick, had fitted up many labor-saving devices for use on his farm. He tried to make a reaper, but it was a failure.

One hundred years ago the common method of harvesting in this country was by "cradling" the grain. For this, a scythe with prongs on its handle was used. The prongs caught the grain and laid it in rows, ready to tie.

CYRUS HALL McCORM

Cyrus Hall McCormick was born at Walnut Grove, West Virginia, in 1809. The boy was always interested in inventing. When fifteen, he invented a better grain cradle. At twenty-one he made a hillside plow that surpassed his father's. His great invention, the reaper, was made the following year. His friends all laughed at his machine, but he went on perfecting it. All his life Cyrus McCormick had to meet ridicule or bitter competition. But he came of Scotch-Irish fighting stock. He had the determination which battles its way to success.

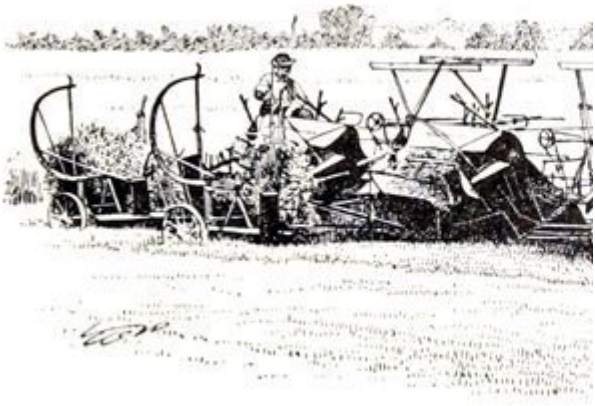
THE FIRST M^c^CORMI

After a model of the or

In 1834 the reaper was patented. It was shown at the World's Fair in London in 1851. It won a prize as the most valuable thing in the whole fair.

Cyrus H. McCormick started to manufacture his machine at Chicago in 1847. The demand for reapers grew rapidly. When the Civil War called out one man in three from the North, there were enough reapers in use to equal the labor of one million slaves. The

North not only fed itself but sent great quantities of grain to England. Cyrus McCormick's great invention did much to help the North abolish slavery.



HARVESTING WITH MODE

139. Reapers for the West. The invention of the reaper made it possible for the West to be quickly settled. Before, farmers raised only the few acres they could be sure of harvesting. Grain is lost, if not cut a few days after it is ripe. The wide prairies of the West could not be harvested by the old methods. Now on these great plains huge reapers drawn by engines sometimes cut forty-eight feet of grain in a single swathe.

Because of the labor it saves, McCormick's invention has made the cost of bread low for millions of people. With hand-reaping half the people of the country would be busy producing nothing but bread. In the past most nations were never free from the danger of starvation. Now the world produces enough for all.

A noted French society, when it elected McCormick a member, said that he had "done more for the cause

of agriculture than any other living man."

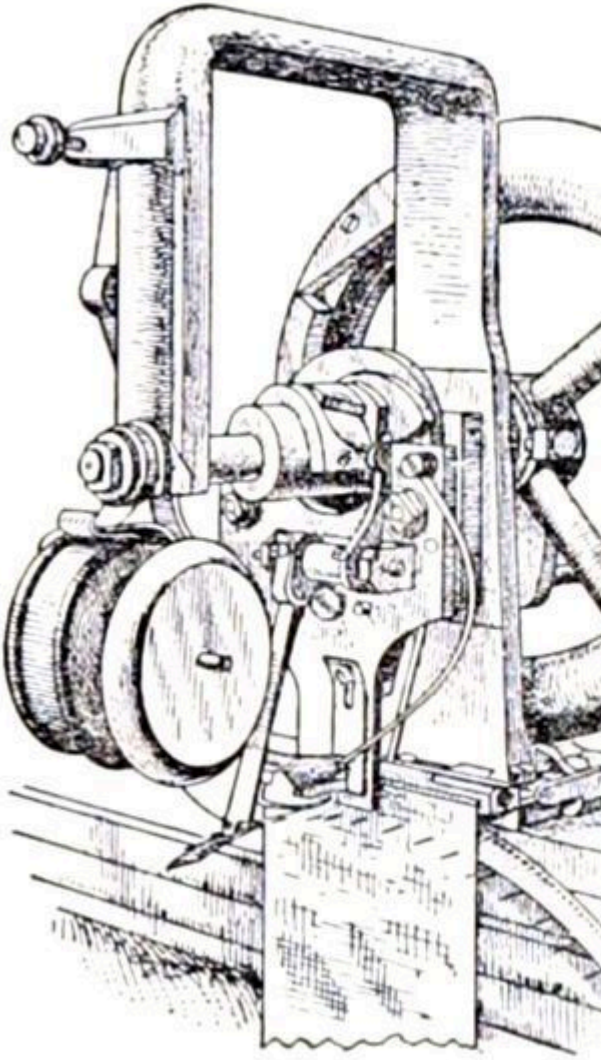
ELIAS HOWE, INVENTOR OF THE SEWING MACHINE

ELIAS HOWE

140. A Time-Saving Invention. Elias Howe was a poor boy who won great riches through his invention, but spent most of his years in a long, dreary struggle with poverty.

Elias was born in Massachusetts in 1819. His father was a poor man. He worked in his father's mill and then in the cotton mills of New England until he came to have a thorough knowledge of machinery. When he was twenty-four he began his great invention, the sewing machine.

Sewing machines using a chain stitch had already been invented in England and France, but a chain stitch ravels easily. Howe invented a lock stitch machine. Like earlier machines, it had a needle with an eye in its point to bring a loop of thread through the cloth. In chain stitching the needle at the next stitch passes through this loop. Howe instead passed a shuttle carrying a second thread through the loop. This made a firm lock stitch.



HOWE'S FIRST SEWING MACH

Howe tried to get tailors to buy his machine. He proved that it would sew seven times as fast as the best needleworkers. But they were afraid it would take work away from their men, and would have

nothing to do with it.

After patenting his machine, Howe took it to England, but there he remained as poor and unknown as before.

Returning to New York he heard that unscrupulous men had stolen or "pirated" his ideas, and that the sale of sewing machines was now a thriving business. But Howe was determined to uphold his rights. In 1859, after a battle of many years in the law courts, he secured the full and complete title to his invention.

141. A Turn in Fortune. The man who had faced poverty and rebuffs all his days now came into great wealth. His income each year would be equal to-day to at least a million dollars.

Sewing machines have now become almost a necessity in all American homes. It is hard to realize the amount of close, slow, exacting work from which Howe's machine has released women everywhere. The work of the most skillful needlewomen is not to be compared in speed and evenness with machine stitching. Garments now can be produced in vastly greater quantities than by hand work, and machine stitching is much more durable.

When the Civil War came, Howe's sewing machine made tents, shoes, and uniforms for the great Union army which would not have had them in time otherwise. Howe himself enlisted as a private and served while his health lasted. He died in 1867 when only forty-eight years old.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Fulton's invention greatly increased commerce before the coming of railroads. *2.* Congress granted Morse money to build a telegraph line, after many delays. *3.* Bell and Gray invented the telephone. *4.* Marconi invented wireless telegraphy. *5.* Cyrus Field after many failures laid a permanent cable across the Atlantic in 1866. *6.* McCormick's reaper hastened the settlement of the West. *7.* Howe became rich through the invention of the sewing machine.

Study Questions. *1.* Tell of early attempts to build steamboats. *2.* Give the story of the *Clermont*. *3.* Give an account of the steps by which Morse won success. *4.* How many attempts did Field make before a permanent cable was laid? *5.* What was the great importance of McCormick's reaper? *6.* Describe Howe's first sewing machine.

Suggested Readings. ROBERT FULTON: Glascock, *Stories of Columbia*, 186-188; Wright, *Children's Stories of American Progress*, 104-120; Thurston, *Robert Fulton*.

SAMUEL F. B. MORSE: Trowbridge, *Samuel Finley Breeze Morse*; Mowry, *American Inventions and Inventors*, 270-277; Holland, *Historic Inventions*, 168-188.

BELL AND GRAY: Holland, *Historic Inventions*, 215-232.

CYRUS WEST FIELD: Judson, *Cyrus W. Field*; Doubleday, *Stories of Inventors*, 3-16; Mowry, *American Inventions and Inventors*, 278-285.

CYRUS H. MCCORMICK: Brooks, *The Story of*

Corn, 218-220; Forman, *Stories of Useful Inventions*, 91-96; Sanford, *The Story of Agriculture in the United States*, 144-149.

ELIAS HOWE: Hubert, *Inventors*, 99-110.

THE MEN WHO WON TEXAS, THE OREGON COUNTRY, AND CALIFORNIA

SAM HOUSTON, HERO OF SAN JACINTO

Houston among the Cherokees

142. Sam Houston. Young Houston was born of Scotch-Irish parents, in Virginia (1793). His father had fought under General Morgan in the Revolution. Sam Houston did not have much schooling, and when but thirteen his family moved to east Tennessee. Made angry by his older brother, he left home and went to live with the Cherokee Indians. He liked the wild life of the Indians and took part with the Indian boys in their pastimes of hunting, fishing, and playing at games.

THE BATTLE OF HORSESHO

Here Houston, under Jackson in the victory over the

Returns home

Wounded in battle

He was now eighteen. He returned home and went to school a term at Marysville Academy. In the war of 1812 General Jackson called the men of Tennessee to arms. Young Houston responded to the call, and fought against the Indians in the great "Battle of Horseshoe Bend." After doing heroic deeds, he was dangerously wounded. Houston was a long time in getting well.

SAM HOUSTON

From a photograph by Matthew B. Brady in the collectio Department, Washington, D.C.

Elected to

Congress

At twenty-five he began to study law in Nashville and in six months—just a third of the time said to be necessary—he was ready to practice. Houston's rise in the law and in the favor of the people was rapid. He went from one position to another until the people elected him to Congress.

Governor of Tennessee

Forsakes his home

He was in Congress four years. He won many friends by his gracious behavior. The people of Tennessee made him their governor. But suddenly, without warning, Houston resigned as governor, and forsook his home and friends. He sailed down the Mississippi River to the Arkansas, and up this river several hundred miles to the land of his early friends, the Cherokees, whom the United States government had sent to that far-away country.

Returns to the Cherokees

The old chief's welcome

Here Houston found the old chief—now the head of his tribe—who had adopted him as a son years before on the banks of the Tennessee. The chief

threw his arms around him in great affection and said: "My son, eleven winters have passed since we met. My heart has wondered often where you were; and I heard you were a great chief among your people.... I have heard that a dark cloud had fallen on the white path you were walking, and when it fell ... you turned your thoughts to my wigwam. I am glad of it,—it was done by the Great Spirit.... My wigwam is yours, my home is yours, my people are yours,—rest with us."

Visits Washington

When Andrew Jackson became President of the United States Houston went, in his Indian dress, on a visit to Washington. He was warmly received by his old friend from Tennessee.

Visits Tennessee

Once more he turned his face toward the wilderness. He stopped in Tennessee and was warmly greeted by old friends. He did not stay long in Tennessee.

Hastens to Texas

Neither did he stay long with the Cherokees, but hastened to Texas, where the people were already murmuring against the treatment they were receiving from Mexico.

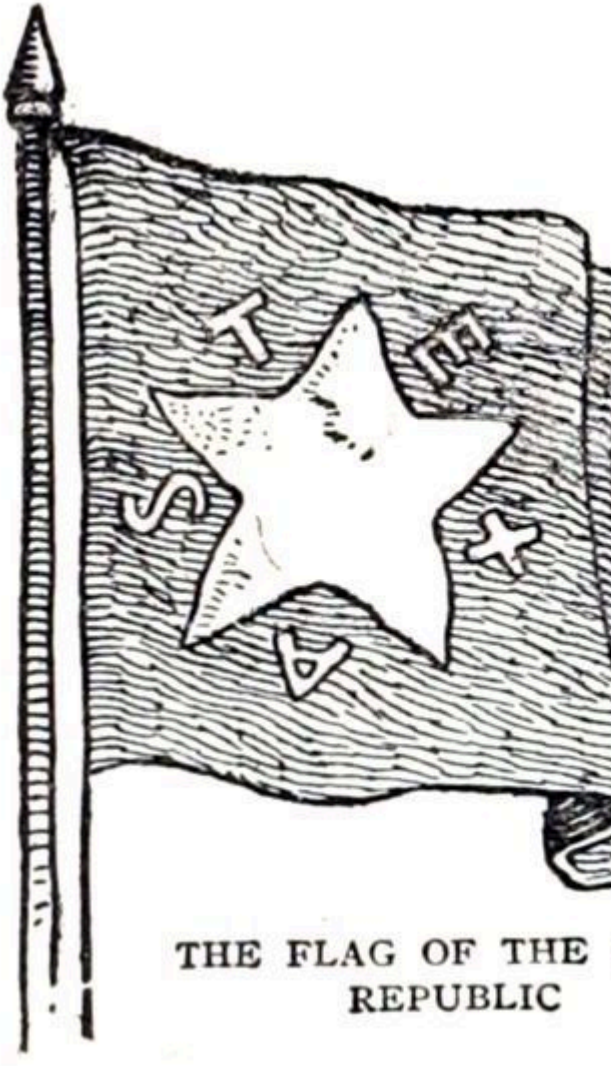
Texas declares independence

The people of Texas finally issued a declaration of independence. Thereupon the Mexicans resolved to send a large army into Texas and force the revolutionists into submission to the government.

THE ALAMO, SAN A

Of its defense by Travis, Crockett, and their few men it was
the Alamo had

A most important event of this war was the capture, by a large Mexican force, of an old mission building used as a fortress, called the Alamo. It was defended by one hundred forty men, among them the famous "Davy" Crockett, Colonel Travis, and Colonel Bowie —the inventor of the bowie knife. Only six Texans were alive after the capture of the fortress. These heroic men died, fighting the Mexicans to the last.



THE FLAG OF THE TEXAS REPUBI

"Remember the Alamo!"

"Remember the Alamo!" became the war cry of every Texan. The Mexicans were approaching, five thousand strong, under General Santa Ana. General Houston commanded the Texans, about seven hundred in all.

Massacre of Goliad

Suddenly the news came that General Fannin and his men, five hundred in number, had been massacred by the Mexicans at Goliad. The cause of Texan independence looked dark indeed.

HOUSTON AT SAN

Where his battle cry, "Remember the Alamo!" w

Houston's retreat

Houston began a retreat of two hundred fifty miles to the eastward. Santa Ana followed closely after him, but scattered his men, just as Houston wanted him to

do, until he had with him only eighteen hundred men. They were now on the banks of the San Jacinto.

Battle of San Jacinto

Houston waited till the Mexicans were a bit careless, then seven hundred Texans charged the breastworks of the Mexicans. After the first fire they clubbed their guns and went at it, pioneer fashion, with the cry, "Remember the Alamo!" The right and the left wings of the Mexicans gave way first, and then the center.

SCENE OF HOUSTON'S CAMPAIGN

Retreat of the Mexicans

They retreated, expecting to cross a deep, narrow bayou or stream on a log bridge, but Houston had had the bridge destroyed. The slaughter was terrific. The stream was choked with Mexicans and their horses.

Santa Ana captured and sent to visit Washington

Santa Ana was captured and was turned over to the Texan government. Many thought he ought to die because of the massacres at the Alamo and Goliad, but Houston, generous toward the beaten man, sent him on to visit Washington.

Houston elected president of Texas

Houston had been badly wounded, and sailed to New Orleans for medical care. He returned to be elected first president of the "Lone Star Republic," as Texas was called. He was reëlected for a second term and served his country well.

Annexation of Texas

Houston wanted Texas made a part of the United States. This was afterwards done, and war followed with Mexico.

In 1845 Texas sent Houston to the United States Senate, where he served his state for fourteen years. He was devoted to our national Union. He died in

1863.

DAVID CROCKETT, GREAT HUNTER AND HERO OF THE ALAMO

Crockett found his schooling in the woods

143. A Brave Backwoodsman. At the close of the Revolution, Tennessee was still largely a wilderness. Here David Crockett was born in 1786. In those days schools on the frontier were few and poor, and young "Davy" found most of his schooling in the backwoods. He learned to know the woods and streams and the animals that lived in them. As a boy he spent most of his time hunting and trapping. As a young man he was one of the most famous rifle shots in the United States.

When the Creek War broke out, he enlisted under Andrew Jackson to march against the Indians. The young rifleman fought so well under "Old Hickory" that Tennessee made him a colonel.

Elected to Congress

He had become a famous hunter and fighter. He thought he would try politics next. Instead of making political speeches, he went about from place to place telling stories. The people liked both him and his stories so well that they elected him to the

legislature. A few years later they sent him to Congress.

Returns to the wilderness

Joins the fight at the Alamo

By and by Crockett grew tired of civilization. He wanted to get back to the wilderness. His old home was too well settled to suit him. So he wandered to Texas. Here he heard that the Mexicans were surrounding the Americans at San Antonio. "Davy" Crockett loved a good fight too well to stay away. He hastened to join the small band of brave men who were defending the Alamo. All could have escaped had they chosen to do so, but with iron courage these hundred and forty stayed and defied Santa Ana's thousands.

MAP OF THE WEST AFTER THE

Showing the territory added to the United St

For several days the Mexicans were held at a distance. They dared not bring their cannon close to

the building, for the concealed sharpshooters picked off the men who tried to man the guns. Old Crockett himself laid low five men in charge of one cannon.

David Crockett fights to the last

The fall of the Alamo was however merely a question of time. Little by little the walls were battered down, and finally the Mexicans were ready to storm. On they came, a great charging mass. The American riflemen shot them down by scores, but when one Mexican fell another took his place. One by one the fearless defenders fell. The last man to go down was Davy Crockett.

It is said that he stood with his back to the wall, fighting to the last, and that the Mexicans, afraid to meet him hand to hand, shot him down from a distance.

JOHN C. FREMONT, THE PATHFINDER OF THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS

His father a French refugee

144. A Great Explorer. Fremont's father was a Frenchman who was driven to America by the terrible French Revolution. John Charles Fremont was born at Savannah (1813) while his parents were on a journey through the South. His father died soon after, and his mother went to live in Charleston, South Carolina.

Goes to South America

After a time at a good school, Fremont entered the junior class in Charleston College (1828). After leaving college he spent two and a half years on a voyage to South America.

Becomes a civil engineer

On his return he joined a company of engineers sent by the governor to explore the mountains between South Carolina and Tennessee, in order to find a suitable place for a railroad. This work was through a region rough, wild, and full of beauty. It gave

young Fremont a taste for exploration which never left him.

Fremont's longing for a wild life was gratified when he was made assistant to a famous Frenchman who was exploring the wild region between the upper Missouri River and Canada.

THE PATHWAYS OF THE EARLY E

Marries Senator Benton's daughter

After this work Fremont returned to Washington and later married Jessie Benton, the daughter of the senator from Missouri. Thomas H. Benton was a great friend of President Jackson.

JOHN C. FREMONT

After a photograph from li

Fremont was now related to a powerful man who was deeply interested in the growth of the "Great

West." Benton's repeated speeches on the "West" and on the "Oregon Country" called attention to the importance of the Pacific slope.

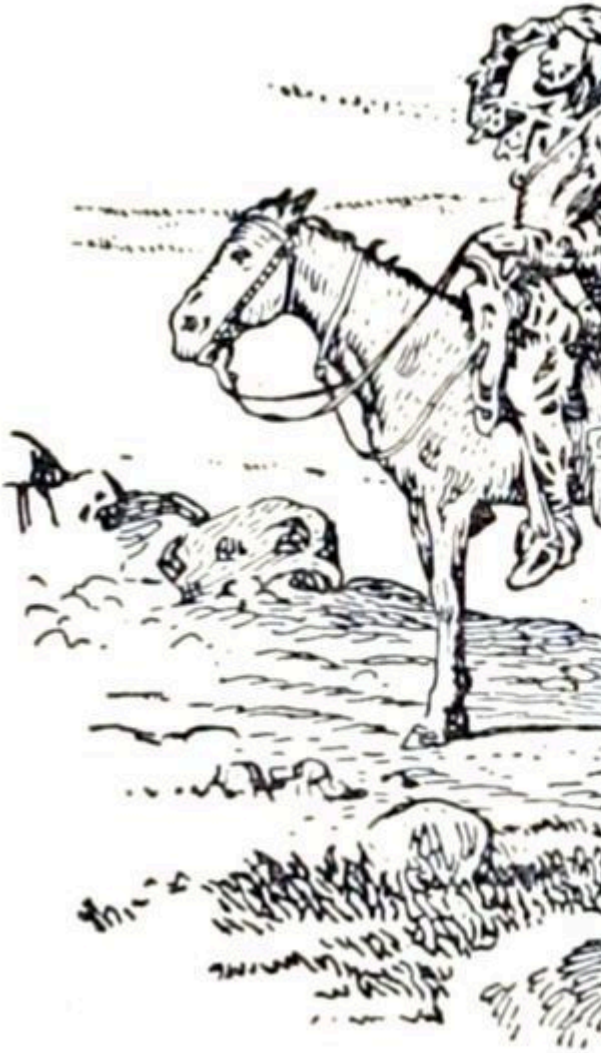
Receives permission to explore South Pass

In 1842 Fremont, now a lieutenant of engineers, received permission from the government to explore the South Pass of the Rocky Mountains. With a party made up largely of French Canadians, and assisted by that famous guide, Kit Carson, he passed up the Kansas River, crossed to the Platte, went up this river, and thus reached the South Pass.

Unfurls the Stars and Stripes on Fremonts Peak

145. On the Watershed. Standing on the watershed of a continent, he saw the beginnings of rivers that flow into the Atlantic, and of others that stretched away through unknown regions to the Pacific. He took four men and climbed what has since been called Fremonts Peak, one of the highest of the Rockies, about 13,800 feet above the sea. At the top Fremont unfurled the Stars and Stripes in all its glory!

146. A Pathway to the Pacific. Fremont reported his discovery at Washington and immediately applied for orders to make an expedition to discover a more southerly route to California and Oregon.



GAZING OUT AT THE BEGINNI

Beholds Great Salt Lake

He left the little town of Kansas City with his guide, Kit Carson, in May, 1843. In September, after traveling seventeen hundred miles, the little party beheld the shores of Great Salt Lake. What feelings must have stirred the breasts of men shut in for months by mountains, at seeing what appeared to be an ocean, here in the midst of a continent! Little did they dream of that hardy band of immigrants, so soon to follow, who would make the shores of this sea blossom like a garden. Fremont wrote: "As we looked over that vast expanse of water and strained our eyes along the silent shores, over which hung so much doubt and uncertainty, I could hardly repress the almost irresistible desire to continue our exploration."

FREMONT'S MEN BUILDING A

Reaches Fort Vancouver

After making preparations, the party crossed over to a branch of the Columbia River. Down this stream they traveled until Fort Vancouver was reached on November 4. Here Fremont was the guest of the governor of the British Hudson Bay Company.

FREMONT'S EXPEDITION REACHING SUT

Travel in deep snow

Crossing the Sierra Nevada

November 10, on the way home, the little party started to make the circuit of the Great Basin, a vast depression beyond the east wall of the Sierra Nevada. But very soon they found deep snow on the mountains. Turning to the west at about the latitude of San Francisco, Fremont determined to cross the Sierra Nevada into the valley of the Sacramento. The river was not many miles distant.

But what miles! Up and down, up and down that snowy mountain range, which the Indians told him no man could cross in winter, with snow lying upon it as deep as the dark forest trees were high, and places where, if a man slipped off, he would fall half a mile without stopping!

In the Valley of the Sacramento

They attempted to cross without a guide, in the dead of winter. In forty days the men and the surviving horses—a woeful procession crawling along one by one, skeleton men leading skeleton horses—arrived at Sutter's Fort (Sacramento) in the beautiful valley of the Sacramento. Here genial warmth, trees in foliage, grassy ground, and flowers made a fairy contrast to the famine and freezing they had met on the mountains they had climbed.

After enjoying the hospitality of Colonel Sutter, Fremont again crossed the mountains farther to the south, where the beautiful San Joaquin River makes

a gap or pass.

Sees the Mohave Desert

When he reached the top of the pass Fremont beheld the plains of the Mohave Desert. An Indian said to him: "There is neither water nor grass—nothing; every animal that goes upon them dies."

End of second expedition

Pushing forward with great energy, he reached Utah Lake, thus having nearly made the circuit of the Great Basin.

Fremont hastened to Washington with the story of his discoveries. General Scott now recommended that he be made captain.

Third expedition

Fremont's third expedition, with Carson as a helper, began in the spring of 1845, and aimed to explore the Great Basin and the coast of California and Oregon.

THE UNFURLING OF THE AMERIC

The Stars and Stripes were raised for the first tim

War breaks out

147. In the Mexican War. Little did Fremont—or any of his men—think what fortune had in store for them. On his way to the Oregon Country Fremont

received news that the Mexicans were planning to kill all the Americans in the Sacramento Valley. War had already broken out between the United States and Mexico, but he did not know it. He returned, reaching the valley in May, 1846. The settlers rushed to join him, and in one month northern California was declared independent.

Conquest of California

Fremont then marched to Monterey and joined Commander Sloat, who had raised the American flag there, July 7, 1846. This practically finished the conquest of all California in sixty days.

Fourth expedition

Elected to United States Senate

148. Becomes a Private Citizen. Soon after this event Fremont returned to Washington, gave up his place in the regular army, and went to live in California. His journey to California made up his fourth expedition. But the people would not let him long remain in private. The state elected him to the United States Senate. Fremont was not long in Congress, but was of great service in giving advice concerning the long-talked-of railroad to the Pacific.

Early in 1848 gold was discovered in the sand near the American River at Sutter's Mill, the site now occupied by Coloma. As the news spread, great

excitement arose, and everybody wanted to dig gold. This was the "gold fever" of 1848 and 1849. The rush to the coast was tremendous. It made the building of a railroad urgent. Fremont made his fifth expedition to survey three routes to the Pacific. After great hardships he returned to Washington to report what he had found.

Nominated for president

He now took up his residence in New York City and became a member of the party opposed to the extension of slavery. The new party, the Republican, nominated him as its first candidate for president (1856). He was defeated after a most exciting time, yet he carried all the northern states but four.

A major-general in the Civil War

During the Civil War he was made a major-general, but after a year or two he resigned. He was talked of for president in 1864, but did not make the race.

After the war was over he was interested in a great continental railroad. From 1878 to 1881 he was governor of Arizona. Congress voted him a pension just before he died in 1890.

SPANISH MISSIONS IN THE SOUTHWEST

Spanish missionaries baptize Indians

149. How the Franciscans Ruled the Southwest. Centuries before Fremont or Kit Carson or any other American had seen the wonders of our western country, Spaniards made their homes there. Before the *Mayflower* landed at Plymouth, Spanish missionaries had built many churches in the Southwest and had baptized thousands of Indians into the Christian faith.

Franciscan friars friends of the oppressed

The story of the Spaniards in New Mexico, Arizona, and California is not of victories won by the sword, but by the cross. The men who ruled this country were not soldiers, but pious Franciscan friars.

Many years ago there lived in Italy a godly man, St. Francis, who looked upon all poor and oppressed people as his children and devoted his life to their care. His followers, who are called Franciscan friars, have gone into all parts of the world to be missionaries to the poor and the heathen.

Serra builds a mission at San Diego

Greatest of the Franciscans who worked in the Southwest was Junipero Serra. One warm day in 1769 he came riding into San Diego on mule-back, a tall, thin figure, wrapped in a long gown. There were no missionaries at this time in California. He had come from Mexico with a small party to convert the Indians. At San Diego he saw "valleys studded with trees, wild vines covered with grapes, and native roses as fair and sweet as those of Castile."

Here was just the place to build a mission. First he set up a great wooden cross and said mass. There was no organ music, so the soldiers fired their arms instead. The simple Indians stood by in wonder and awe. Junipero Serra was a man of energy and action, and in a short time he had his first mission built. From San Diego he went northward and planted mission after mission as far north as San Francisco. When he died the Franciscan missions controlled practically all of southern California.

Mission buildings surrounded by gardens

Wherever the friars built a mission they made sure the soil was good and that there was plenty of water near by. For in much of that country little rain falls and many crops grow only when watered by irrigation. Having found a suitable place, they would then build a church. This was always the largest building of the mission. Some of the churches were

very beautiful. Around the church clustered the houses of the friars and the huts of the Indians. Each mission was surrounded by beautiful gardens and orchards. A little farther away were the fields in which the grain was grown. All of these were watered by irrigation ditches that drew their water from some mountain stream. Beyond the cultivated land lay the ranches on which cattle and sheep grazed in great numbers.

Indians taught useful occupations

All the Indians in the neighborhood were made to live at the mission, and here they were taught the Christian religion. They were also taught many useful occupations. The men were shown how to farm, to make saddles, work at the forge and the carpenter bench, and other useful trades. The women were instructed in spinning and weaving.

In the morning the angelus called every one to mass. After breakfast the day's work began and each Indian was sent to his task. Some cultivated the fields, some took care of the stock, some worked in the shops. Each one had to do his share of the work, and was punished if he disobeyed. He had to work, pray, and live as the friars told him.

Missions fall to ruin

When Mexico freed itself of Spanish rule, California became a part of Mexico. The new government put an end to the missions. The friars were forced to leave, and the Indians drifted back into their old wild

life.

To-day nothing remains of the work of the friars except the old mission buildings. Most of them are in ruins, but they still tell of the quiet by-gone days when the gentle Franciscans ruled in California.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Houston had little schooling and went to live with the Cherokee Indians. *2.* Wounded at Horseshoe Bend; studied law in Nashville; was sent to Congress for four years; and was elected governor of Tennessee. *3.* Went to live with the Cherokees again, and then went to Texas. *4.* Houston won the battle of San Jacinto; was made president of the republic of Texas; and later elected to the United States Senate. *5.* David Crockett was born in Tennessee, had little schooling, and became an expert rifle shot. *6.* He fought the Indians under Andrew Jackson. *7.* Won an election to the legislature by telling stories; later elected to Congress. *8.* Crockett grew tired of civilization and returned to the wilderness. *9.* Fought against the Mexicans at the Alamo, where he was killed with all his companions. *10.* Fremont went to school in Charleston, but left for a voyage to South America. *11.* He worked for exploring parties; married, and thus became related to a great man interested in the Far West. *12.* Fremont explored the South Pass on his first expedition; on his second, saw Great Salt Lake, and crossed the mountains with great

suffering. *13.* Fremont crossed a third time, and aided in conquering California; was made a United States senator, and became first candidate of the Republican party for the presidency. *14.* Franciscan friars, long before the landing of the Pilgrims, entered what is now New Mexico, Arizona, and California. *15.* They taught the Indians the Christian religion and many useful occupations.

Study Questions. *1.* What was peculiar in Houston's early life? *2.* What had he done before he began to study law? *3.* What made people like him? *4.* Where was the battle of Horseshoe Bend fought? *5.* How did the Cherokee chief welcome him? *6.* Why did Houston go back to Tennessee? *7.* What drew him to Texas? *8.* What were the first bad defeats of the Texans? *9.* Tell the story of San Jacinto. *10.* What kind of a general, a president, and a senator did Houston make? *11.* Where did Crockett spend his boyhood, and what fame did he gain? *12.* How did he win his way to the legislature? *13.* What made Crockett go back to the wilderness? *14.* Describe the fight at the Alamo. *15.* Who was John Charles Fremont? *16.* What of his youthful days? *17.* What experience in early days after college prepared him for his great work? *18.* Who was Kit Carson? *19.* Describe Fremont's journey to the South Pass. *20.* Tell what was seen and what was done there. *21.* What expedition did he now plan? *22.* Picture the scene on the discovery of the Great Salt Lake. *23.* Picture his exploration of the Great Basin and crossing the

mountains. *24.* What was the contrast at Sutter's Fort? *25.* Describe the Digger Indians. *26.* At what was Fremont's third expedition aimed, and what did it really accomplish? *27.* Who was St. Francis? *28.* Describe Serra's arrival at San Diego. *29.* Why did he build a mission at San Diego? *30.* Describe life at a Spanish mission. *31.* What happened when Spanish rule was ended in California?

Suggested Readings. HOUSTON: Bruce, *Life of General Houston*.

DAVID CROCKETT: Crockett, *Life of Davy Crockett*; Lodge and Roosevelt, *Hero Tales from American History*, 171-181.

FREMONT: Bigelow, *Life of John Charles Fremont*, 1-216, 319-373, 379-466.

THE THREE GREATEST STATESMEN OF THE MIDDLE PERIOD

HENRY CLAY, THE FOUNDER OF THE WHIG PARTY AND THE GREAT PACIFICATOR

150. The Rise of Henry Clay. Henry Clay was born in Virginia in the year of Burgoyne's surrender (1777). His father was a Baptist preacher, with a fine voice and a graceful way of speaking. He died when Henry was four years old.

The "Mill boy of the Slashes"

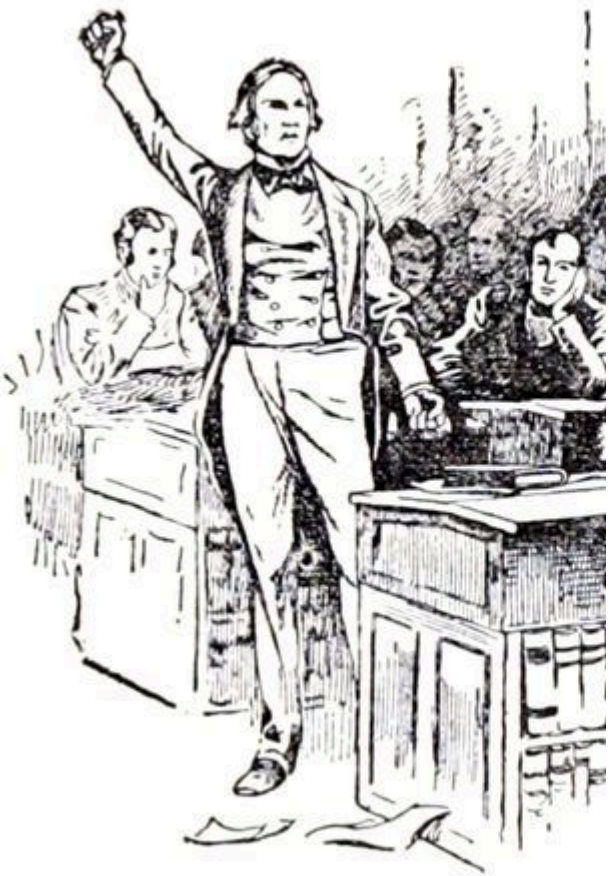
Little Henry lived near the "Slashes," the name given to a low, flat region, and went to school in a log cabin. When not at school he worked on the farm, helping to do his share in support of the family. He could be seen walking barefooted behind the plow, or riding the horse with a rope bridle to mill. From this he was called the "Mill boy of the Slashes."

Read books when other boys played

Henry was a raw-boned and awkward lad. The other boys laughed at him, but he read books when not at work, and soon could speak far better than the boys who made fun of him.

THE "MILL BOY OF TH

At fourteen he was a clerk in a store. But he seemed made for other things. He was put in the office of a famous lawyer who was clerk in one of Virginia's courts.



HENRY CLAY IN C

Urging war in 1811, with England or Fr

The Chancellor of Virginia, a great judge, liked him and took him to be his private secretary. For four years Clay wrote down the judge's law decisions. The great man often talked with Clay on important subjects and advised him about the kind of books to read.

Leader in

a debating club

After studying law for a year, Clay began to practice in Richmond. He had plenty of time, so he formed a debating club, in which he was easily the leader.

Finally he made up his mind to go to Lexington, Kentucky, and try his fortune in the West. There his rise in the law was rapid. His fame grew, and he became known as the lawyer who seldom lost a case.

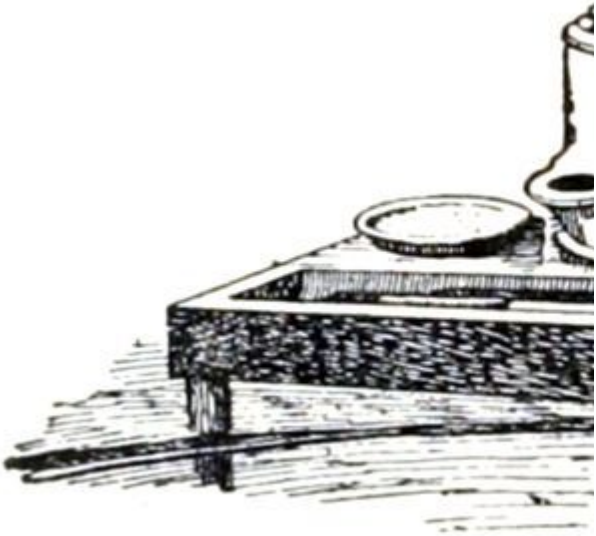
He married a well-to-do young lady and lived near Lexington on a beautiful estate called Ashland.

Favors gradual abolition of slavery

Henry Clay's first work in politics was to favor the gradual abolition of slavery in Kentucky. Although beaten, he was always proud of his stand on this question.

Too young to be a senator

When too young, according to the Constitution, to take his seat, he was made a senator of the United States. But nobody called the attention of the Senate to his age. After his term as senator was out he was elected to the legislature of Kentucky, and was immediately made Speaker.



INKSTAND USED BY H

Speaker of the House of Representatives

Born during the Revolution, Henry Clay, like most Americans of his time, grew up with hatred toward England in his heart. He was sent to Congress in 1811, and was elected Speaker of the House of Representatives. As Speaker, he did much to bring on a declaration of war with Great Britain, in 1812.

The War of 1812

Clay made speeches in Congress and over the country, stirring up the war spirit. "On to Canada!"

was his cry. But the capture of Canada was not so easy. Many generals failed, and only Harrison and Perry made much headway in defeating the British in Canada.

The Treaty of Ghent

When the time for peace came President Madison sent Henry Clay and other noted Americans to Ghent, in Belgium, to meet the British agents. After many months of talking and disputing, they finally agreed on a treaty. This treaty has since been called the "Treaty of Ghent." Great Britain and America were both glad that peace had come.

The conflict over Missouri

From 1819 to 1821 Congress was debating over the admission of Missouri as a slave state. The North opposed, and the South favored, the admission of Missouri. The excitement spread to the state legislatures and to the people. Many meetings were held. Resolutions strongly favoring, or strongly opposing, the admission of Missouri as a slave state, were drawn up and voted upon.

The Missouri Compromise

Wise men thought the Union was in danger and Henry Clay, by his eloquence, succeeded in getting Congress to pass the famous Missouri Compromise. This resolution provided that Missouri should be

admitted as a slave state, but that no other slave state north of the line of 36 degrees 30 minutes should ever be admitted. Both sides were pleased and the excitement died out.

We have seen how South Carolina threatened to refuse to pay the tariff in 1832, and how President Jackson hurried the army and the navy there to make her people pay it, as the people of the other states were obliged to do.

The Compromise Tariff Law

Henry Clay as a peacemaker again

Henry Clay came forward again and introduced the Compromise Tariff Law. It was called a compromise because it gave each side a part of what it wished. Calhoun and other Carolinians favored it, because by this law the tariff was reduced very greatly. It was carried through Congress. The law made unnecessary the warlike preparations of both the president and South Carolina, and again Henry Clay was hailed by the people as "pacificator" or peacemaker.

HENRY CLAY

From a daguerreotype owned by Garrett Brown, Jr.,

The founder of

the Whig party

151. Henry Clay the Founder of the Whig Party. But Henry Clay was not only a peacemaker. He was now a great statesman, and like Hamilton and Jefferson he led in forming a part of the people into a political party. It was called the Whig party.

In 1824, before there was a Whig party, Clay ran for president, but was beaten. Again in 1832, just as the new party was being formed, he ran a second time. Although he was beaten for the presidency by Andrew Jackson, he was the life and soul of his party. It was his eloquence, the music of his words, that made men Whigs.

On one occasion Clay spoke on the question of the abolition of slavery. Some one said that this might hurt his chances of being president. Clay replied: "I had rather be right than be president."

Unfortunate Henry Clay

Finally, in 1844, he was again the Whig candidate, but he was defeated for the third time. When the Whig party had a good chance of electing a president, they nominated somebody else. When they had a poor chance they nominated Henry Clay!

Dispute over the new territory

War with Mexico had come, and with it a great victory for the American army. The treaty of peace

with Mexico, in 1848, gave the United States all the territory then known as Alta (Upper) California and New Mexico. But the North and South disputed over this territory. The North said it must be free. The South said it must be open to slavery. The quarrel grew so bitter that many men thought the Union would be destroyed.

Retires to Ashland

Henry Clay was now an old man. He had left the Senate, and had gone home to his beloved Ashland for a few years of rest before the final summons.

A unanimous call

152. The Aged Peacemaker Returns to the Senate. Kentucky was greatly excited by the threats of disunion. Her legislature sent Clay back to the United States Senate by a unanimous call, Democrats as well as Whigs joining in the vote. It was a proud moment for the old man.

Now in the Senate, he offered the Compromise of 1850. This bill contained a number of points in favor of the slave states, and a number in favor of the free states.

Walks to the capitol on the arm of a friend

One day Clay made a great speech in favor of his Compromise. He had to walk to the capitol that day

on the arm of a friend. He was too weak to climb the steps alone.

HENRY CLAY BEING CO

In 1850 on his great plea before the S

His audience

When he arose to speak, he saw before him an

audience that had come from distant parts of the nation to hear his thrilling words once more. The people filled the Senate to overflowing. Outside they crowded the corridors. When Clay arose the audience broke into applause, a strange thing for the Senate to do. The people were not disappointed. For two days the ringing words flowed on. Under the excitement he was young again.

He pleaded with the North to give up some things for the love of the Union; he pleaded with the South for peace. He told them that all the territory the United States had purchased had been purchased for all of them. "War and the dissolution of the Union are identical."

A remarkable scene

On the second day some one suggested that he rest, and the Senate adjourn. But he refused; he might not be able to go on the next day. After he had finished his speech, a great crowd rushed forward to congratulate him. No such scene ever had been witnessed before in the Senate.

The reunion of the Union

The debate went on. Now and then Clay took part in it. On one occasion he said: "I believe from the bottom of my soul that this measure is the reunion of the Union."

"This Union is

my country"

On another occasion he said: "The honorable Senator speaks of Virginia being my country. This Union is my country. But even if ... my own state ... should raise the standard of disunion ... I would go against her. I would go against Kentucky, much as I love her."

Congress finally passed the Compromise. Both political parties pledged themselves to obey it. Public meetings in all parts of the nation resolved to abide by it, and the country rested for a time from the slavery question.

Died in Washington in 1852

Henry Clay's work was done. His body was worn out, but his mind still clung to the Union. On June 29, 1852, Henry Clay died in Washington, the place of so many of his triumphs.

A great monument at Lexington, Kentucky, testifies the people's love for "Harry" Clay.

DANIEL WEBSTER, THE DEFENDER OF THE CONSTITUTION

Daniel Webster, 1782

Loves the woods and fields

A good reader

153. A College Boy and a Young Lawyer. Daniel Webster was born of good Puritan stock, in 1782, in New Hampshire. He was a very weakly child. No one dreamed that one day he would have an iron-like body. Daniel spent much of his time playing in the woods and fields. He loved the birds and beasts that he found there. He went to school, but the schoolmasters were not very learned, and Daniel could read better than most of them. The teamsters, stopping to water their horses, were glad to hear him read. He went to work in an old-fashioned sawmill, but he read books even there in odd moments of time.

Webster at Exeter Academy

One day in spring his father took him to Exeter Academy to prepare for college. The boys laughed at his rustic dress and manners. The timid little fellow was greatly hurt by their scorn.

He finally entered Dartmouth College at the age of fifteen. He was simple, natural, and full of affection.

The best student at Dartmouth

He loved public speaking

Webster was the best student at Dartmouth. He still kept the reading habit. The students liked him. They had a feeling that he would amount to something some day. At this time he was tall and thin, with high cheek bones. His eyes were deep set, and his voice was low and musical in its tones. He loved to speak, even then.

At the age of eighteen Webster gave the Fourth of July oration in his college town. The speech was full of the love of country and of the Union, then in its first days of trial.

HOUSE AT ELM

The birthplace of Daniel Webster. The site is now occupie

Teaches school and studies law

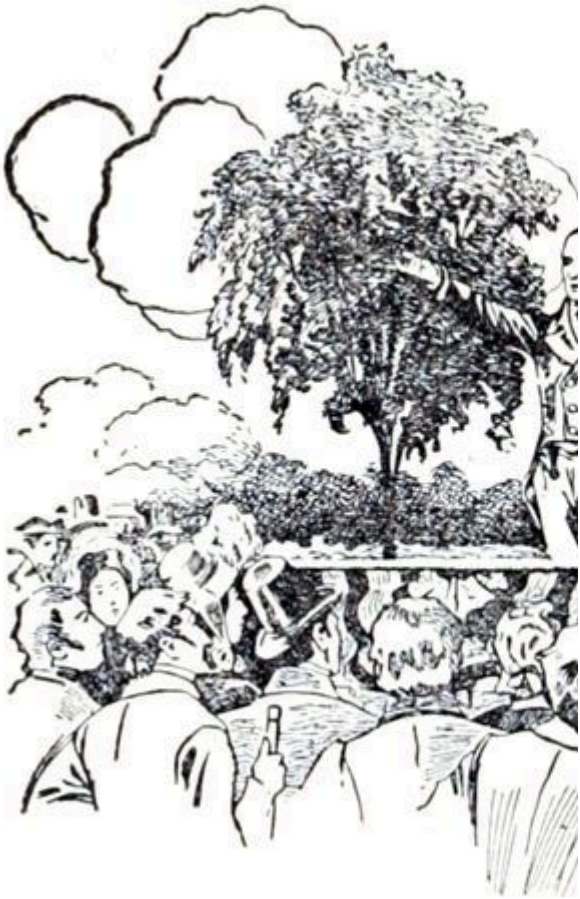
He never forgot his father's sacrifice in sending him to college. After he had finished at Dartmouth, Webster taught school in order that he might help his parents send his elder brother to college. He afterwards studied law. But he longed to finish his law studies in Boston. Finally good fortune put him in the office of Christopher Gore, a wise man, a great lawyer, and a statesman. In his office Daniel Webster studied until he was given the right to practice law.

Within a few years, he was earning enough to enable him to take a life partner, the beautiful and accomplished Grace Fletcher, the daughter of a minister. She made a delightful home for him and their children.

Elected to Congress

Favors a naval war

Webster was gaining name and fame as a lawyer, but the approach of the War of 1812 drew him into politics. He was elected to Congress, and took his seat in 1813. Henry Clay was Speaker of the House of Representatives. Webster's most important speech was in favor of a war carried on by the navy: "If the war must be continued, go to the ocean. There the united wishes and exertions of the nation will go with you. Even our party divisions cease at the water's edge."



SCENE OF THE FOURTH O

Daniel Webster asserting the dignity of patri

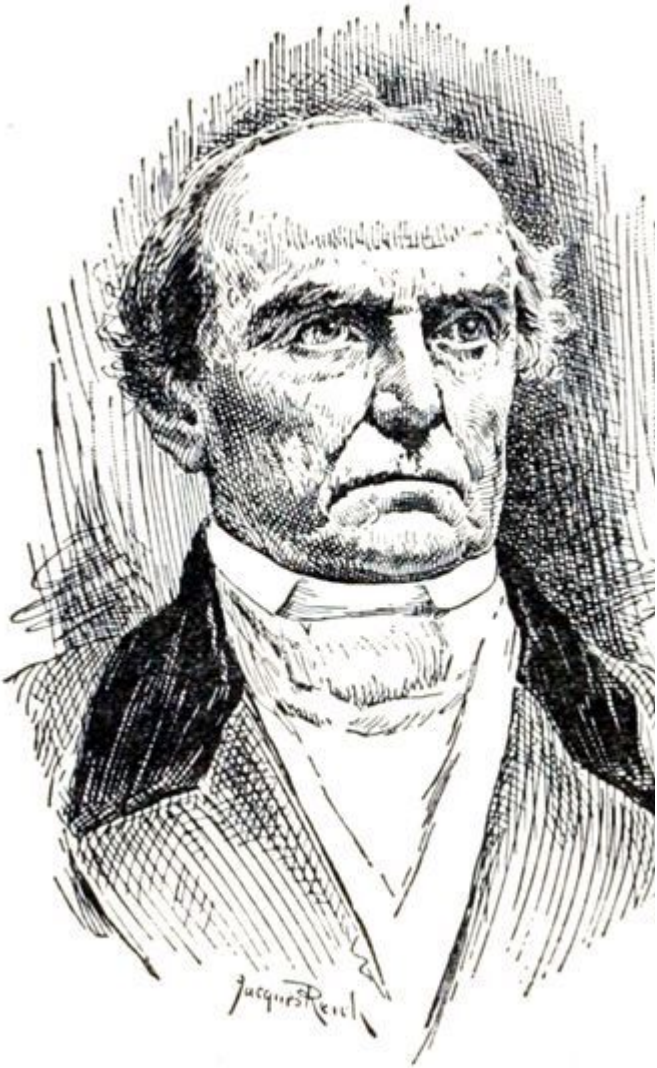
Webster's appearance

His battle with Hayne

After the war, Webster left Congress for a number of years. He was now a great man. When he entered a room, by his mere look and presence he drew all eyes toward him, and all conversation hushed. In size, he looked larger and broader than he really was. His forehead was broad and massive. It towered above his large, dark, deep-set eyes. His hair was black and glossy as a raven's wing. He looked thus in 1830 in the Senate, when he made his famous speech in reply to Senator Hayne of South Carolina.

SCENE IN THE UNITED S

Daniel Webster defending the Federal Constitutio



DANIEL WEBSTER

From a daguerreotype taken in 1850 by J. J. Hawes o

Denies the right of nullification

"Liberty and Union, one and inseparable"

154. The Greatest Statesman of his Time. Hayne had spoken against a protective tariff and in favor of nullification. Webster felt called upon to reply. He denied the right of a state to nullify a law of Congress, and said that nullification was another name for secession. He closed his great speech with these words: "When my eyes shall be turned to behold, for the last time, the sun in heaven, may I not see him shining on the broken and dishonored fragments of a once glorious Union ... but may I see our flag with not a stripe erased or polluted, nor a single star obscured ... but everywhere spread all over in characters of living light, blazing on its ample folds, as they float over the sea and over the land ... that sentiment, dear to every American heart —Liberty *and* Union, now and forever, one and inseparable!"

This speech made Daniel Webster immortal. It did more; it fired the heart of every lover of his country.

Opposes Clay's Compromise Tariff

We saw how South Carolina went on toward nullification, and how Clay's Compromise Tariff

settled the difficulty. Webster strongly opposed this compromise, and said that South Carolina should get out of the difficulty the best way she could.

Jackson praises Webster

President Jackson was delighted, and praised Webster in public and in private.

Harrison makes him Secretary of State

When Harrison captured the presidency, after the greatest campaign ever seen up to that time, he wanted the best men in the Whig party to advise him, so he made Daniel Webster Secretary of State.

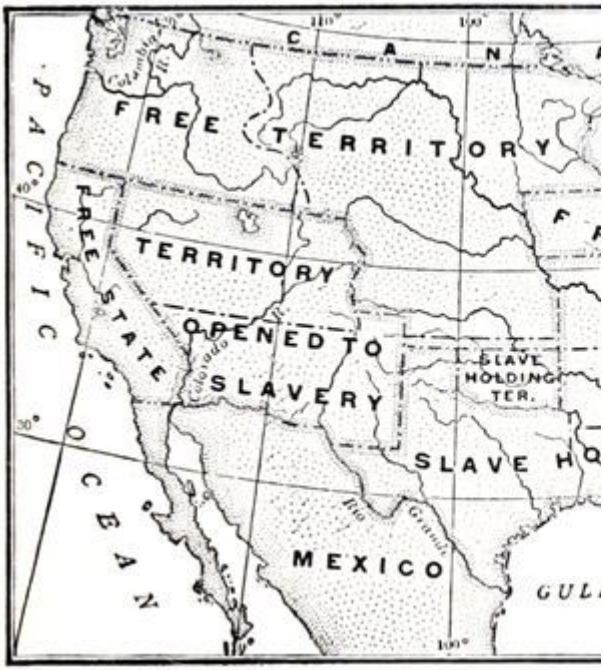
Webster back in the Senate

It was a sad day when President Harrison died, after being in office just one month. John Tyler, of Virginia, the vice-president, became the president. But he would not accept measures which Congress had passed. Daniel Webster left the cabinet after a time because he disliked the way Tyler was doing. He went back to the United States Senate, where he joined Clay, supporting the great Compromise of 1850.

His speech on the Compromise

On March 7, Webster made his speech on the Compromise, entitled "For the Union and the Constitution." It was an appeal to all persons to stand by the Constitution and the Union. In blaming both the North and the South, much to the surprise of everybody, he blamed the North more than the South.

Because he did this, many of his supporters in the North, especially those in New England, turned their backs upon him. Webster was an old man now. Ever since 1832 he had looked forward to being nominated for the presidency, but his party always took some other man. His last days were made bitter and unhappy by the thought that some old friends had forsaken him.



THE UNITED STATE

Boston welcomes Webster

Death at Marshfield, 1852

One bright spot for Webster lay in the fact that President Fillmore invited him to be Secretary of State again. After two years of service, he went back to Boston. He was received with joy by some of his friends and neighbors, and was hailed with shouts by the multitude. This must have made his heart leap with gratitude, for the praise of friends is pleasant. But men saw he was not like his former self. He went to his home at Marshfield, where he died, October 24, 1852, the greatest figure in American politics in his day.

JOHN C. CALHOUN, THE CHAMPION OF NULLIFICATION

John C. Calhoun, 1782

155. The Champion of the War of 1812. John C. Calhoun was born in the same year as Webster (1782) in South Carolina. His parents were Scotch-Irish. His father, a Revolutionary patriot, died soon after John was born. John spent his early years roaming in the fields and woods. He learned more there than from books, and he learned to think before the thoughts of other people filled his memory.

Entered Yale College as a junior

At eighteen he began to prepare for college, under the care of his brother-in-law, a Presbyterian minister. In two years he entered Yale College. When in college he studied hard, and was graduated with high honors.

A lawyer

Calhoun studied law diligently for three years, a year and a half of the time in his native state, and a year and a half in Connecticut. He began to practice law

in South Carolina, but did not have great success. Perhaps it was because the law was too dry for him, or perhaps because he was soon elected to the legislature of his state.

JOHN C. CALHOUN

From a photograph by Matthew B. Brady in the collectic Department, Washington, D.C.

In 1811 he was married, and was elected to Congress —two great events in his life. Henry Clay, as Speaker, immediately put Calhoun on an important committee. He quickly sounded a bugle call to war, declaring that it was the duty of "Congress to call forth the patriotism and resources of the country."

Works hard for the success of the army

During the War of 1812 he worked hard in Congress for the success of the American army. After the war he favored a tariff to keep English goods out of the country.

Secretary of War

President Monroe made him Secretary of War. He found the office in the utmost confusion, but, by hard and careful work, he left the war office a model for future secretaries.

Twice elected vice-president

Calhoun's "South Carolina Exposition"

156. Calhoun Favors Nullification. He was elected vice-president in 1824, and again in 1828. In the last-named year he wrote a paper called the "South Carolina Exposition." In this letter, and in others that he wrote, he told the people of South Carolina there would always be differences between the North and the South. He said the southern people, using slave labor, would raise more tobacco and cotton than they needed, and that the tariff was hurtful to the South. That the northern people, using free labor, would manufacture all kinds of things, and that the tariff would be helpful to them. This document took the ground that between the North and the South there always would be a conflict of interests. The South was devoted to agriculture, and the North to manufacturing. The South had slave and the North free labor.

South Carolina passes ordinance of nullification

Therefore, Calhoun concluded that to protect the South from the North a state has the right to nullify a law of Congress. A state has this right, because the state is above the nation. The states made the Constitution. He believed that nullification was a means of saving the country from secession.

South Carolina took the fatal step, and nullified the tariffs. This decision was to take effect February 1, 1833, provided the United States did not do something before that time to lower the tariff.

Jackson

warns South Carolina

President Jackson warned the citizens of South Carolina against the men who had led them to take this step. He hinted that the tariff would be collected by the use of force, if necessary.

She withdraws her ordinance

We have seen how Henry Clay rushed his Compromise Tariff through Congress. At the same time another bill was passed by Congress, which gave President Jackson the right to use the army and navy in forcing a collection of the tariff. South Carolina stopped her nullification, and the excitement passed away.

Speech on the purpose of the Abolitionists

157. Opposed to the Abolitionists. The people who wished to do away with slavery entirely were called Abolitionists. The Abolitionists stirred Calhoun deeply by petitions in favor of abolishing slavery in the District of Columbia. He declared that "the petitions are a foul slander on nearly one half of the states of the Union.... The object is to humble and debase us in our own estimation ... to blast our reputation. This is the (manner) in which they are (trying) abolition ... and now is the time for all

opposed to them to meet the attack.

"We love and cherish the Union. We remember with kindest feelings our common origin ... but origin (is) to us as nothing compared with this question.

The Union in danger

"The relation which now exists between the two races in the slave-holding states has existed for two centuries.... We will not, we cannot, permit it to be destroyed.... Should it cost every drop of blood and every cent of property, we must defend ourselves.... It is not we, but the Union, which is in danger."

THE HOME AND OFFICE OF CALHOUN, A

Goes beyond most slaveholders

Not many in the Senate agreed with Calhoun then. In 1837 Calhoun went much farther in the defense of slavery than any of the other slaveholders would go. He declared in a great speech in the Senate that "slavery is a good, a positive good."

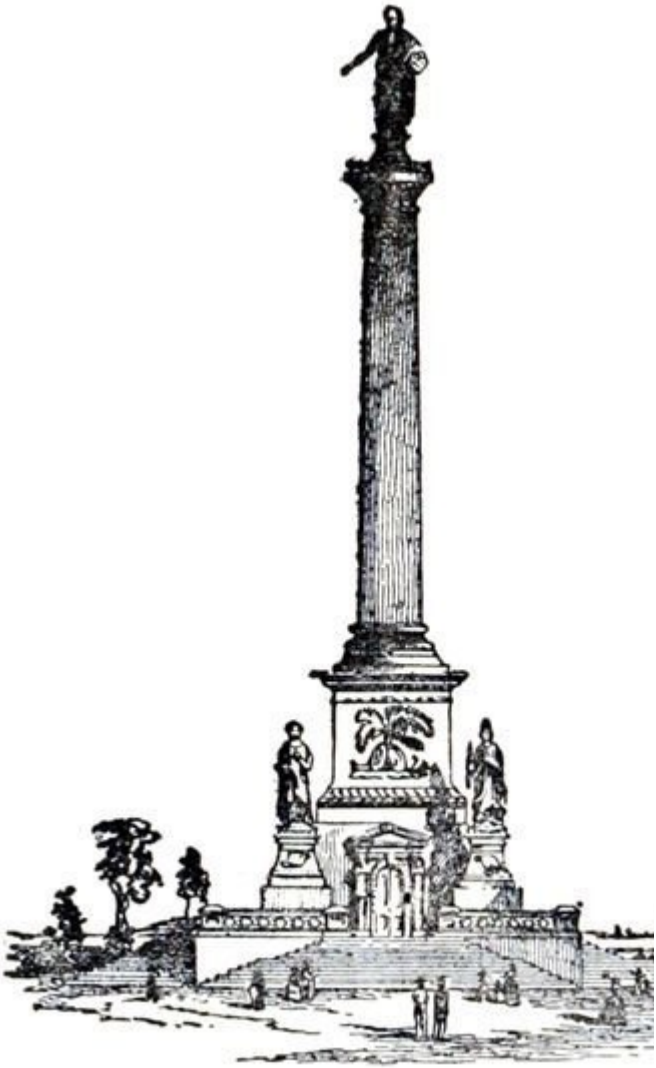
The Revolutionary fathers did not agree with Calhoun

This was not the belief of the majority of even the slaveholders in Congress or in the nation. Much less had it been the view of the men who had fought out the Revolution, and who had made our Constitution.

The majority of slaveholders still looked upon slavery, at best, as a necessary evil and one to be gotten rid of sometime and somehow. Calhoun's view that "slavery is a good, a positive good," was an entirely new view of slavery.

Calhoun aids the annexing of Texas

Calhoun was made Secretary of State under President Tyler, and succeeded in annexing Texas to the United States. For this reason Mexico made war with the United States.



MONUMENT TO CALHOUN AT CHARLESTON

From a photograph of the monument, which was designed

Dispute over

territory

The result of the war with Mexico was the gaining of territory in the West and in the Southwest. Over this territory arose the great dispute that sent the aged Henry Clay back to the Senate with the Compromise of 1850.

Calhoun opposed Compromise of 1850

Calhoun opposed that Compromise. He was too ill to speak, and a friend read his address to a hushed and listening Senate. He declared that the Union was in danger because the Abolitionists had stirred up strife. He wanted all agitation against slavery stopped. In the second place, he wanted an equal division of territory between the North and South. "If you of the North will not do this, then let our southern states separate, and depart in peace."

Farewell words to the Senate

"Having faithfully done my duty to the best of my ability, both to the Union and my section ... I shall have the consolation ... that I am free from all responsibility."

His last words

On March 31, 1850, he breathed his last words: "The South! The poor South! God knows what will become of her!"

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Clay's father was a Baptist preacher. Young Henry went to school in a log cabin, and rode his horse to mill with a rope bridle. *2.* He studied law, and went to Lexington, Kentucky, to practice. *3.* Clay won his way to the hearts of the people; was elected to the House of Representatives for a great many years. *4.* He favored the War of 1812; induced Congress to pass the Missouri Compromise and the Compromise Tariff of 1833. *5.* Clay ran three times for president. He was author of the great Compromise of 1850. *6.* Webster was a weakly child, played in the woods, and read books. *7.* He was graduated at Dartmouth, taught school, studied law, and was opposed to the War of 1812. *8.* Webster replied to Hayne, opposed the nullification of South Carolina, and was made Secretary of State by Harrison. *9.* Supported Clay's Compromise of 1850, and was made Secretary of State by Fillmore. *10.* John C. Calhoun was born in South Carolina, and studied law. *11.* He went to Congress, favored the War of 1812, and was afterwards made Secretary of War. *12.* Calhoun thought that a state had the right to nullify an act of Congress. *13.* He opposed Abolitionists and the Compromise of 1850.

Study Questions. *1.* Who was the "Mill boy of the Slashes"? *2.* Name some of our great men besides Clay who loved books. *3.* What could Clay do better than the other boys? *4.*

What help did he get from the Chancellor of Virginia? *5*. Why did Henry Clay form a debating club? *6*. Where was Ashland? *7*. What was Clay's first great work in Kentucky? *8*. What is a Speaker of the House of Representatives? *9*. What did Clay do in stirring up the war spirit? *10*. Why did Clay speak for the Missouri Compromise? *11*. What was the Compromise Tariff? *12*. Why call Clay a peacemaker? *13*. How many times did Henry Clay run for president? *14*. Why was Clay sent back to the United States Senate in 1850? *15*. Picture the scene when Clay made his last great speech.

16. Who was Webster? *17*. Why did he play in the woods? *18*. What proof that he loved books too? *19*. Why were Daniel Webster's feelings hurt at Exeter? *20*. Why did students like Webster? *21*. How did he reward his parents for sending him to college? *22*. What was Webster's view of the War of 1812? *23*. Picture Webster in 1830. *24*. Quote something from his speech in reply to Hayne. *25*. Who praised Webster for his speech against nullification? *26*. Do you think Harrison selected the best man for Secretary of State? *27*. Why did his friends in the North blame Webster for the Seventh of March speech? *28*. How were Webster's last days affected by public opinion?

29. Who was Calhoun and what did roaming in the woods and fields do for him? *30*. Where did he go to college and when did he reach Congress? *31*. What position did he take in the War of 1812? *32*. Why did he

favor the tariff and later favor the nullification of the tariff? *33*. What office did President Monroe give him? *34*. What effect had the "South Carolina Exposition"? *35*. What did South Carolina do? *36*. How was a clash averted? *37*. What did Calhoun say of the Abolitionists? *38*. What did he say of the Union? *39*. What did he say of slavery? *40*. What was Calhoun's position on the Compromise of 1850? *41*. What were his last words?

Suggested Readings. HENRY CLAY: Wright, *Children's Stories of American Progress*, 159-178; Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 145-155; Anderson, *United States Reader*, 281-285; Frost, *The Mill Boy of the Slashes*.

DANIEL WEBSTER: Baldwin, *Four Great Americans*, 125-186; Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 37-48; Hart, *How Our Grandfathers Lived*, 341-344; Bolton, *Famous American Statesmen*, 177-229.

JOHN C. CALHOUN: Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 140-144; Rogers, *The True Henry Clay*, 248-254.

ABRAHAM LINCOLN, THE LIBERATOR AND MARTYR

A POOR BOY BECOMES A GREAT MAN

THE BIRTHPLACE OF ABR

Abraham Lincoln, 1809

Lincoln's father makes the

furniture

Moves to Indiana at the age of seven

158. The Backwoodsman Who Became President. Abraham Lincoln was born in Kentucky, February 12, 1809. His parents were so poor that they hardly knew that they were poor. When he was seven years old his family crossed the Ohio River and settled in Indiana. There they found a place in the deep, dark forest, in the southern part of the state, and began to build a cabin for a home. Abe worked hard to help build it. It was not much of a house—only fourteen feet square. One side was left out, and here they built the fire. It was not very warm in winter and not very cool in summer. The hard ground was the floor.

The father was a sort of carpenter, and out of rough timbers he made a table and some three-legged stools. He also made the bedsteads, which consisted of poles driven into the wall.

In the loft of the cabin Abe made himself a bed of leaves. Every night he climbed into the loft by means of wooden pins driven into the wall. He was busy helping cut down trees and burning them to make room for a patch of corn and pumpkins.

THE GRAVE OF NANCY H

The lad and his sister roasted the ears of young corn over the fire. The ripe corn was ground into meal from which corn bread was made. This was baked in the ashes or on a board in front of a bed of red-hot coals.

As a hunter

The woods, great thick woods for miles on all sides of them, were broken only here and there by a "clearing." In these forests Abe went hunting with a gun on his shoulder. He often came back laden with

squirrels, wild turkeys, and other game.

His mother's death

They were living in the cabin when Abe's mother sickened and died. He was broken-hearted. She had taught him what little he knew. Her last words to him were: "Try to live as I have taught you and to love your Heavenly Father."

Lincoln's tribute to his mother

Many years after, when he became famous, he said: "All that I am or hope to be, I owe to my angel mother." She was put in a coffin roughly cut out of logs by the same tools that had made their furniture, and laid to rest in a corner of the clearing. Long years afterward a good man put a stone over the grave, with this inscription: "Nancy Hanks Lincoln, the mother of President Lincoln, died October 5, A.D. 1818, aged 35 years."

Lincoln gets a new mother

After a year his father went back to Kentucky to look about for a wife. He found a widow, named Sarah Bush Johnston, and married her. He had known her before he met Nancy Hanks. She was thrifty and industrious, and her bedding and other household goods filled a four-horse wagon.

Before winter came she made her husband put a

good floor, and a door, and windows in the cabin. She took charge of Abe and his sister, and made them "look a little more human." She put good clothes on the children and put them to sleep in comfortable beds.

Abe's education

159. Lincoln Educates Himself. Schools were scarce in that new country, and Abe never had more than a year at school. His stepmother encouraged him in every way to study at home.

LINCOLN READING BY THE LIGHT OF T

After a painting by Eastman Jol

A taste for reading

He copies down what pleases him

When Abe got a taste for reading it was hard to satisfy it. He read the Bible, *Æsop's Fables*, *Robinson Crusoe*, *Pilgrim's Progress*, a history of the United States, and Weem's *Life of Washington*. He borrowed the *Revised Statutes of Indiana*. These were all solid books, good for a young boy to read. When a sentence pleased him, he read and reread it. If he did not own the book, he took many notes, filling his copy book with choice sentences.

Lincoln reads while he eats

John Hanks, a boy brought up with Lincoln, says: "When Abe and I returned to the house from work, he would go to the cupboard, snatch a piece of corn bread, sit down, take a book, cock his legs up as high as his head, and read." He read, wrote, and ciphered incessantly.

FASHIONS IN THE DAYS OF LINCOLN'S BOYHOOD

A great story-teller when a boy

Young Lincoln was soon able to do a "man's labor," although only a boy. He was strong and powerful, and a great favorite. In that family of brothers, sisters, and cousins, his good-natured jokes and stories kept peace. Abe was the great story-teller of the family.

At nineteen years of age

At the age of nineteen Lincoln reached his full height of six feet four inches. By that time he had read every book he could find, and could "spell down" the whole country. "He could sink an ax deeper into the wood than any man I ever saw," said a neighbor.

Moves to Illinois

When Abe was twenty-one, the entire family started for Illinois. Along forest roads, and across muddy prairies, for two weeks they traveled till they came to the Sangamon River.

They built a cabin on the north fork of the river. With the help of John Hanks, young Lincoln plowed fifteen acres, planted it in corn, and split the rails from the tall walnut trees on the ground and fenced it.

A trip to New Orleans

160. Tries to be a Business Man. The next year he was hired to take a flatboat to New Orleans. The boat

was loaded with hogs, pork, and corn. The wages of the trip were fifty cents a day, and twenty dollars besides for each man.

A slave auction

Clerk in a store

They "poled" and rowed their slow way down the Ohio and the Mississippi. At New Orleans, Lincoln first saw a slave auction. He saw men and women sold. As he turned away he said to a friend: "If ever I get a chance to hit that thing, I'll hit it hard." He did not then dream of the mighty blow he would one day strike. After his return from New Orleans, he became a clerk in a store.

One day a woman gave Lincoln six cents too much. That very evening he walked several miles to find her and give back the money. At another time Lincoln found that he had not given a woman as much tea as she paid for. He went in search of her and gave her the rest of the tea.

The Black Hawk War

About this time Lincoln joined a company of soldiers going to the Black Hawk War. An Indian chief named Black Hawk was on the "war path." All the frontier was up in arms against him and his band of braves.

LINCOLN SPLITTING RAILS TO F

Lincoln elected captain

Lincoln was well pleased when nearly all the men in

his company walked over and stood by his side. This was their way of electing a captain. No election in later days gave him greater pleasure.

Fame as a story-teller spreads

Little fighting was done by Lincoln's company, but sitting around the camp fires in the evening, he became famous as a story-teller, and he made many friends.

161. Makes a Success in Politics. On his return from the war, though he was only twenty-three years old, he became a candidate for the state legislature, but was defeated.

Elected to the legislature

A little later he was again a candidate. This time he won. After the election, he said to a friend: "Did you vote for me?" "I did," replied the man. "Then you must lend me two hundred dollars." Lincoln needed a suit of clothes and money to pay the expenses for traveling in a stagecoach to the capital!

LINCOLN AS A CIRCUIT RIDER

In 1837 the legislature passed a set of resolutions in favor of slavery and condemning the Abolitionists. Lincoln could not stand this. He and one other man signed a protest declaring that slavery was founded

on "injustice and bad policy."

Lincoln was reëlected to the legislature seven times. He generally got more votes than other men on the ticket because the people liked his quaint sayings and his unpretending manner.

Lincoln licensed to practice law

In the meantime, after three or four years of study, he was given a license to practice law. He made it a rule never to take a case which he believed to be wrong. He was a successful lawyer, but the road to fame by way of the law was a slow one. It gave Lincoln a chance to engage in politics, as we have already seen.

His taste for public speaking

He liked "stump speaking." He liked to go about the country from one speaking place to another, or to travel from one county to another to meet the different sessions of the courts. He spoke for what he believed to be the truth. He was always in earnest, and made his hearers feel that he was sincere.

Speaks for Harrison and for Henry Clay

In 1840 he was one of Harrison's orators, and in 1844 he threw all his power and influence in favor of

Henry Clay, his favorite among the great men, for the presidency.

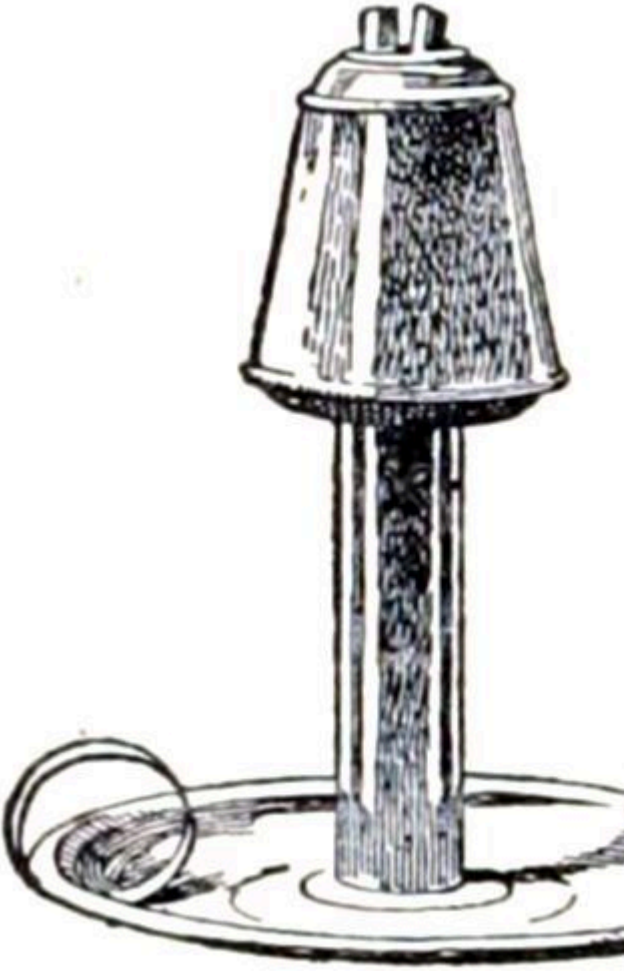
Lincoln in Congress

In 1846 the Whigs of Springfield, where he was then living, put Lincoln forward for Congress, and succeeded in getting him elected. He was not in favor of the war with Mexico, then going on, and was not selected to run again. Lincoln returned to Springfield, and began the practice of law with greater success than ever before.

When Senator Douglas of Illinois, in 1854, carried the Kansas-Nebraska Bill through Congress, anti-slavery men all over the nation raised a storm of indignation. This bill repealed the Missouri Compromise, which had stood for thirty years, and threw the territories open to slavery.

The champion against Douglas

Douglas spoke at the state fair, held in Springfield. He tried to explain why he favored the Kansas-Nebraska Bill. Lincoln made a speech four hours in length, ably answering the argument of Douglas. This speech made him the champion for the anti-slavery people in the state against Douglas.



WHALE-OIL LAMP

From Lincoln's log cabin

Public opinion points toward Lincoln

The same question was fought out between them at Peoria, a little later. Again Lincoln met Douglas' arguments. People began to talk of Lincoln as the next United States senator. More and more, popular opinion in the state began to turn toward Lincoln.

Nominated for United States senator

Accordingly, in 1858, at Springfield, the Republicans in convention named Lincoln for United States senator. He made a speech to the Republicans in which he said that this country cannot remain half slave and half free—that it must become all slave or all free.

This called every man to face a new question. No greater question could be raised. Some friends of Lincoln pleaded with him not to say that the country could not remain half slave and half free. "I had rather be defeated with that expression in my speech than to be victorious without it," said Lincoln.

Lincoln challenges Douglas

162. The Lincoln-Douglas Debates. Douglas attacked this speech, and Lincoln challenged him to hold several joint debates before the people of Illinois. Seven debates were arranged, in which Douglas insisted upon opening and closing four.

People come from far away to hear the

debates

The people of Illinois were mainly farmers in 1858. They traveled long distances to hear these giants debate the question of slavery. Some of them were several days coming and going—in wagons, on horseback, or on foot. The newspapers in the larger cities sent men to listen to these debates, and take down the words used by Lincoln and Douglas. The editors knew the people were anxiously waiting to read what these men had to say about slavery.

The fatal answer

"Can the people of a ... Territory, in any lawful way, against the wish of any citizen ... exclude slavery?" Lincoln asked. "Yes," said Douglas. That was a fatal answer. For, by this answer, Douglas lost the support of the Democrats of the South, although he held the Democrats of Illinois. He could still be senator, but he could never be president.

The debates went on. "I do not perceive," said Lincoln, "that because the white man is to have the superior position, the negro should be denied everything ... there is no reason in the world why the negro is not entitled to all the natural rights [named] in the Declaration of Independence ... I agree with Judge Douglas, he [the negro] is not my equal in many respects—certainly not in color, perhaps not in moral or intellectual endowments. But, in the right to eat the bread, without the leave of anybody else, which his own hand earns, he is my equal, and the equal of Judge Douglas, and the equal of every living man."

Lincoln made famous by the debates

These debates made Lincoln widely known. He accepted invitations to speak in Ohio, New York, and New England.

Lincoln the rail-splitter

In May, 1860, the Republicans of Illinois met in state convention. Lincoln was there. The people picked him up, lifted him over their heads, and placed him on the platform. The cheering was loud. Just at this moment John Hanks came into the hall carrying two fence rails, with the Stars and Stripes mounted between them, bearing in large words the following: "Taken from a lot made by Abraham Lincoln and John Hanks in the Sangamon Bottom in the year 1830." The people stood up and cheered, and threw their hats high and shouted for Lincoln, the "rail-splitter." He made them a speech. The convention then and there named him as the choice of the Republican party of Illinois for the next President of the United States.

The candidate of the Republican party

163. Lincoln President. A few weeks later Abraham Lincoln was nominated in Chicago by the National Convention of the Republican party for the

presidency. Just as the passage of Douglas' Kansas-Nebraska Bill killed the old Whig party, so the debates between Lincoln and Douglas split the Democratic party into a northern and a southern wing.

LINCOLN SPEAKING IN THE S

Lincoln elected

Douglas was nominated by the northern wing, and Breckenridge by the southern wing. This division in the Democratic party resulted in the election of

Lincoln to the presidency, in November, 1860.

During the fall and winter, seven southern states left the Union, and set up a government called the "Confederate States of America." They had their government all in running order before Lincoln left Springfield.

Bound for Washington

At Independence Hall

In February, 1861, Lincoln said good-by to the people of Springfield, and started for Washington to take his seat as president. The people were bound to see him and hear his voice and shake his hand. Along the route there were cheers, bonfires, and military parades with miles of marching men. At Philadelphia he raised a flag over Independence Hall. He made a touching speech in regard to the men of the Revolution who had sat in that hall, and pledged himself to abide by the principles of the Declaration of Independence.

The inauguration

On March 4, with soldiers guarding the capitol, Lincoln read his inaugural address and took the oath of office which all presidents before him had taken. This speech was listened to with the greatest interest. It was now plain to everybody that Lincoln meant to fight, if fighting were necessary to save the Union.

In April Confederates fired on Fort Sumter in

Charleston Harbor, South Carolina. After awful hardships, Colonel Anderson and his men surrendered the fort to the Confederate troops.

The call for men

Lincoln immediately sent forth the call for seventy-five thousand men. He made it a call to save the Union which Jackson, Webster, and Clay had done so much to save. War had come—civil war, the most dreadful kind of war. Four more states left the Union, and joined the Confederate States. But the slave states of Maryland, Kentucky, and Missouri remained with the Union.

Blockade of Confederate States

While the Union troops were gathering and drilling in Washington, Lincoln declared a blockade of the ports of the Confederate States. He saw that if he closed the ports of the South he could prevent the shipment of cotton to Europe and so keep the Confederacy from getting supplies in exchange for the cotton. This was a heavy blow to the Confederates.

THE CONFEDERAT

The "Merrimac" and the "Monitor"

The South depended on the *Merrimac* to break the blockade. The *Merrimac* was a wooden war vessel which had been covered with a double coat of iron. It had a great iron beak with which it could ram wooden vessels. The *Merrimac* moved to attack the Union fleet, which was stationed in Hampton Roads. The shot fired from the Union vessels and from the shore batteries had no more effect on the iron coat of the *Merrimac* than hail on a tin roof. She sank one

wooden war vessel and set another on fire. What was to hinder her from going up the Potomac and bombarding Washington?

ABRAHAM LINCOLN

From a rare photograph taken by Alexander Hesler in Chi
loaned by the Chicago Photogravure Company, who ow

Battle between ironclads

But Lincoln placed his hope in the *Monitor*. This strange craft, "looking like a cheese box on a raft," reached Hampton Roads that night and took position to defend the Union fleet from the *Merrimac*. The next morning the two ironclads met in battle. It was a battle of giants. "Why do you stop firing?" asked an officer of one of the gunners on the *Merrimac*. "I can do her as much damage by snapping my thumb at her every two minutes and a half," was the reply.

It was a drawn battle. Washington was safe. The South could not break the blockade. This battle between the *Merrimac* and the *Monitor* changed the navies of the world. Wooden war vessels now gave place to iron vessels.

McClellan in the East

Meantime great battles were also being fought on land. In the East the Union army under General McClellan had been hurled back in an attack on Richmond. The Confederates under General Lee, in an attempt to invade the North, had been forced to retreat.

Grant in the West

In the West events of equal importance were taking place. The Union troops under General Grant

defeated the Confederates in many battles in Kentucky and Tennessee. Then with the aid of the Union fleet under Captain David Farragut, Grant captured the Confederate strongholds along the Mississippi River, and so cut the Confederacy in two.

Slavery question to the front

Lincoln had declared the war was to be fought to save the Union and not to get rid of slavery. But as the war went on, the slavery question would keep coming up. The Confederates used the slaves to build forts, cook for the army, and to do other work. Thus the slave took the place of the white soldier. Other slaves raised food supplies and cared for the women. In this way the slaves were constantly being used to help fight against the Union.

THE STATUE OF ABRAHAM LINCOLN IN LINCOLN PARK, CHICAGO

By Augustus St. Gaudens

Proclamation

of Emancipation

The time had come to destroy slavery. Lincoln now saw that by freeing the slaves he could strike a heavy blow at the Confederacy. So as commander in chief of the Union armies he issued the Proclamation of Emancipation January 1, 1863.

The war, however, continued more than two years longer. The long list of dead and wounded on both sides saddened Lincoln. Day by day the lines in his kindly face grew deeper.

Finally the news came that General Grant had hammered General Lee's lines to pieces, and that Jefferson Davis and his cabinet were leaving Richmond, the capital of the Confederacy.

Early in April President Lincoln went to visit the city of Richmond. Here he saw a city on fire, and a mob breaking into houses.

Courtesy of *Youth's Companion*

LINCOLN TOWER OF CHRIST CHURCH, SOUTHWARK, LONDON

The cost of this tower was met by contributions half in English sixpences and half in American dimes

Lee surrenders

Grant was pursuing Lee's army. He overtook it, and on April 8 offered terms of surrender. Lee accepted. The president's heart was filled with gratitude that no more lives were to be sacrificed on either side.

Lincoln shot

164. President Lincoln Assassinated. The evening of April 14, 1865, Lincoln went to Ford's Theater in Washington to rest his body and mind. As he sat in a box, John Wilkes Booth, an actor, shot him in the back of the head. Booth sprang upon the stage, flourished his revolver, and escaped.

Dies April 15, 1865

Abraham Lincoln died the next day. Thus the nation lost a great man. He was truly a man "with malice toward none, with charity for all."

Monuments to his memory

Many monuments have been built to honor the name of this great man. The most unique one is in Edinburgh, Scotland—a life-size statue with one hand holding the Emancipation Proclamation and

with the other striking the chains from a half-rising slave. Another interesting monument is the Lincoln Tower of Christ Church, London. High on this tower in red, white, and blue tiles, is the American flag. The largest memorial is at Springfield, Illinois, the home of Lincoln and where he lies buried. One of the most celebrated is the St. Gaudens statue in Lincoln Park, Chicago.

ANDREW JOHNSON

From a photograph taken in 1865, by A. Gardner,

Lincoln and the

South

165. Andrew Johnson as President. Before the war Lincoln had begun the reconstruction of the South. He did not admit that the Confederate states had ever really left the Union. Whenever one-tenth of the voters in a state would take an oath of loyalty to the Union, he allowed them to set up a new government. Lincoln then recognized this as the regular state government.

Johnson a Southerner

Lincoln did not live to apply his wise and moderate rule to more than a few states. Even here he met with opposition from Congress. Andrew Johnson, who succeeded him as President, was a Southerner, though a stout Unionist. He was honest, but rude and harsh in his behavior.

Johnson tried to carry out Lincoln's plans for reconciling the defeated states. But he did not consult Congress before he began. Congress felt that the President was trying to override its power. It made much more harsh conditions for re-admitting the southern states.

The President and Congress quarrel

The quarrel between the President and Congress ended in an impeachment trial. Johnson retained his presidency by only one vote. Whether or not this trial was deserved may be a question. There can be

no doubt, however, but that in dealing with foreign countries Andrew Johnson's motives were wise and patriotic as well.

Maximilian "Emperor of Mexico"

Mexico had long owed certain debts to England, France, and Spain. The French emperor, Napoleon III, determined to make these debts an excuse for extending his power. He sent soldiers to Mexico, and used them to set up an Austrian archduke, Maximilian, as Emperor of Mexico. President Johnson sent American soldiers to the Rio Grande, and the French forces were withdrawn. Maximilian had now no support and later was shot.

The Alaska Purchase

In 1867 Johnson purchased Alaska from Russia for $7,200,000. Thus one more European power gave up its possessions in the New World.

166. The Progress of Reconstruction. Contentment of mind and regular, peaceful growth of trade and business did not return to the South until long after Johnson's presidency. Congress had little understanding of the difficulties with which it was faced. Under its reconstruction the life of the South was for a time cruelly unsettled. At last the old southern leaders themselves restored order. Then they governed much as before.

What Lincoln's death

meant to the South

Lincoln had earned the respect of the South, for he was a leader great enough to be generous in victory. He might have checked the misrule which nearly ruined the industries of the South, and created more lasting bitterness than the war. The South suffered as great a loss as the North in the death of Lincoln.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Lincoln, born of poor parents in the state of Kentucky, went over to Indiana at seven years of age. *2.* Helped build a cabin and clear the forest and went hunting. *3.* Lincoln lost his mother, and his father married again. *4.* His stepmother took good care of Abe and his young sister. *5.* Lincoln had little schooling, but read a few books thoroughly. *6.* He was physically strong at twenty-one, and he had read so much that he could "spell down" the whole country. *7.* The family moved to Illinois, and Abe was hired to take a flatboat down the Mississippi. *8.* He saw a slave auction at New Orleans. *9.* Lincoln was elected captain in the Black Hawk War; elected to the legislature for four terms. *10.* He studied law and was elected to Congress. *11.* Attacked Douglas for the Kansas-Nebraska Bill. *12.* Lincoln and Douglas held joint debates. *13.* Nominated for the presidency by the Republicans in convention at Chicago. *14.* Douglas displeased the South and the Democratic

party was split. *15.* Lincoln was elected president, the South seceded, and Douglas stood by the Union. *16.* The battle between the *Merrimac* and the *Monitor* ushered in the age of the ironclad war vessel. *17.* Grant defeated Lee, and Lee surrendered. *18.* Lincoln went to the Ford Theater in Washington, and was assassinated. *19.* Johnson started to carry out Lincoln's plans for reconstruction, but Congress interfered, and tried to impeach him. *20.* Johnson caused the French to withdraw from Mexico, and bought Alaska from Russia in 1867 for $7,200,000. *21.* The South was slow in recovering from the effects of the war.

Study Questions. *1.* Describe Lincoln's early surroundings. *2.* Picture Abe and his sister. *3.* How did Abe help get their meat? *4.* What did he owe to his mother? *5.* What did Abe's new mother do for him? *6.* What books did Abe read and how did he read them? *7.* Why was Abe liked in the family? *8.* How tall was Lincoln? How old was he when the family started for Illinois? *9.* What did he do soon after going to Illinois? *10.* What did he see in New Orleans that was new to him? *11.* Prove Lincoln was honest. *12.* Prove that the men of the countryside had confidence in Lincoln. *13.* How old was Lincoln when he ran for the legislature? *14.* Tell the story of Lincoln's experiences in running for the legislature. *15.* What was his success as a lawyer? *16.* Why did Lincoln love public speaking? *17.* Why was Lincoln not elected to Congress again? *18.* How did Lincoln become the champion speaker against Douglas? *19.* What

was the effect of the debate? *20.* What new declaration did Lincoln make in his Springfield speech? *21.* Why did Lincoln challenge Douglas? *22.* How did Lincoln become widely known? *23.* What was the fatal question put to Douglas by Lincoln? *24.* To what rights did Lincoln say the black man is entitled? *25.* Picture the scene in the state convention of 1860. *26.* What was the effect of the Lincoln-Douglas debates on the Democratic party? *27.* Why did this result in Lincoln's election to the presidency? *28.* Give an account of the demonstrations made in honor of Lincoln. *29.* Who fired the first shot in the Civil War, and where was it fired? *30.* How many slave states in all remained loyal to the Union cause? *31.* What kind of a war did Lincoln make of this war? *32.* Tell the story of the *Merrimac* and the *Monitor*. *33.* How was the *Merrimac* protected? *34.* How did the Proclamation of Emancipation affect the strength of the Confederates? *35.* Describe the surrender of Lee. *36.* Tell the story of Lincoln's assassination. *37.* How did the nation feel over Lincoln's death? *38.* How has he been honored? *39.* Describe the statue in Edinburgh. *40.* Where was Lincoln buried? *41.* What was Lincoln's plan of reconstruction? *42.* What happened when Johnson tried to carry this out? *43.* Name two matters in which Johnson acted wisely.

Suggested Readings. ABRAHAM LINCOLN: Baldwin, *Four Great Americans*, 187-246; McMurry, *Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley*, 170-184; Wright, *Children's Stories of American Progress*, 159-178, 299-327; Brooks,

Century Book of Famous Americans, 193-210; Hart and Stevens, *Romance of the Civil War*, 1-112; Bolton, *Lives of Poor Boys Who Became Famous*, 342-367; Mabie, *Heroes Every Child Should Know*, 309-319; Nicolay, *Boys' Life of Abraham Lincoln*; Coffin, *Abraham Lincoln*; Mace, *Lincoln: The Man of the People*; Hale, *Stories of War*; Southworth, *Builders of Our Country*, Vol. II, 186-217.

ANDREW JOHNSON: Sparks, *Expansion of the American People*, 433-438; Guerber, *Story of the Great Republic*, 252-256.

TWO FAMOUS GENERALS

ULYSSES S. GRANT, THE GREAT GENERAL OF THE UNION ARMIES

Ulysses Simpson Grant, 1822

Early schooling

Fond of horses

167. A Poor Boy Becomes a Great Man. Ulysses Simpson Grant was born in 1822, in Ohio, at a place called Point Pleasant. When he was a year old his parents removed to Georgetown, Ohio, and there a few years later he attended school. He was taught little besides reading, writing, and arithmetic. As he grew up he helped his father and mother by hauling wood, plowing, and doing other useful work. He did not like the leather business, his father's occupation, but he found great pleasure in farm work because he was very fond of horses.

He liked to travel

Young Grant liked to travel. When the news came that he had been appointed a cadet at the United States Military Academy, he was glad because of the

journey to West Point but not because of any other opportunities it offered. He did not like West Point, and studied only to please his father.

THE BIRTHPLACE OF GENERAL GRAN

Fights under General Taylor

Resigns and returns home

After his graduation Grant fought in the Mexican War as lieutenant under General Taylor and later under General Scott. After peace was restored he served in California as a captain, but very soon resigned, and when the Civil War broke out in 1861 he was working as a clerk in his father's store at Galena, Illinois.

ULYSSES S. GRANT

From a photograph taken in 1866 by F. Gute

Grant goes to

Springfield

His promotions

168. A Great General. When Lincoln's call for seventy-five thousand men startled the country, Grant was made chairman of a meeting at Galena called to raise a company of soldiers. He then went to Springfield, where the governor set him to work drilling soldiers and getting them ready for the war. After a time he became colonel of a regiment. A further promotion followed which made him a brigadier-general in command of several regiments. Later still he rose to be major-general, in command of an army.

Early in the war it was seen that in order to conquer the Confederacy it must be split in two by gaining possession of the Mississippi River. As a part of the great campaign with this end in view, we find Brigadier-General Grant directing the attacks on Fort Henry and Fort Donelson. These places were less than ten miles apart, in western Tennessee.

Captures Forts Henry and Donelson

With the help of Commodore Foote and his gunboats, Grant easily captured Fort Henry. To take Fort Donelson was not so easy. The Confederates tried to break through the right wing of Grant's army. After hard fighting they were driven back, and General Buckner asked what terms Grant would give if they surrendered. To this General Grant replied that he would consider "no terms but an unconditional and

immediate surrender ... I propose to move immediately upon your works." This answer has become famous.

Confederates fall back

Grant moves against Vicksburg

The surrender of Fort Henry and Fort Donelson forced the Confederates to move back their line of defense. After winning the two days' battle at Pittsburg Landing, General Grant turned his attention to the Mississippi River. As long as the Mississippi remained open to the southern forces, Arkansas, Louisiana, and Texas could send food supplies to the Confederates on the east side of the river. This General Grant wanted to stop, so, early in 1863, he moved southward to take Vicksburg. He beat the Confederates in the field and drove them into Vicksburg. The siege of the city lasted seven weeks. No one could slip in or out. Meat and bread grew scarce. The houses were knocked to pieces by cannon balls, and people found shelter in cellars and caves.

THE BATTLE OF PITTSBURG L

The surrender

On the Fourth of July, 1863, Vicksburg, with Pemberton's army of more than thirty thousand men, surrendered. There was great happiness throughout the North. President Lincoln sent a message of thanks to General Grant, and Congress voted that he be given a medal.

SCENE OF GRANT'S CAMPAIGNS IN THE W

Gettysburg on the same day

During this campaign in the lower Mississippi country a large Confederate army had marched north from Virginia, across Maryland into Pennsylvania. This army, under General Robert E. Lee, had won its way as far as Gettysburg. Here, at the end of a great three days' battle, the Confederates were decisively beaten; this defeat came on July 3, and on the very next day came the news that far-away Vicksburg had surrendered to Grant. After defeating the Confederates at Murfreesboro, General Rosecrans was in turn defeated at Chickamauga, and then cooped up in the town of Chattanooga by General Bragg. General Grant was sent to rescue the Union army, which he did in the battles of Lookout Mountain, led by Hooker, and Missionary Ridge, led by Sherman.

Lieutenant-general

169. Great Commander of the Union Armies. President Lincoln saw that General Grant was a great soldier. He sent for him to come to Washington and made him lieutenant-general in command of all the armies of the United States.

The "Wilderness"

Grant took command at once. His first great object was to capture Lee's army. The shortest way to Lee's army lay through the "Wilderness," a part of the country lying south of the upper part of the Rapidan, in Virginia, and covered with a thick forest of tangled underbrush. The route was dangerous. But into the "Wilderness" Grant plunged with his great army. General Lee was there with his troops. The

fighting began. For a month it was almost constant charging, back and forth, and there were long lists of dead and wounded. Grant moved his army southward and nearer Richmond. Lee met him in the bloody battles of Spottsylvania and Cold Harbor.

Petersburg taken

Then Grant crossed the James River, south of Richmond, and began the attack on Petersburg. This place was taken in the spring of 1865.

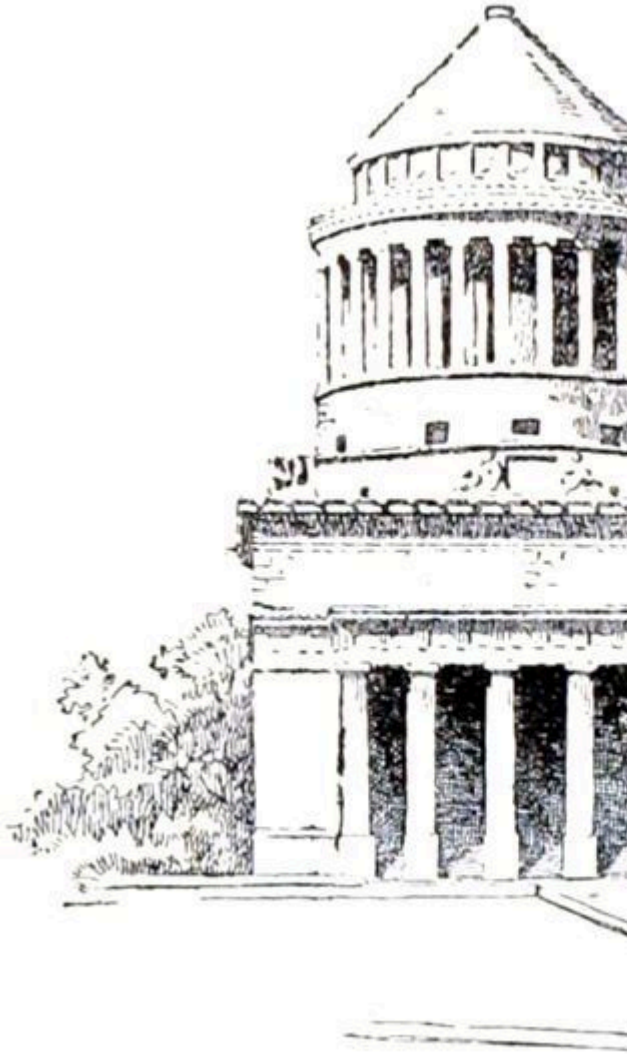
Richmond given up

General Lee told the Confederate president, Jefferson Davis, that he could hold Richmond no longer. He tried to get his army away, but the men were weak from hard fighting, and Sheridan, with his cavalry, was too quick for him.

Lee surrenders at Appomattox

General Grant wrote to General Lee suggesting that he surrender, and thus prevent the loss of more lives. Lee agreed, and the papers were signed April 9, 1865, at Appomattox Court House. No more generous terms were ever given than those granted to Lee and his men.

After the war was over General Grant served for a time in the cabinet of President Johnson, who had become president at Lincoln's death.



THE GRANT MONUMENT, RIVERSIDE P

Grant elected president

170. President of the United States. In 1868 Grant was elected President of the United States. He was elected again in 1872. Late in life he made a tour of the world, and everywhere was received with great honor.

Dies in 1885

He died July 23, 1885, at Mount McGregor, near Saratoga, New York. His body rests in Riverside Park, New York City, where a magnificent monument has been built to his memory.

ROBERT EDWARD LEE, THE MAN WHO LED THE CONFEDERATE ARMIES

Robert E. Lee, 1807

171. The Great General of the Confederacy. Robert E. Lee was born in Virginia in 1807. He went to school at Alexandria, where George Washington once lived, and became a cadet at the United States Military Academy at West Point.

Wins fame in Mexico

In charge at West Point

In the war with Mexico Lee earned honor and fame. He rose rapidly in rank. Starting as captain, he became major, lieutenant-colonel, and then colonel. When the Mexican War was over, he took charge of the Military Academy at West Point. After three years, he decided to give up the work at West Point and go West to fight the Indians.

Lee goes with his state

About this time the people began to insist that, in the United States, slavery must be given up. Even the

army officers and men quarreled about it. Lee believed in the Union and did not want the South to leave it. But when Virginia followed other slave states out of the Union and into the Confederacy, Lee went with his native state.

In command of army defending Richmond

When the war began, Lee, as general, had command of the Virginia troops. After the battle of Fair Oaks, in which General Joseph E. Johnston was wounded, General Lee took charge of the army defending Richmond.

Compels McClellan to retreat

Invaded Maryland and Pennsylvania

172. Lee Fights Battle after Battle. Lee at once attacked the Union army which was trying to take Richmond. In a seven days' battle he forced McClellan, the Union general, to retreat. He then struck the army of Pope a fatal blow and marched with his victorious soldiers into Maryland. A great battle was fought at Antietam (1862) and Lee returned to Virginia. He won two great victories at Fredericksburg and Chancellorsville. In the latter battle he lost Stonewall Jackson, his best general. After this, his army rested and ranks filled, General

Lee moved rapidly through Maryland and into Pennsylvania. The North became alarmed, but a great Union army was already hurrying to meet the Confederate forces.

Greatest battle of the war

Pickett's charge

The loss

The two armies met at Gettysburg, and there for three days was fought the greatest battle of the Civil War. On the last day General Pickett made his famous charge. Fifteen thousand southern soldiers charged across the valley—more than a mile wide—right up to the muzzles of the Union guns. But the help they expected from another direction did not arrive, and they had to retreat. Lee's army was defeated. More than fifty thousand men—including the killed, wounded, and missing on both sides—were lost at Gettysburg.

PICKETT'S CHARGE AT

This heroic assault marked the turn

Lee never invades again

173. Facing a Powerful Army. General Lee then went back across the Potomac, never to invade the North again. From then onward, little was done until, in 1864, General Grant took command of all the Union forces. Then followed three great battles—the "Wilderness," so called because it was fought in a thick forest of tangled underbrush lying in Virginia just south of the upper portion of the Rapidan; Spottsylvania, fought near the Spottsylvania

courthouse a little farther southward, and Cold Harbor, fought a few miles northeast of Richmond.

Lee's troops wearing out

General Lee's troops were wearing out. There were no more men to take the places of those killed and wounded. Food and clothing became scarce, and other supplies were hard to get. General Lee was now made commander in chief over all the Confederate armies. He immediately put Joseph E. Johnston back in command of his old army in the West, but it was too late.

SCENE OF WAR AROUND WASHINGTON AND

Sheridan blocks the way

Lee decided in 1865 that Richmond must be given up. He wanted to take his army to Danville, Virginia, on the way to join the army of General Joseph E. Johnston, in North Carolina, but at Appomattox his troops met General Sheridan's cavalry.

Terms of surrender

174. The Confederacy Was Lost. General Lee received a letter from General Grant asking him to surrender. The two generals met at a farmhouse and agreed upon terms. Grant gave the officers and men permission to take their horses home "to do their spring plowing."

ROBERT EDWARD LEE

From a portrait painted by Browne, now in the Westmorel Virginia

The next morning Lee, surrounded by his sorrowing

men, mounted his horse, Traveler, and rode slowly away to his home in Richmond. The other Confederate armies surrendered one by one.

President of Washington College

Dies in 1870

After the war General Lee was elected president of Washington College at Lexington, Virginia, now Washington and Lee University. He greatly enjoyed his work of building up the young manhood of the South. He died at Lexington in 1870. A monument to the memory of this great man has been erected at Richmond, and another at Lexington.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Grant born of parents who were farmers. Loved to work with horses. *2.* Sent to West Point; was in Mexican War under Generals Taylor and Scott. *3.* Was clerk for his father at Galena. *4.* In the Civil War rose rapidly till made a major-general. *5.* Captured Fort Donelson and Fort Henry. *6.* Captured Vicksburg; was made lieutenant-general, and sent into the Wilderness after General Lee. *7.* Fought a month, then moved around to Petersburg. *8.* Offered Lee terms of surrender. *9.* Was twice made president. *10.* Died at Mount McGregor. *11.* Robert E. Lee

was born in Virginia and went to school at Alexandria. *12.* Went to West Point, and was in the Mexican War, where he earned honor and fame. *13.* Took charge at West Point. *14.* Followed Virginia when she seceded, and was given command of the troops defending Richmond. *15.* Won several victories over the North. *16.* Failed at Gettysburg. *17.* Fought to save Richmond. *18.* Surrendered to General Grant in spring of 1865. *19.* Became president of Washington College.

Study Questions. *1.* Tell the story of Grant until he reached West Point. *2.* What part did Grant take in the war with Mexico? *3.* What did Grant do at Galena when Lincoln's call came? *4.* Tell of his promotion. *5.* What would happen if Vicksburg and other Mississippi River places were taken? *6.* What two victories came on the Fourth of July, and what did both mean? *7.* How did Grant's victory impress the president? *8.* What can you tell of the "Battle of the Wilderness"? *9.* What happened at Richmond? *10.* Picture the scene at Appomattox Court House. *11.* Tell the story of Grant after the Civil War. *12.* Tell of Lee's promotion after leaving West Point. *13.* Did Lee want his state to leave the Union? *14.* Was he a victorious general at first? *15.* What happened at Gettysburg? *16.* Tell about Lee defending Richmond. *17.* What did Lee plan to do after Richmond fell? *18.* Why did he not carry out this plan? *19.* What position did Lee accept after the war?

Suggested Readings. ULYSSES S. GRANT: Burton, *Four American Patriots*, 195-254;

Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 181-191; Hart and Stevens, *Romance of the Civil War*, 179-183; Hale, *Stories of War*, 21-29, 74-91, 92-118, 168-187, 226-264; Bolton, *Famous American Statesmen*, 307-360.

ROBERT E. LEE: Hale, *Stories of War*, 61-73, 119, 149; Mabie, *Heroes Every Child Should Know*, 289-308; Magill, *Stories from Virginia History*, 162-172.

MEN WHO DETERMINED NEW POLITICAL POLICIES

RUTHERFORD B. HAYES

175. A Wise and Independent President. In 1822 a baby boy was born in the old college town of Delaware, Ohio. His parents named the boy Rutherford B. Hayes. As a youngster he loved his books and his playmates.

RUTHERFORD B. HAYES

From a photograph by Pach Bros., New Yo

A leader at college

At an early age he entered Kenyon College, Ohio. Here he was a leader among his fellows, not only in college affairs, but in his daily work in the classroom. He graduated with first honors in his class.

For his after-college work Hayes decided to choose the law, and graduated from Harvard Law School. He was just beginning to win success when Lincoln's call to arms aroused the men of the North. It seemed terrible for northern men and southern men to fight against each other, but it had to be done to save the Union.

Becomes a general

Hayes volunteered and was made a major in command. By his fine work as an officer in caring for his men and in bravery on the field of battle, he won the title of general. While he was still fighting, the people at home, looking for a high-minded, honorable man for congress, nominated Hayes.

Refuses to leave his post to campaign

His supporters sent for him to come home and canvass for votes. He would not go. He said: "An officer fit for duty who, at such a time as this, would abandon his post to electioneer for a seat in

Congress, ought to be scalped." Hayes remained at his post and was elected by a large majority.

Hayes had become known to all the people of his state and they wanted him for governor. So friendly was he toward all whether high or low, so honest was he that three times the people chose him to be their governor.

In 1876 the Republicans of the nation selected him to be their candidate for the high office of president. The Democratic candidate was a man of very high reputation, Samuel J. Tilden of New York. He was known as a fighter for honesty and against wrongdoing in public office.

Contest over the presidency

Unfortunately, the politicians aroused bitter feeling between the North and the South in this campaign. When it was seen that Hayes was winner by only one vote, there were threats of "civil war." But luckily Tilden did not lose his head, and his party, following his advice, accepted the result.

Generous toward the South

Hayes decided to take the Union soldiers out of the South. The radical Republicans opposed this action, but the majority of the people in the North favored it. The southern people were happy, because now they might manage their elections to suit themselves.

President Hayes also placed a southern man in his cabinet, and this, too, helped along the good feeling

between the North and the South.

We can see now that the return of good feeling between the North and the South was necessary, but it was not so easily seen then. Now we can say that President Hayes was a noble and far-seeing statesman when he offered the "olive branch" to the South.

A startling change in custom

Lucy Hayes, his wife, was a brave woman. She startled society at Washington and in the country at large by issuing a decree that no strong drink should be used in the White House. The temperance people were happy, but others were not, especially the ministers of foreign countries who had always been in the habit of using wine on social occasions. A great cry was raised throughout the country, but Lucy Webb Hayes stood her ground.

JAMES A. GARFIELD AND CHESTER A. ARTHUR

JAMES A. GARFIELD

After a photograph by E. Bierstadt

176. The Towpath that Led to the Presidency. Like Lincoln, the second of our "martyr Presidents" started life in a log cabin. Garfield was born near Cleveland, Ohio (1831). His parents were poor and his father died while Garfield was yet an infant. Garfield's mother was brave and held her little family together. The children did not have much chance to go to school. Life to them was a hard struggle.

When James reached the age of fifteen, he began driving mules on the towpath of a canal running from Cleveland to Portsmouth. This was the time when canal boats carried both freight and passengers. The towpath was a hard "school," but had many good lessons for a boy wise enough to keep out of mischief.

Determined to have an education

He had his heart set on an education. He went to school long enough to be able to teach school. He shared his earnings with his mother. Teaching only sharpened his appetite for an education. For a time he went to Hiram College and afterward became a teacher there. He loved Hiram College because it was supported by the Church of the Disciples, of which he was a member. He finished his education at Williams College.

When Lincoln called for men for the war, Garfield, like thousands of others, volunteered. He became an officer and did his work so well that he was promoted to be major general. Like Hayes, he was

elected to Congress while in the army, fighting its battles. Again and again, the people of his district sent him to Congress, and finally in 1880 the legislature of his native state made him a United States senator.

War, Congress, and the Presidency

Garfield was a wonderful orator. Before the Republicans, gathered in Chicago, he placed the name of John Sherman in nomination for the presidency. So great was this speech that the convention turned from all the men who were before it, and nominated Garfield himself.

Garfield won the presidency before he had a chance to take his seat as United States senator. After delivering his inaugural address to the vast crowd gathered, he turned and kissed his mother.

The Republicans had promised to make new rules about men appointed to office. They declared that men should not hold office just because they had worked for the party in power, but that they should pass an examination to find out whether or not they were fit for the position.

While Garfield was leaving Washington to attend the Fourth of July celebration at Williams College, he was shot by a half-crazy, disappointed office seeker. He lived until September. Few young people can now understand how the American people felt during this time. They learned to hate the "spoils system." Garfield's death sealed its fate.

Civil

service reform

177. Arthur Becomes President. Chester A. Arthur was thought to be a "politician" merely, but he proved to be a good president. He began to build up a strong navy and started the movement for the reform of the civil service.

CHESTER A. ARTHUR

From a photograph by Sarony

Since the days of the Civil War, we had been too busy with affairs at home to think much about the

need of a navy. But beginning with President Arthur's administration we have increased its size from time to time, until during the war with Spain, our people came to feel the navy's value.

Under Arthur the spoils system received its first deadly blow when Congress passed and Arthur signed a bill establishing the merit system. By this system, men are appointed to office only after they have proved their fitness by an examination. Under it men cannot be turned out of office except for just cause.

GROVER CLEVELAND

Early life

178. A Man Who Was Twice President. Grover Cleveland saw the light of day in the old state of New Jersey in 1837. While he was yet a boy his parents moved to central New York. Here he received a common school education. He was a good pupil and made friends with boys who loved honesty and fair play. His parents were poor and could not send him to college. He was always sorry for this and tried to make up for it by hard study. The lives of men great in history and literature were what he liked best to read.

GROVER CLEVELAND

From a photograph by Bell

After going to Buffalo, young Cleveland entered upon the study of law. He studied long upon the fine points of the law. In time he became one of the ablest lawyers, not only in Buffalo, but in the State of New York. The fact that young Cleveland was chosen sheriff of Erie County shows that a great many people already looked upon him as a courageous man.

Lawyer, mayor, and governor

When Buffalo needed a mayor who was not afraid to do his duty, the people elected this man who had been a good sheriff.

The people of the State of New York wanted a man of the Cleveland type for governor. He carried the state by a great majority. He was a great governor as he had been a great mayor. He was honest and straightforward, and treated all men alike. Long before his time as governor was up, the people began to talk of him for president.

Runs against Blaine

Cleveland ran against a widely known and popular man, James G. Blaine of Maine. But the Republicans split and Cleveland won. The Democrats were happy over the result, for this was the first time they had elected a president since 1856.

The Republicans had kept a high tariff ever since the Civil War. The result was that our treasury at Washington was full of money. Cleveland sent a message to Congress asking that the tariff be cut down, but the high-tariff Democrats joined the Republicans in supporting it.

Cleveland had made many enemies in his own party by refusing to appoint unfit men to office. When, therefore, he ran for president again in 1888, he was beaten by Senator Harrison of Indiana.

But four years later, in 1892, he defeated Harrison and again became president.

The panic of 1893

179. The Panic of 1893. Cleveland had hardly taken his seat as President when hard times struck the country. Business men and laborers suffered greatly. They could not pay their debts. Men, women, and children suffered for want of bread.

The great railroad strike

The Pullman Car Company of Chicago cut down the wages of its workmen. The men called a strike which finally extended over half the states of the Union.

Chicago was the center of the strike. Hundreds of cars were burned and lives were threatened. It was impossible to carry the United States mail or freight from one state to another. Grover Cleveland ordered United States soldiers to Chicago to keep the mails going and the freight running. This broke the back of

the strike. Cleveland had shown how to settle strikes in a new way.

Cleveland served twice as President and after his second term of office he moved to Princeton, New Jersey, the seat of Princeton University. Here he became famous for his lectures given before the student body.

BENJAMIN HARRISON

BENJAMIN HARRISON

From a photograph by L. Alman

180. A General Who Became President. Early in our national history it had happened that the son of a President of the United States had also become President. In 1833 a boy was born in Ohio, the grandson of a President, who was also to gain this high position. His grandfather was William Henry Harrison, who was elected President in the stirring campaign of 1840. His parents named him Benjamin.

Young Harrison, a happy and well-born boy, received his education in the public schools. He entered Miami University at an early age and graduated at eighteen.

Harrison, like so many of our other presidents, studied law. He was very soon admitted to the bar, and in 1854 he went to live in the Hoosier State at Indianapolis.

Enters the army

He answered the call to arms. He was made a lieutenant, but had hardly learned his duties before he was promoted to be captain of a company of one hundred men. Hardly a month passed before an order came making him a colonel of a regiment of a thousand men. He led this regiment until the last days of the war, and the boys were proud of "Colonel Ben."

For personal bravery and for skill in handling his men in one of the battles in Georgia, he was made major general.

Active in

politics

After the war Harrison returned to the law. In political campaigns he was much sought after to speak in all parts of the state.

He did not accept office until he was elected United States senator in 1881. Senator Harrison was nominated for the presidency in 1888. He set the example of making speeches "on his front porch" to admiring crowds who came from different states.

A picturesque campaign

In this campaign the Democrats pointed to Harrison as a man who wore his "grandfather's hat." The Republicans made this campaign like that of 1840. There was great enthusiasm, big wagons carrying log cabins with raccoons and barrels of hard cider, great balls rolling on, and happy songs. Tippecanoe clubs were formed in all parts of the country. The result was the election of Harrison.

Pensions and the tariff

Under President Harrison a tariff law was passed with a reciprocity agreement. By this arrangement, the United States agreed to reduce its tariff if other nations would reduce theirs. President Harrison had a warm spot in his heart for the old soldiers, and he signed with pleasure a new pension law.

The farmers and the silver men of the West were becoming dissatisfied with the action of Congress. In 1890 their forces elected several new Congressmen,

and in the next year formed the People's party. Most of the votes of this party were drawn from the Republican side, hence in the next campaign Harrison was defeated by Cleveland.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Hayes studied law, and served in the Civil War. *2.* He was elected to Congress while still in the field. *3.* He received only one more vote than Tilden for President. *4.* He was wise and fair in his treatment of the South. *5.* Garfield was a poor boy who had to work hard for an education. *6.* He was a war veteran and was elected senator before becoming President. *7.* His remarkable ability as an orator caused him to be nominated for the presidency. *8.* His assassination helped to bring civil service reform. *9.* Arthur when President, worked for a larger navy. *10.* He supported civil service against the spoils system. *11.* Cleveland, after being mayor of Buffalo and governor of New York, was elected President twice, though not in succession. *12.* A severe panic occurred while he was President. *13.* Harrison studied law, and became a general during the Civil War. *14.* His election was like that of his grandfather, William Henry Harrison. *15.* Changes in the tariff and in pension laws took place during his presidency. *16.* At the following election the farmers and those favoring silver money combined in the Populist party, reducing the Republican vote and causing the election of

Cleveland.

Study Questions. *1.* Tell something of Hayes' early life. *2.* How did he come to be chosen Congressman? *3.* What was unusual about his election to the presidency? *4.* How was his election accepted by the country? *5.* What kind of a President did he make? *6.* What can you tell of Garfield's youth? *7.* What positions did he hold before becoming President? *8.* What brought about his nomination? *9.* What reform did the nation demand after Garfield's assassination? *10.* What two things did Arthur work for? *11.* What positions did Cleveland hold? *12.* Name two important things that happened while he was President. *13.* Tell something of Harrison's career and election. *14.* What was done about the tariff and pensions during his presidency? *15.* Why was Harrison defeated by Cleveland in the next election?

Suggested Readings. Higginson, *History of the United States*, 330-347; Guerber, *Story of the Great Republic*, 281-285, 288-293.

THE BEGINNING OF EXPANSION ABROAD

WILLIAM McKINLEY AND THE SPANISH-AMERICAN WAR

WILLIAM McKINLEY

From a photograph by Courtney, taken at Canton,

William McKinley, 1843

Teaches school

181. William McKinley. William McKinley was born in Ohio in 1843. As a boy his chief delight was to roam the fields and woods surrounding Niles, his home town, or to fish in the fine streams near by. When he was about nine years old his parents moved to Poland, Ohio, where there were good schools for children. McKinley studied hard, and at seventeen years of age entered Allegheny College at Meadville, Pennsylvania. But his health had never been very good and he fell ill from hard study. He returned to Poland, and there a little later he taught school.

Enlists to fight for the Union

Wins praise and promotion

In 1861 Lincoln's call for troops to save the Union fired the whole North with patriotism. McKinley, though then only eighteen years of age, enlisted at once. Under fire at Antietam and in later battles of the war, he won praise and promotion for his heroic deeds. The active army life was good for him, and when the war was over he was a strong and healthy man. He enlisted as a private and came out as a

major. All his promotions were for merit and bravery.

Studies law

He returned to Poland and took up the study of the law. But his means were small and he had a hard struggle. In 1867 McKinley was admitted to the bar and opened an office in Canton, Ohio.

Becomes a successful lawyer and speaker

Like many another young lawyer he had numerous difficulties and disappointments, but he worked hard and in time became a successful lawyer. He was a good speaker and soon was much in demand in political campaigns.

In Congress

Elected president

The people admired him. They felt that he could be trusted. They sent him, for seven terms, to represent them in Congress at Washington, and twice they made him governor of Ohio. In 1896 he was elected president of the United States.

The Cubans revolt

182. Spanish Persecution in Cuba. Since the earliest days of Spanish rule, Cuba had been discontented and had engaged in frequent wars with Spain because of heavy taxation and bad government. Again and again the Cubans revolted, but they were not strong enough to succeed and Spanish oppression continued. In 1895 the people rose in a last desperate effort to free themselves. To crush them Spain sent a large army under a cruel general. Large numbers of unarmed Cubans—men, women, and children—were gathered into camps guarded by Spanish soldiers and cut off from food and other supplies. Thousands died of starvation and disease.

HOW THE CUBANS

Lying in ambush for the advancir

Americans aroused

Red Cross Society goes to Cuba

These and other harsh things done in an attempt to

break the spirit of the Cubans filled the American people with bitter indignation. On the recommendation of President McKinley, Congress voted fifty thousand dollars for relief work. Money, by private contribution, also flowed in from all parts of the country. The Red Cross Society, led by Clara Barton, hastened to the island to relieve the awful conditions of hunger and disease.

GEORGE DEWEY

From a photograph taken in 1900 by Francis B. Johns

The American people were aroused. They demanded that the United States interfere in behalf of the

suffering Cubans, who were fighting to be free. They were eager to take up arms for freedom and humanity.

Battleship "Maine" blown up

Indignation was brought to its highest pitch when, on February 15, 1898, the United States battleship *Maine* was sunk in Havana Harbor, two hundred sixty of the crew perishing. What was the cause of the explosion has never been found out, but Americans then believed it to be the work of the Spaniards.

War declared

In April the United States demanded that the Spanish troops be taken from Cuba and the Cubans be given their independence. Spain was given three days in which to reply. She immediately declared war against the United States.

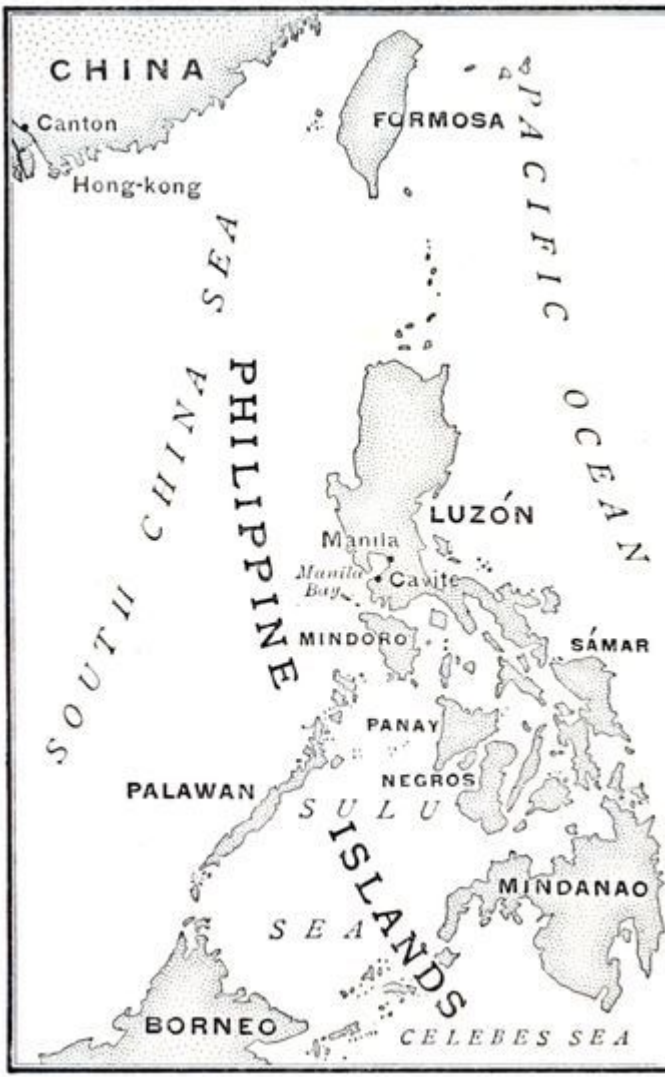
Dewey destroys the Spanish fleet

183. A War for the Sake of Humanity. The war had hardly begun before Admiral George Dewey destroyed the Spanish fleet and pounded to pieces the shore batteries in Manila Bay, Philippine Islands. Dewey, with his fleet, sailed under orders from Hong-kong, China, entered the bay, and did his work without the loss of a man. This deed made him the

naval hero of the war.

California volunteers lead in numbers

Thousands of men, North and South, rallied to the call of President McKinley. The states of the far West responded with noble enthusiasm. California, largest in population and wealth, led in the number of its volunteers.



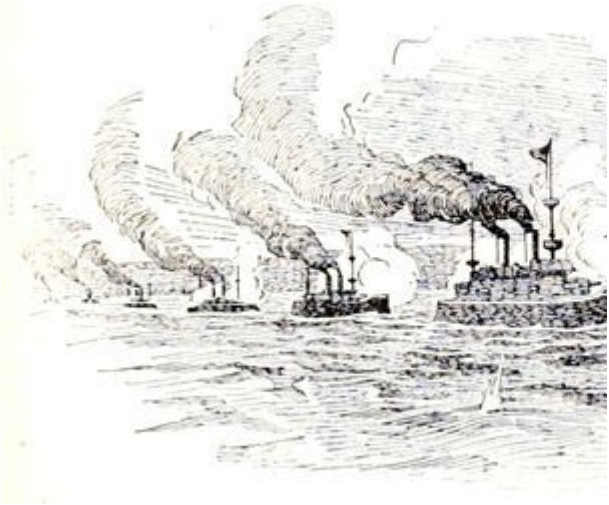
SCENE OF THE SPANISH WAR IN THE PHILIPPIN

"Rough Riders" win fame

The land forces in Cuba were under the command of General Shafter. They stormed El Caney and San Juan and marched on Santiago. But the "Rough Riders," a regiment raised from the mountains and plains, attracted the most attention. Colonel Leonard Wood had command of them, aided by Theodore Roosevelt. When Wood was made a general, Roosevelt became their colonel, and fought through the war with them.

Spanish fleet in Santiago Harbor

A large fleet sent from Spain under Admiral Cervera had kept out of the way of the American fleet under Rear-Admiral Sampson and Commodore Schley and was now hidden in Santiago Harbor. When the Americans captured El Caney and San Juan, the Spanish admiral decided that Santiago would soon be in American hands. To escape being taken prisoner he made a bold dash from the harbor.



THE BATTLE OF MA

Cervera's fleet destroyed

The American naval forces were on the watch, and soon the entire Spanish fleet was destroyed or captured—July 3, 1898.

Treaty of peace signed

The occupation by the Americans of the city of Manila, in the Philippines, in August (1898), brought peace proposals from Spain. These were accepted, the treaty being signed on the tenth of December.

The Philippines bought for twenty

million dollars

This war was fought for the sake of humanity and freedom and not for gain or glory. The United States had taken the side of an oppressed people struggling for independence but she did not claim these countries as the spoils of war. She paid Spain twenty million dollars in gold for the Philippines, and at once set to work to establish schools, build good roads, help the farmers, and improve living conditions by making the government more stable and humane.

Hawaiian Islands annexed

It had long been felt, especially by the people of the Pacific States, that for both commercial and military reasons the Hawaiian Islands should belong to us. These islands—eight in all—were annexed in 1898.

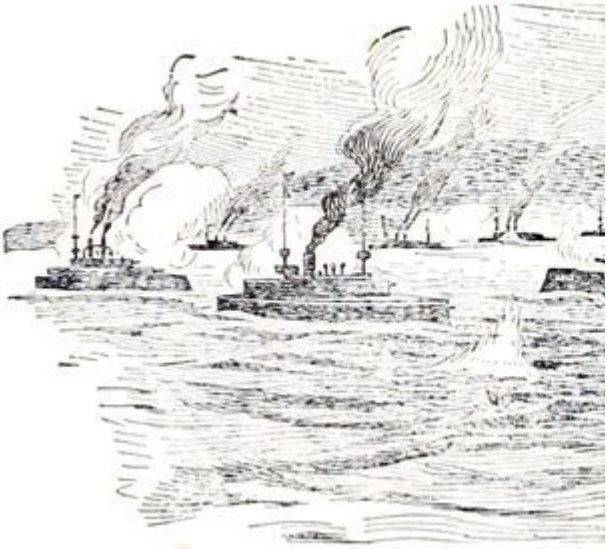
Cuba a republic

Conditions in Cuba greatly improved

United States a world power

Steps were taken at once to give the people of Cuba a government of their own. The island was made a

republic. The constitution, drawn up somewhat like our own, was adopted by the people of Cuba, February 21, 1902. The United States did much to help the people before it withdrew from the island in 1902 and left the Cubans to rule themselves. Conditions have rapidly improved. In 1894, under Spanish rule, there were only about 900 public schools, and, even including the 700 private schools, only about 60,000 pupils were on the rolls. Six years later, under American rule, there were 3,550 public schools, with 172,000 pupils enrolled. By the conduct of their government the Cubans are justifying the confidence the American people had in them.



THE BATTLE OF SA

As a result of the war Guam and Porto Rico also became American possessions. This was the beginning of American territorial expansion. The United States took its place among the great world

powers, and has since played an important part in the affairs of nations.

McKinley shot by an anarchist in 1901

184. McKinley Assassinated. President McKinley did not live to see the results of self-government in Cuba. Shortly after his election to a second term as president, he was shot by an anarchist, while the guest of the Pan-American Exposition at Buffalo in September, 1901. After a week of patient suffering, watched with painful anxiety by the people, William McKinley, our third martyr president, passed away.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* William McKinley was born in Ohio. *2.* He went to college at Meadville, Pennsylvania, and afterwards taught school. *3.* Enlisted as a private in 1861 and won praise and promotion for bravery in fighting for the Union. *4.* After the war he studied law and opened an office in Canton, Ohio. *5.* Was a good speaker and was sent to Congress at Washington for seven terms. *6.* Twice governor of Ohio, he was elected president of the United States in 1896. *7.* The Cubans had revolted many times against Spanish oppression and now rose again. *8.* The Americans sympathized with the suffering Cubans; Congress voted fifty thousand dollars for relief work. *9.* The United States battleship *Maine* blown up in

Havana Harbor. *10.* Spain declared war against the United States. *11.* Admiral George Dewey destroyed the Spanish fleet at Manila in the Philippine Islands. *12.* American forces, among them the Rough Riders, attacked the Spanish in Cuba. *13.* American fleet destroyed the Spanish fleet at Santiago. *14.* Peace proposals came from Spain and the treaty of peace was signed in December, 1898. *15.* The United States bought the Philippines from Spain, the Hawaiian Islands were annexed, and Cuba became a republic. *16.* Guam and Porto Rico also became American possessions. *17.* Conditions in former Spanish possessions greatly improved. *18.* McKinley was assassinated by an anarchist while he was the guest of the Pan-American Exposition at Buffalo, in September, 1901 and died soon after.

Study Questions. *1.* Describe McKinley's boyhood surroundings and what he liked to do. *2.* What made him fall ill? *3.* How did he answer Lincoln's call for troops? *4.* What effect did army life have on his health? *5.* What did he do after the war? *6.* To what public office was he elected? *7.* Why did the Cubans revolt against Spain? *8.* How did the Spaniards attempt to crush the revolt? *9.* What did the Americans do to relieve the suffering of the Cubans? *10.* What did they want to do? *11.* How did the sinking of the Maine affect Americans? *12.* What did the United States demand of Spain? *13.* Describe Dewey's action at Manila. *14.* What state led in the number of volunteers? *15.* What were

the "Rough Riders"? *16.* What happened at Santiago? *17.* What finally brought peace proposals from Spain? *18.* Why had the war been fought? *19.* What did the Americans do in the Philippines? *20.* What other islands came into American possession? *21.* What happened in Cuba? *22.* When and in what city was President McKinley assassinated?

Suggested Readings. Stratemeyer, *American Boy's Life of William McKinley*; Morris, *The War with Spain*, 150-169, 180-214, 267-285; Barrett, *Admiral George Dewey*, 55-152, 230-251; Ross, *Heroes of Our War with Spain*.

THE MAN WHO WAS THE CHAMPION OF DEMOCRACY

THEODORE ROOSEVELT, THE TYPICAL AMERICAN

Of Dutch descent

185. Theodore Roosevelt as a Boy. Although the son of a rich man, Roosevelt both as boy and man was most democratic. One of his forefathers, Klaes Martensen van Roosevelt, came from Holland to New York in the steerage of a sailing vessel, a most lowly way to travel. This was long ago, before Peter Stuyvesant was governor of New Netherland, as New York colony was then called.

THEODORE ROOSEVELT

From a photograph by Bel

Young Roosevelt had learned a few words of an old Dutch baby-song. When in South Africa, he pleased the Dutch settlers by repeating the few words he still remembered. The settlers still teach this song to their children, though their forefathers left Holland for that country more than two hundred and fifty years ago.

Roosevelt's mother was a charming southern woman, who was true to the South in the Civil War; her brothers were in the Confederate Navy. One night, as she was putting the children to bed, Theodore broke out into a rather loud prayer for the Union soldiers. The mother only smiled.

Absence of sectional bitterness

The father stood for the Union and for Lincoln. He helped fit out regiments and cared for the widow and the orphan. But there was no quarreling in this home over these differences. What a fine example to set before children! No wonder Roosevelt could refer with pride, when a man, to the heroic deeds of the Blue and the Gray.

What the Roosevelt children did

Theodore was a sickly boy. Hence he was sent to a private school or had a tutor. The children spent their summers among the delights of a country

home. They had all sorts of frolicsome games. They had pets: cats, dogs, rabbits, woodchucks, crows, and a Shetland pony. They ran barefoot and joined their elders in playing at haying, harvesting, and picking apples. In the fall they climbed the hickory and the chestnut trees in search of nuts. Sometimes they played "Indians," in real fashion, by painting hands and faces with pokeberry juice!

But the children thought that by far the happiest time was Christmas. Roosevelt declares that he never knew another family to have so jolly a time at that season of the year.

Praises father as model man

Roosevelt makes a statement I wish every boy could make: "My father was the best man I ever knew." Roosevelt, the father, did not permit his children to become selfish. Each was taught to divide his gifts—not always an easy thing for older folks to do. In this home the children were taught to avoid being cruel and to practice kindness. Idleness was forbidden. The children were kept busy doing interesting things. Neither was young Roosevelt permitted to play the coward. He was taught to face unpleasant things like a man. His father could never stand a lie, even if it were only a "white" one. There was no room in that home for the coward or the bully.

Enters Harvard

At fifteen, after a year or more spent in Egypt, Palestine, and Germany, Theodore came home a

more enthusiastic American than ever. He now began to prepare for college. He entered Harvard in 1876. He made a good but not a brilliant student. Throughout his course he taught a mission Bible class. He would not be without something to do even on Sunday.

A boxing match

He graduated with Phi Beta Kappa honors. Yet he was not a "bookworm," but fond of all college sports. He was a genuine sportsman without being "sporty," as a boxing match once proved. One day Roosevelt and another student were having a hard fight. Students crowded around. The battle was hot. Time was called. Roosevelt promptly dropped his hands, while the other fellow landed a smashing blow on Roosevelt's nose. "Foul! foul!" shouted the students. "No! He did not hear," cried Roosevelt, and warmly shook hands with the offending student. How many boys can stand a blow in the face and not get angry? Roosevelt could.

Fought hard for health

Roosevelt had a resolute will, and he determined to make himself stronger, so far as he could. He took boxing lessons, and became skilled in this art. He rode horseback in the chase. He took long tramps into the dark woods of Maine. In the summer he went on canoe trips, and in winter on long hikes on snowshoes.

This frail boy, through his determination, became a

man noted for his ruggedness and ceaseless energy. He had a keen love of adventure. As a rancher, hunter and explorer he met constant hardship and danger. But Roosevelt welcomed it all as part of the game.

Beginnings of political life

186. Enters Politics. He joined a local Republican association in New York. His rich friends laughed at him for joining hands with saloonkeepers and "ward heelers." They would not do it, but this young democrat did. He was nominated for the assembly. He must now show his mettle. He began canvassing the saloon vote. A saloonkeeper declared his license too high. Roosevelt declared it too low; he said if elected he would make it higher. In spite of opposition he won.

Before he got through at Albany he learned that no man could be a fearless leader whose moral character was weak. Another lesson he learned was that a man must act in office as if he were never to hold another. He was elected three times to the assembly and made a name for himself in fighting bad laws and demanding good ones.

Often lived life of cowboy on ranches

187. Western Life. After this, Roosevelt spent a number of years in the great Northwest. These years added to his strength and helped him become finely developed both physically and morally. In the time

he spent on the ranches of this wild region and on a Dakota ranch of his own, he lived as a cowboy. He was a young man then, and with all the enthusiasm of youth he hunted the big game of the Rockies, rode the "bucking broncho," and slept with his saddle for a pillow in the "round-up."

This life tested courage as well as endurance, but Roosevelt was equal to the test. One day a drunken fellow with pistols in his belt ordered him to treat the crowd. Roosevelt knocked him down and took his guns from him.

Law enforcement under difficulties

Another time a boat was stolen, and Roosevelt, with two other men, started down the river in pursuit. They caught the three thieves, but an ice jam prevented them from going farther. Through days of bitter cold the whole party followed the slowly moving jam. After while there was nothing left to eat but bread made with the brown river water. But Roosevelt was a deputy sheriff. He was determined to punish the lawbreakers.

Finally provisions and a wagon were found. Leaving his men, Roosevelt started with his prisoners on a two-days' overland trip. He had a driver, but he himself tramped through the mud with his gun, behind the wagon. At last after a one hundred and fifty mile trip, the lawbreakers were landed in jail.

Wins admiration of West

In this big young country where bravery and manliness meant so much, the people thought there was no one like him.

188. Returns to Politics. He was surprised just before he left for the east to find that he was to be nominated for mayor of New York, at the early age of twenty-eight. He was defeated.

Fights spoilsmen of all parties

He served as Civil Service Commissioner for four years under President Harrison and for two years under Grover Cleveland, a Democrat. He was not head of the commissioners, but he worked so hard and fought the "spoilsman" so boldly that everybody called it Roosevelt's Commission. He had to fight Republicans and Democrats alike, for they were bent on turning all men out of office simply because the positions were needed for their party workers.

Roosevelt and the children of the tenement

In 1895 Roosevelt was appointed police commissioner for New York City. As head of the Police Board he was on the Health Board, too. He took special delight in looking after playgrounds for the children of the slums. He was aided by Jacob Riis, who wrote *How the Other Half Lives*. Roosevelt's idea was to take children from the streets and put them in playgrounds to prevent them from becoming

"toughs." A Washington city editor said, "Roosevelt is the biggest man in New York City. I saw a steady stream of people go up and down the stairs which led to police headquarters. He has more visitors than the President." The truth is, as police commissioner for all New York he was commander-in-chief of an army.

Merit system for police

A policeman before could not get promoted without a "pull." But Roosevelt changed this. A Civil War veteran who had served for a long time as a policeman and had no "influence" rescued twenty-eight men and women from drowning. Congress had given him two medals, but New York City did nothing. Roosevelt came. The veteran, one night, plunged into the icy river and rescued a woman. Roosevelt showed his appreciation by promoting him. Every man on the force did his best now, for he knew promotion would come.

Builds up United States Navy

Roosevelt was called to be Assistant Secretary of the Navy, under President McKinley. He built up the navy and sent Dewey with the fleet to the Pacific. The war with Spain came (1898). Roosevelt resigned from his office, raised the Rough Riders, and took command with Colonel Wood.

189. Congress Orders Medal. For bravery in leading the Rough Riders in a gallant charge up San

Juan Hill in the face of a murderous fire he was promoted, and a medal was ordered for him.

He went back to New York with his Rough Riders. They fairly worshiped him. "He knows everybody in the regiment," said one. "He is as ready to listen to a private as a major-general," said another. The boys presented him with a statue of the "Broncho Buster." Tears ran down the sun-tanned faces as a comrade made a touching speech. Roosevelt now was a real hero.

Defies bosses as governor

On his return from war he was elected governor of New York. He told the leaders of his party that he would be controlled by no man or set of men. He said that he would gladly talk with all classes of men, but must be permitted to make up his own mind. This was plain talk for the "bosses." "He just plays the honesty game," said a Tammany politician.

National recognition of his work

But he had the same old battles as in the days when he was a young man in the assembly. He tried to run the government of the state in a businesslike manner, and his fight for cleaner politics was so determined that it caught the interest of the entire country.

COLONEL ROOSEVELT AND A GR

Becomes Vice-President

After two years he was nominated for the vice-presidency. The New York "bosses" were glad because they knew that as president of the Senate he could do very little to disturb them. But he had set a good example, and the great man who brought notice of his nomination said, "There is not a young man in the United States who has not found your life and influence an incentive to better things and higher ideals."

He made a whirlwind campaign. He spoke for eight weeks, in twenty-four states, traveling more than twenty thousand miles, making nearly seven hundred speeches to three million citizens.

Succeeds McKinley

In just six months President McKinley was

assassinated and Roosevelt became President.

How he had risen to high office

190. At Height of Ambition. The young man who had made himself strong, who cherished the memory of his father and mother, who had taught the mission class while in college, who had joined the Republican Club against the advice of his friends, who had fought against spoilsmen in state and national politics, who battled for the right of children to a breathing place in New York City, who had led the Rough Riders up San Juan Hill, who had stood as governor of New York against wrongdoing in high as well as low places, who was made Vice-President against his will, for the good of his party, now stood at the height of political power in America.

The people loved him so well that they called him to be President a second time; and that, too, by the largest majority ever given to any President. He was the youngest President ever elected.

Square deal, his motto

His motto as President was "a square deal for everybody." He did many wonderful things as President: he stopped men from stealing public lands in the West; he built great dams in the dry regions to hold the water for raising crops; he established national parks containing millions of acres of woodland; he kept millions of acres of coal lands

from falling into the hands of private companies; he established fifty-one national reservations where birds might nest and live protected from harm. How he did enjoy saving what nature had given men!

A great writer

Down to his time, Roosevelt was the most learned man ever President. He knew more subjects and knew them better than most men. He was a great writer. For a long time he thought that writing was to be his career. It turned out to be only a small part of his crowded life, yet he wrote over thirty books—more than any other President.

Roosevelt's books

He wrote histories, books on hunting, essays on American life and ideals, and lives of famous men. His story of his own life is well known. In his book, "The Strenuous Life," he tries to rouse other people to as active and fearless a life as he himself lived. He wrote always in vigorous, stirring language. Nearly every one agrees that Roosevelt's books alone would have made him famous.

191. President Taft, an Advocate of Peace. Roosevelt was President nearly two whole terms. He refused another term, and worked for the nomination of his Secretary of War, William Howard Taft.

WILLIAM HOWARD TAFT

Taft was well fitted for his new tasks as President. He had held many public offices. He had made a very wise and successful governor of the Philippines.

President Taft was deeply interested in the need of world peace. He submitted to the Senate wide-reaching treaties to uphold peace with France and Great Britain, and also a reciprocity treaty with Canada. Under this last agreement the two countries were to treat each other's trade alike, and some things were to be free of duty. The outcome was disappointing. Canada failed to accept the reciprocity treaty, and the Senate passed the British and French peace treaties only after changing them greatly.

The passage of a new tariff bill caused a sharp division among the Republicans. The tariff was much criticized; but President Taft defended it. This was one reason why, in the second half of his term, the lower house of Congress became Democratic.

New laws passed

A divided Congress could not easily agree on any needed laws. Yet many good laws were passed during Taft's presidency. One was a Parcel Post measure. Two others proposed constitutional amendments for the taxation of incomes, and the election of United States senators directly by the people. Two new states, New Mexico and Arizona, were admitted to the Union.

The growing differences between the two wings of the Republicans in 1912 led to the nomination of both Taft and Roosevelt. Both were defeated by Woodrow Wilson.

Taft professor at Yale

After he left the presidency, Mr. Taft became professor of law at Yale. But he now worked more earnestly than ever in behalf of world peace. His sincere and generous efforts in this cause won him increased influence and respect throughout the nation.

192. Roosevelt's Active Life as Ex-President. Roosevelt, after his defeat in 1912, started out to explore a Brazilian river. Four years before he had also made a hunting trip through the tropical wildernesses of Africa.

Explores Brazilian river

Now Roosevelt and his party went into a jungle where no white man had been before. They were faced with tremendous hardships of all kinds.

The trip was longer than they expected, and there was little food in the jungle. They ate palm cabbages, and were glad to find a bit of wild honey or shoot a monkey.

A hazardous voyage

Most of the party became ill with fever. But they scarcely dared halt. With their few provisions they were in danger of starving. Roosevelt begged the party to leave him behind, but no one would hear of it. So with his party Roosevelt pushed on to civilization, at grave risk to his life. The Brazilian government renamed the six-hundred-mile river he explored Rio Roosevelt.

In the World War

In the great World War, Roosevelt stood for the Allies from the first. He opposed our neutrality and our failure to get ready for the war which he saw coming.

When America declared war he begged to take an army to Europe. Although for some reason he was not sent, he did send four sons. Two of them, Theodore and Archie, were wounded, and Quentin gave his life flying and fighting inside the German lines.

In January, 1919, Theodore Roosevelt died. No other man carried the love and admiration of the boys and girls as did Roosevelt. The friendly name "Teddy" was the children's name for this great man.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Though the son of a rich man, Roosevelt even as a boy was most democratic. *2.* In the Roosevelt home idleness, selfishness, and cowardice were unknown. *3.* In college Roosevelt was a good student and a genuine sportsman. *4.* In spite of the jeers of his rich friends Roosevelt started on a political career by joining the 21st District Republican Association of New York City. *5.* Roosevelt was elected three times to the New York Assembly. *6.* In 1886 he was nominated for mayor of New York City, but he lost. *7.* In 1895 he was appointed police commissioner for New York City. *8.* Under President McKinley he was

chosen Assistant Secretary of the Navy. *9.* During the Spanish-American War he organized the Rough Riders and led them to victory. *10.* On his return from war he was elected governor of New York. *11.* In 1900 he was elected Vice-President and on the death of President McKinley six months later became President. *12.* In 1904 he was reëlected. *13.* After he retired from the presidency he traveled in Africa, Europe, and South America. *14.* Although nominated for President in the campaign of 1912, he was defeated by Woodrow Wilson. *15.* At the beginning of the World War, Roosevelt opposed neutrality and advocated preparedness. *16.* Four of his sons took an active part in the war. *17.* In January, 1919, Roosevelt died. *18.* Taft had been governor of the Philippines before becoming President. *19.* Both during his administration and afterward he was an earnest advocate of peace.

Study Questions. *1.* Describe Roosevelt's boyhood. *2.* What influence did his family life have on his character? *3.* Show how Roosevelt's character was revealed by the boxing bout. *4.* What sort of a young man was he during his college days? *5.* What was his first political experience and what did he learn from it? *6.* What did Roosevelt accomplish as head of the Police Board? as Assistant Secretary of the Navy? *7.* Explain his connection with the Rough Riders. *8.* Tell how Roosevelt came to be President and what he accomplished in that office. *9.* What was Roosevelt's political nickname and why

was it given to him? *10.* Relate his activities from the time he retired from the presidency to 1914. *11.* Tell what was his attitude toward the World War and the part he played in it. *12.* What become of the treaties Taft supported? *13.* Tell of some good laws passed while he was President. *14.* What did Taft do at the close of his administration?

Suggested Readings. ROOSEVELT: Hagedorn, *Boys' Life of Theodore Roosevelt*; Morgan, *Theodore Roosevelt, the Boy and the Man*; Hale, *A Week in the White House with Theodore Roosevelt*; Riis, *Theodore Roosevelt, the Citizen*.

WESTWARD EXPANSION AND DEVELOPMENT

THE WESTWARD MOVEMENT OF POPULATION AND THE DEVELOPMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

The gold seeker

Three routes to the Pacific coast

New discoveries of gold

193. The New West. We have seen how the discovery of gold in the sand near the American River over one hundred miles from San Francisco started the tremendous rush to the Pacific coast. The gold seekers went by three routes: by ship all the way around the Horn, the longest and stormiest way; by ship to Panama and beyond, a way beset by danger from fever in crossing the isthmus; and by long overland trails on which travelers suffered untold hardships from losing their way on the sandy plains or among the mountains. Many hundreds perished from sickness and hunger. In 1858, ten years later, gold was discovered near Pike's Peak; in 1859, silver was found in what is now southern Nevada. People streamed westward in ever-increasing numbers. Long lines of covered wagons,

called "prairie schooners," filled with fortune seekers toiled over the plains and mountain trails. "Way stations" sprang up along the routes of travel, to supply the needs of immigrants. These supply stations soon grew into towns. Then came the discovery of gold in what is now Idaho and Montana, and in the Black Hills of the Dakotas. The westward tide of population broadened. It filled the bounds of the United States from the Dakotas to Texas; but it was the lure of gold and silver that caused all this early development.

194. A Faster Means of Travel. The demand for means of rapid communication with the new West became strong. It was necessary to bind the new country firmly with the old. The "pony express" and the overland stage were too risky and too slow.

California admitted as a state

The number of people in California was increasing steadily. In 1850, two years after the discovery of gold, California with about one hundred thousand inhabitants was admitted as a state. The Homestead Law of 1862, by which settlers could easily obtain land, brought great numbers of farmers to the western plains.

A CALIFORNIA MINING CA

The first railway engine in the United States was built in 1830. Such engines had been in use in England for some time. The earliest railroads were very short. Seven companies owned the parts of the

first line from Albany, New York to Buffalo. Now in the same number of great systems is included two-thirds of the mileage of the United States.

Rapid growth of railroads

On March 10, 1869, the Union Pacific Railway, the first link between the Atlantic and the Pacific, was finally completed. There were then only a few short lines besides, west of the Mississippi. It was hard to find the large amounts of capital needed for railway building. Congress and the states helped the railroads by granting them many square miles of land along their rights of way. After 1869 the miles of railroad in the United States increased over seven times in twenty years. To-day (1920) seven great railways cross the mountains to the Pacific coast.

Farming develops

195. The Growth of Farming. The railroads brought thousands of settlers into the new regions. But it was no longer to hunt for gold. It was to build homes on the rich farm lands of the West.

Miners, cattlemen, farmers, and permanent settlers crowded on the lands of the Indians. The regions occupied by the red men now became smaller and smaller. Nearly all the Indians were placed on reservations on land which the national government does not allow to pass out of their hands.

Irrigation projects aided by

the government

The need of more and still more land brought the farmers to the dry slopes and plateaus of both sides of the Rockies. Here were vast regions which water would make productive. The government gave its support to great irrigation projects. Water was brought to the barren deserts and they became vast expanses of waving grain.

Gold becomes more difficult to get

In California the rich gold deposits which lay comparatively free were growing smaller. The gold seekers were no longer able to wash gold from the sands and gravel of the river beds, or to find nuggets in rocky hollows of the hillsides. They had to make a living in some other way. Vast mineral resources were still there, but they could only be reached by mining. Expensive machinery was necessary, and companies were formed to work the deposits.

California a great agricultural state

Then began the real development of California and the great Pacific Northwest. Up to 1875 California had been peopled with prospectors for gold. Now the output of minerals kept increasing, but the farm crops grew still faster in value until in 1920 they were worth many times the mineral output, because

of the wonderful climate and the richness of the land.

The leading fruit-growing state

The first product to which the settler turned was wheat. California became one of the leading wheat states of the Union. Then the state discovered its great fruit-growing possibilities, and to-day it raises the largest fruit crop in the nation. People at first became almost as excited about their golden orange crops as they had been over yellow metal.

Great cities develop

Meanwhile great cities were springing up rapidly, and the riches of forest, mine, and stream brought unlimited prosperity and growth. Los Angeles, San Francisco, Seattle, and Portland have taken their places among the great cities of the Union.

Agriculture on the great plains

From the Mississippi valley to the mountains agriculture and commerce developed with great strides. Enormous elevators were built to handle the vast quantities of grain. Great packing plants were established, where immense numbers of cattle and sheep could be slaughtered and the meat shipped to

all parts of the world.

GEORGE WASHINGTON GOETHALS, CHIEF ENGINEER OF THE PANAMA CANAL

GEORGE W. GOETHALS

196. The Panama Canal. In the great rush of gold seekers to the Pacific coast, many of the thousands who started out never reached California, for the crossing of the Panama isthmus and the long journey around Cape Horn were both full of danger.

It was this which first made Americans realize the value to their country of a canal across the Isthmus. As time passed, the great development of the Pacific coast region brought demands for fast and easy communication with the East. Railroads were built across the mountains, but transportation was still very expensive. The remedy lay in a short route by water between the east and the west coasts. Then came the Spanish-American War and the wonderful trip of the *Oregon*. People now saw that a canal across the Isthmus of Panama must be built at whatever cost.

The French attempt to build a canal

Work begun by the United States

In 1869 a French company had begun building a canal at Panama. They met great difficulties. The expense was so heavy and the waste of money so great that little progress was made before the company failed. In 1903 the United States bought the rights of the French company and obtained a strip of

land ten miles wide from the new Republic of Panama. Work was then begun by our government where the French had left off.

George Washington Goethals, 1858

Studies engineering at West Point

Serves in the Spanish-American War

197. George Washington Goethals. During the progress of the work there were several changes in the position of chief engineer in charge of building the canal. In 1907 this work was given to George Washington Goethals, of the corps of army engineers. Colonel Goethals was born in Brooklyn, June 29, 1858. He was clearly a boy of unusual ability. At the age of fifteen he entered the College of the City of New York. At graduation he stood at the head of his class. He then took up the study of engineering at the United States Military Academy at West Point. He advanced rapidly, and when twenty-four years of age was appointed first lieutenant of army engineers. After teaching at West Point for several years he was appointed captain of engineers. His ability caused him to be given charge of the Mussel Shoals Canal Construction on the Tennessee River. During the

Spanish-American War he served with the volunteers as lieutenant-colonel and chief of engineers.

Goethals put in charge

In 1907 came the great opportunity of his life. He was given charge of building the Panama Canal. He faced a gigantic task. But the government of his country had entrusted it to him, and he determined to do it without losing more lives by fever than necessary.

Canal completed, 1914

The great work was finished at a comparatively low cost. Meanwhile Colonel Goethals had cleaned up the Canal Zone and made it a healthful place to live in.

The building of the Canal took about eight years' time, required the services of forty thousand men, and cost the United States four hundred million dollars.

Goethals governor of the Canal Zone

When the Canal was nearly finished, in 1914, a civil government was established in the Canal Zone. President Wilson appointed Colonel Goethals the first governor. The enormous task which he had done so well showed that he was a great manager as well as a great engineer.

Benefit of Canal to the Pacific States

198. Value of the Canal to the Pacific Coast. The Pacific Coast States now more than ever ranked high among the leading states of the country. They could now send the valuable products of their forests, streams, fields, and mines to the Atlantic coast by water. The water route to New York has been shortened by 7,800 miles, and to Europe by more than 5,600 miles. The canal supplies a cheaper means of carrying freight than the overland route, and there is no limit to its usefulness for this purpose.

The San Francisco Exposition

In 1915 the Panama-Pacific International Exposition was held at San Francisco and the Panama-California Exposition at San Diego to celebrate the opening of the Canal.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Gold seekers reached the Pacific coast by three routes: by ship around Cape Horn; across the Isthmus at Panama; and over trails across the mountains. *2.* With new discoveries of gold and the increasing population on the Pacific coast, means of rapid communication were urgently needed. *3.* In 1869 the Union

Pacific Railway was completed. *4.* Settlers in large numbers entered the new West; agriculture on the great plains developed rapidly. *5.* Farmers crowded on the dry slopes and plateaus and irrigation projects were aided by the government. *6.* In California, when free deposits of gold became hard to find, the gold seekers became farmers. *7.* First a leading wheat state, California then became the leading fruit-growing state. *8.* Great cities grew up along the coast.

9. The Spanish-American War brought home to Americans the urgent necessity for a short route by water between the east and the west coasts. *10.* The United States took up the work of building a canal at Panama, buying the rights of a French company which had started the work and had failed. *11.* George Washington Goethals given position of chief engineer. *12.* Educated at West Point, Goethals served as chief of engineers in the Spanish-American War. *13.* The Canal was completed in 1914 and Goethals was appointed first governor of the Canal Zone, a strip of land ten miles wide along the course of the Canal. *14.* The Panama-Pacific International Exposition was held at San Francisco in 1915 to celebrate the opening of the Canal.

Study Questions. *1.* How did the gold seekers reach the Pacific Coast? *2.* What demand did the increasing population in the West bring? *3.* What was the name of the first railway across the mountains to the

Pacific coast? *4.* How many railways cross the mountains to-day? *5.* What did the railways bring about? *6.* How did this affect the Indians? *7.* How did the government aid the farmers in the dry areas? *8.* What happened in California when the free gold deposits gave out? *9.* What great cities grew up along the Pacific coast? *10.* What was happening in the plains east of the Rockies? *11.* What first brought home to Americans the urgent need of a canal across the Isthmus? *12.* Who began a canal at Panama? *13.* Why did the French not succeed? *14.* Who was put in charge of the work of the Americans? *15.* Where did Goethals study engineering? *16.* In what war did he serve? *17.* When was the Canal completed? *18.* How was the event celebrated?

Suggested Readings. Wright, *Children's Stories of American Progress*, 268-298; Brooks, *The Story of Cotton* and *The Story of Corn*; Nida, *Panama and Its "Bridge of Water,"* 63-187.

MEN OF RECENT TIMES WHO MADE GREAT INVENTIONS

THOMAS A. EDISON, THE GREATEST INVENTOR OF ELECTRICAL MACHINERY IN THE WORLD

His parentage

199. The Wizard of the Electrical World. Thomas A. Edison was born in 1847 at Milan, Ohio. His father's people were Dutch and his mother's were Scotch. When he was seven years of age his parents removed to Port Huron, Michigan.

EDISON SELLING PAPERS AFTER THE BATTI

Edison owed his early training to his mother's care. At the age of twelve he was reading such books as Gibbon's *Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, Hume's *History of England*, Newton's *Principia*, and Ure's *Dictionary of Science*. The last-named book was too full of mathematics for him.

A tireless reader

That Edison was a great reader is proved by his resolution to read all the books in the Detroit Free Library! He did finish "fifteen feet of volumes" before any one knew what he was doing.

In 1862 General Grant fought the terrible battle of Pittsburg Landing. Everybody wanted to hear the news. Edison bought a thousand newspapers, boarded a train, and the engineer allowed him a few minutes at each station to sell papers.

His experience as a newsboy

As the first station came in sight, Edison looked ahead and saw a wild crowd of men. He grabbed an armful of papers, rushed out, and sold forty before the train left. At the next station the platform was crowded with a yelling mob. He raised the price to ten cents, but sold one hundred fifty.

Finally he reached Port Huron. The station was a mile from town. Edison seized his papers. He met the crowd coming just as he reached a church where a prayer meeting was being held. The prayer meeting

broke up, and though he raised his price to twenty-five cents he "took in a young fortune."

Experimenting in electricity

Edison began very early to make experiments in electricity. After rigging up a line at home, hitching the wire to the legs of a cat, and rubbing the cat's back vigorously, he saw the failure of his first experiment—the cat would not stand!

Saves a life and receives lessons in telegraphy

At Mt. Clemens, one day, young Edison saw a child playing on the railroad with its back to an on-coming freight train. He dashed at the child, and both tumbled to the ground at the roadside. For this act of bravery the telegraph operator gave him lessons in telegraphy.

THOMAS ALVA EDISON

After a photograph from life

Makes a set of

telegraphic instruments

Becomes a tramp telegrapher

200. Begins to Study Electricity. He studied ten days, then disappeared. He returned with a complete set of telegraphic instruments made by his own hand! After his trade was learned he began a period of wandering as a telegraph operator. For many boys still in their teens this would have been a time of destruction, but Edison neither drank nor smoked. He wandered from Adrian to Fort Wayne, Indianapolis, Cincinnati, Memphis, and Boston, stopping for shorter or longer periods at each place.

By the time he was twenty-two he had invented and partly finished his plan of sending two dispatches along the same wire at the same time. This was equal to doubling the number of wires in use.

Repairs electric machinery and gains a situation

Edison was a poor boy and was two or three hundred dollars in debt. He went from Boston to New York. The speculators in Wall Street were wild with excitement, for the electric machinery had broken down. Nobody could make it work. Edison pushed his way to the front, saw the difficulty, and at once removed it.

All were loud in their praise of Edison. On the next day he was engaged to take charge of all the electric

machinery at three hundred dollars per month.

Receives forty thousand dollars for his inventions

After a time he joined a company and gave his time to working out inventions. The company finally sent a number of men to ask Edison how much he would take for his inventions. He had already decided to say five thousand dollars. But when the men came he said that he did not know. He was dumfounded when they offered him forty thousand dollars!

Establishes his first workshop

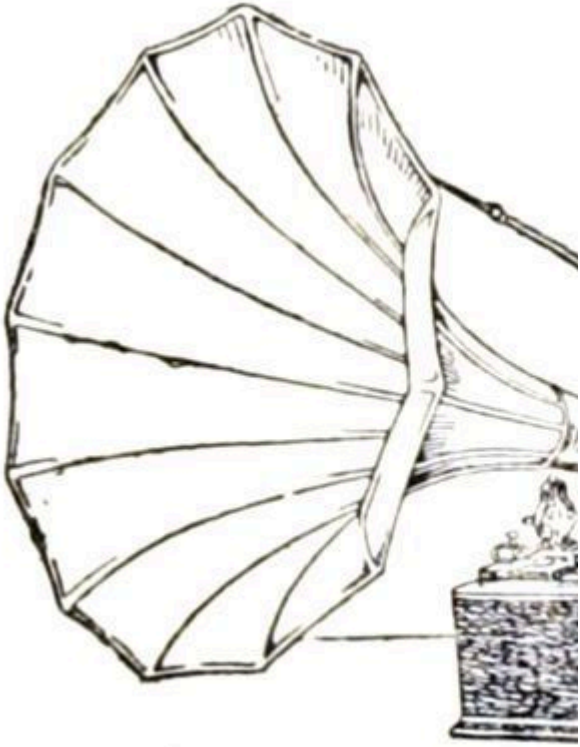
201. Edison's Inventions. In 1873 Edison established his first laboratory or workshop in Newark, New Jersey. Here he gathered more than three hundred men to turn out the inventions pertaining to electricity which his busy brain suggested. They were all as enthusiastic over the inventions as Edison himself. No fixed hours of labor in this shop! When the day's work was done the men often begged to be allowed to return to the shop to complete their work.

More inventions

Builds a new laboratory

and gathers a fine library

Many telegraph and telephone inventions were made in this laboratory. There were forty-five inventions all told. They brought in so much money that Edison decided they must have a better place to work. He built at Menlo Park, New Jersey, twenty-four miles from New York City, the finest laboratory then in the world. On instruments alone he spent $100,000. In the great laboratory at Menlo Park Edison gathered one of the finest scientific libraries that money could buy. This library was for the men in the factory—to help them in their inventions and to give them pleasure.



THE PHONOGI

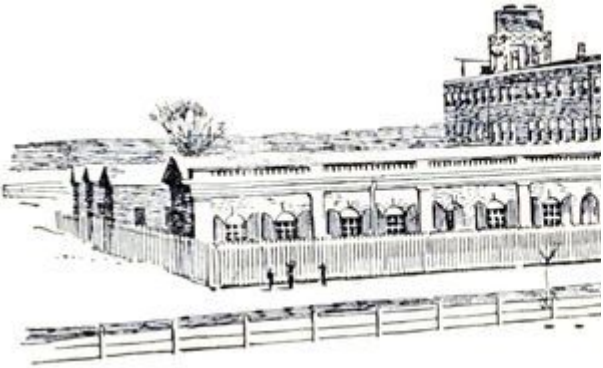
Invents the microphone

The microphone is one of Edison's inventions. Its purpose is to increase sound while sending it over the wire. The passing of a delicate camel's-hair brush is magnified so as to seem like the roar of a mighty wind in a forest of giant pines.

The megaphone

Next came the megaphone, an instrument to bring far-away sounds to one's hearing. By means of this instrument, persons talking a long distance apart are able to hear each other with ease.

The phonograph, which can reproduce the human voice and other sounds almost perfectly, was invented by Edison in 1876.



EDISON'S GREAT WORKSHOP AT

Edison's first phonograph

Sounds reach the ear by means of air waves which the sounding body sets in motion. In Edison's first phonograph these waves struck a bit of taut parchment, and were marked by a needle on a tinfoil disc. But tinfoil does not hold its shape well. In 1888 Edison patented a better phonograph in which the record was made on a wax disc.

Phonograph records are now made with one hundred grooves to an inch. Each groove is not more than four one-thousandths of an inch deep. A lever tipped with sapphire cuts the grooves. Its tiny marks have

been photographed—one way of seeing a sound!

What the phonograph does

The phonograph is used everywhere for amusement. It preserves the voices of great singers for the future. With it songs and bits of folklore can be collected in languages that are now dying out.

The electric light

Edison has put into practical use many principles discovered by other men. He does not claim to be the discoverer of the electric light. He did much, however, to make it useful to people in lighting their houses, and also in lighting great cities.

The first great electrical exhibition

In the winter of 1880, in Menlo Park, Edison gave to the public an exhibition of his electric light. Visitors came from all parts of the country to see this wonderful show. Seven hundred lights were put up in the streets, and inside the buildings. Edison had produced a much better light than any that had been used before.

202. A Great New Industry. Edison also had a part in another invention for which Americans can claim most of the credit—moving pictures.

Settling a

racetrack dispute

A dispute about horseracing did most for the discovery of moving pictures. The question was whether a horse ever had all four feet off the ground at once. To settle it, Edward Muybridge, an employee of the government, was called in. He stretched cords, fastened to the shutters of a row of cameras, across a racetrack. As the horse ran past, it took its own pictures. Later Muybridge made a camera which would take pictures very quickly, but he could not show his pictures well.

Edison's camera

Edison in 1892 invented a camera which used long strips of celluloid film. These pictures were looked at through a slot by one person at a time.

Another government worker, C. Francis Jenkins, invented the first complete moving picture machine in 1894.

The moving picture business

At first people were slow to welcome the new kind of play. Now it is claimed that our fifth largest industry is moving pictures. Probably as many tickets are sold here each year as there are people in the world.

Moving pictures of the war

In the war each army had its own moving picture camera men. They took pictures of ships torpedoed, of airplane battles, and of the fighting among the icy peaks of the Alps, often at great danger to their own lives. Great events of world history like the signing of the armistice can now be recorded for future times. Such pictures teach us things that cannot easily be learned from books.

Many schools have a machine of their own, and use moving pictures as a part of their regular class work. The subject is first outlined, then the pictures are shown, and afterwards the pupils write about what they have learned.

Moving pictures in schools

Some schools have films of their own. Others find it easy to get them. Our government sends out educational films on silo building, dairying, airplane manufacture, and many government activities. Business firms have films to loan on shoes, soap, automobiles, and other things they make. Regular film companies have pictures of animal life, the natural wonders of our country, current events, foreign countries, and other subjects suitable for school use, such as the teaching of cube root by moving picture cartoons.

Outside of schools moving pictures can be used for educational purposes in social service and Americanization work. One state, North Carolina, has trucks carrying moving picture machines for many of its counties. Programs of educational and amusing pictures can be given regularly in small towns with these machines.

TWO INVENTIONS WIDELY USED IN BUSINESS

The work of many inventors

203. Christopher L. Sholes and the Typewriter. The typewriter cannot be called the invention of any one man. Many inventors, half of them Americans, worked on the problem, for even a simple machine has many parts.

TYPEWRITER AND DI

Machines by which the blind could print or type raised letters were first made. A little difficulty may hold back a great invention. A typewriter was not built until long afterward because inventors did not know how to ink type.

In the Scientific American more than fifty years ago was printed an article on a new invention which was rather grandly called the "literary piano." Christopher Latham Sholes, a Wisconsin editor read the article. He was convinced that he could make a better typewriter than this himself.

The earliest typewriter

He set to work, and his first typewriter was patented in 1868. It was indeed something like a piano. It had long ivory and ebony keys, but it also had a third set of peg-shaped keys like those we now use. It carried its type on levers arranged in a circle. It had a spacer, and a way to move the paper along as it was typed, as well as inked ribbon, which he borrowed from an earlier inventor.

Sholes' was the first successful practical typewriter made. Now nearly twenty million dollars' worth are produced in this country each year.

204. The Dictaphone in Business Offices. An interesting outgrowth of Edison's phonograph is the dictaphone, used in dictating business letters. It consists of two machines much alike. On the first are put smooth cylinders of wax. The person dictating speaks through a tube. Then the dictaphone operator puts the cylinders on her machine, places light tubes

in her ears, and takes down the dictation on her typewriter as she hears it.

THE DICTAPHONI

Both machines are run by electric motors, and that of the operator can be stopped with the foot. The wax cylinders may be pared and used again and again.

The dictaphone means a great saving of time and labor, for dictating can be done anywhere at any moment.

AUTOMOBILE MAKING IN THE UNITED STATES

205. The Earliest Automobiles. The first kind of automobile men tried to build was a "steam carriage." A Frenchman in 1755 invented a steam road wagon meant to draw a field gun. But his invention could not be steered, and was soon wrecked by running into a wall.

"Steamers"

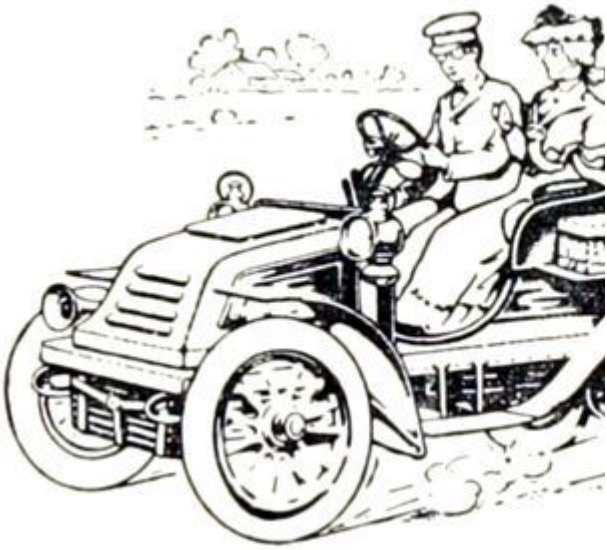
In England one hundred years ago a few of these "steamers" were run as stage coaches. They were noisy, clumsy "steamers" and always likely to explode. They were not popular, and a law was passed that a man must always walk ahead of them carrying a red flag. They were only allowed to go only four miles an hour. Of course this meant they could not be used at all.

Watts could not imagine good roads

Oliver Evans of Philadelphia built the first steam automobile in the United States in 1804, to carry a steam flatboat he had made down to the river. Evans and other inventors after him for nearly one hundred years worked on self-driven carriages, but could interest no one in their plans. Watts, the great English inventor of the steam engine, stopped a

friend who had all but invented an automobile. It was useless, he said; roads would not allow such rapid travel. Watts could discover steam power, but it never occurred to him that good roads could be easily built. The use of rubber tires in 1887 stopped the jolting that had been such a difficulty.

In 1892 Charles Duryea built the first gasoline automobile in America. He tried to get money to continue his work. He told a business man, "You and I will live to see more automobiles than horses on the street." The man thought him crazy, and refused to help him. Now horses are becoming rare in large cities.



AN EARLY AUTO

206. America, the Land of Automobiles. In 1891 the first electric vehicle in this country was made. The first gasoline car was sold March 24, 1898. Now, twenty years later, this country is manufacturing

nearly half a million cars annually. Other countries are backward by comparison. Four-fifths of all the automobiles in the world are owned in the United States.

Motor trucks in the war

Motor trucks can carry many tons, and are now very largely used for hauling, especially in cities. At the end of the war our government had seventy thousand trucks in use overseas.

One time when the German army threatened Paris it was only the unbroken stream of motor trucks moving along a great French road carrying men and supplies to the front that saved the city. In memory of its service the French call this road the "Sacred Way."

WILBUR AND ORVILLE WRIGHT, THE MEN WHO GAVE HUMANITY WINGS

207. Early Attempts to Fly. To sail through the air as birds do is an ambition that has dazzled men since ancient times. The Greek myths tell us of Phaeton who drove the horses of the sun, and of Icarus who flew too near the sun with his wings of feathers and wax.

WILBUR WRIGHT

Studying birds

To learn how to fly men studied the wings of huge birds living millions of years ago, made careful mathematical reckonings about them, and then made themselves wings of feathers or skin. But with these wings they could only glide to earth from high towers or cliffs. One useful thing they learned from this study. They found that the wing of a bird is bent as you bend a long piece of paper if you hold it by opposite corners and start to twist it. This is called the principle of the screw, and is now used in making the propeller blades of airplanes.

208. The First Airplanes. Early airplanes, airplane models and "gliders" were made in the queerest, most outlandish shapes imaginable. They had from one to five or more planes, arranged at almost every possible angle. Some looked like a row of box kites, some like dragons, and some like a collection of old fashioned windmill wheels all fastened together.

ORVILLE WRIGHT

It was only a little while ago that men were working with these strange models, for it was only about ten years before the World War that a successful airplane flight was first made.

The invention of the balloon came late in the history of flying. Two sons of a French paper manufacturer probably made the first balloon. They filled a large bag with hot air from a bonfire, and found that it rose and sailed away.

Early balloons were carried through the air by wind currents, and could not be guided. Their passengers were often blown out to sea and drowned.

Zeppelins

A German, Count Zeppelin, invented a balloon called a dirigible, because it could be directed through the air. The Germans named these large cigar-shaped balloons "zeppelins," after their inventor.

Dirigibles are now built more than two blocks long, about the length of the largest battleships. They can lift heavy loads, but are very expensive and very easily broken, and require huge sheds or houses to shelter them.

First successful flight

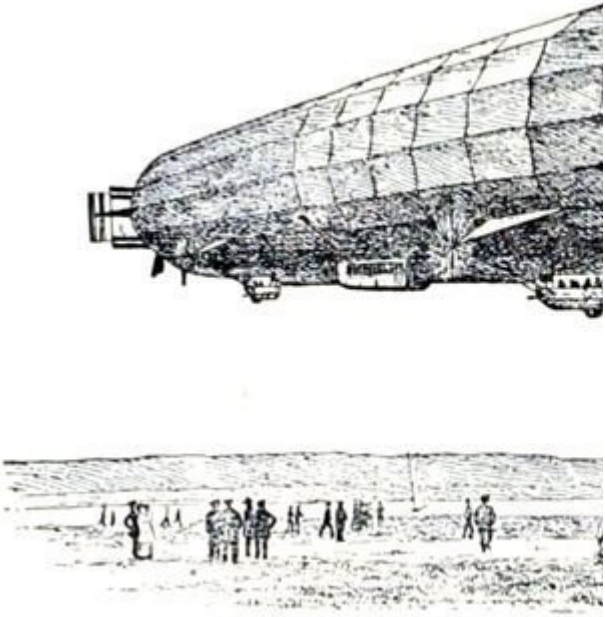
An airship properly means a dirigible, while an airplane is a heavier-than-air machine. The first successful flight of any length in an airplane that could be directed was made by Wilbur Wright in 1903, at Kitty Hawk, North Carolina. It was also the first time an airplane had been driven by a gasoline engine.

Did bicycle repairing

209. The Wright Brothers. Wilbur Wright was one of two brothers who had long been working on the problem of a flying machine. He was born in 1867, and his brother Orville in 1871. Their father was a bishop whose excellent library took the place of a university education for his boys. Wilbur and Orville studied especially works on physics, mathematics, and engineering. They earned their living by making and repairing bicycles. But they spent much time experimenting with different kinds of gliders. They also studied the action of the atmosphere. Aërostatics, or the science of the air, is a very difficult and important part of flying.

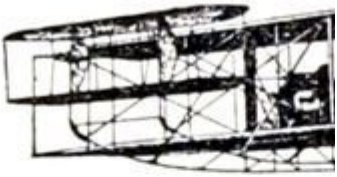
Flights by airplane models

Before Wilbur Wright's success in 1903 progress of various kinds had been made. Fairly long flights with gliders had been made in different countries. Two Americans, Langley and Hiram Maxim, had worked out models driven by steam. Langley's had flown half a mile over the Potomac, and Maxim's, though not allowed to fly freely, was strong enough to carry a man.



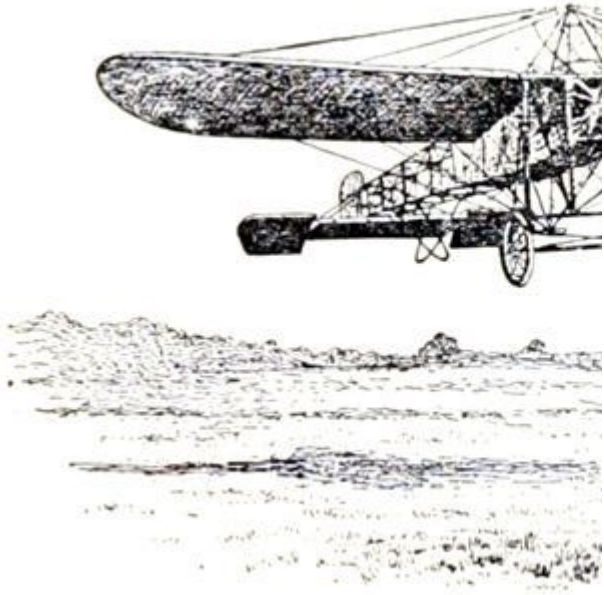
A DIRIGIBLE BA

The Wright brothers were wise in employing a gasoline motor. A steam engine, with its large boilers, was of course much heavier. They had a rudder in the tail of their machine, but they also invented a new method of steering. By "warping" or bending the planes, a monoplane, with its one set of wings could keep its balance as well as a biplane, which has two.



AN EARLY WRIGHT

After Wilbur Wright's first flight in 1903 several Frenchmen made successful flights. But in 1908 Wilbur Wright went to France and broke the records of all the French flyers by the unparalleled feat of remaining in the air for more than two hours.



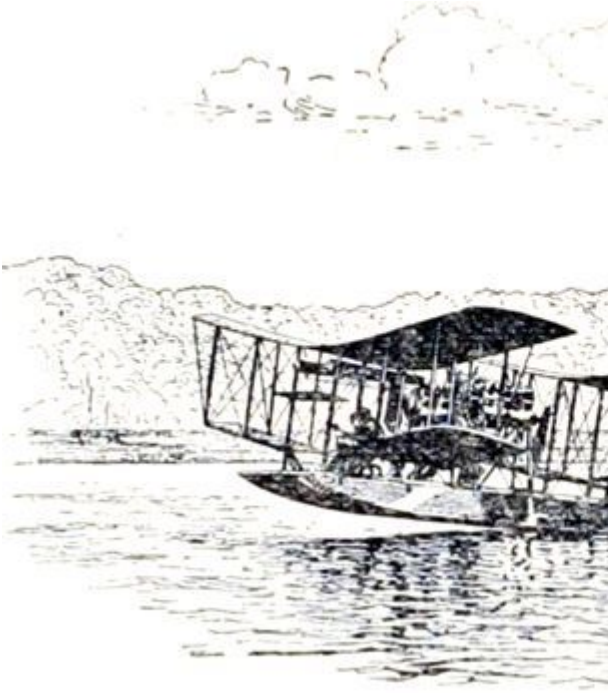
A MONOPLA

From a photograph of a Bleriot Mono

Air records

Now the airplane can do all kinds of fantastic tricks. Aviators "loop the loop" dozens of times, and move in any direction through the air at will. They can rise in the air thirty-six thousand feet, and can fly at the rate of three miles a minute. In 1907 Orville Wright made the first record flight of an hour. All this has been accomplished in scarcely more than a dozen years since then. Flying developed especially rapidly during the World War. Airplanes were used to spy out the enemy's defenses, to direct gunfire, to drop bombs, to shoot down soldiers, and to hunt submarines. The daring and brilliant fighting of

airmen in the World War makes a story more breathless than that of any novel. Incidents like landing with burning planes or with planes partly stripped of their canvas were not uncommon for these fighters of the air.



A HYDROPLA

Bombing machines

One type of airplane was used for fighting and another heavier type for bombing. Air bombing is now so accurate that in the future it may be useless to build super-dreadnaughts and large battleships.

210. Peace Time Uses of the Airplane. During times of peace airplanes are useful in exploring and

for carrying passengers and light freight. Airplanes scarcely more expensive than the earlier automobiles can now be bought.

Airplanes carry the mail

Airplanes in this country are chiefly used for carrying mail. "The mail must fly" is the slogan of the mailmen of the air, and in storm or fog—even in the face of a tornado—it has gone.

In May, 1919, a hydroplane belonging to the United States navy made the first trip across the ocean. A hydroplane is an airplane having a boat-like body so that it is able to alight on or rise from the water.

Transatlantic flights

In July a British dirigible flew across with its crew. A few weeks earlier a British plane flew from continent to continent in less than sixteen hours. It took Columbus seventy days to make his crossing.

JOHN P. HOLLAND, WHO TAUGHT MEN HOW TO SAIL UNDER THE SEA

Bushnell and Fulton and the undersea boat

211. The Submarine. During the War of the Revolution an American named Bushnell worked on the problem of making a boat that would sail under the surface of the sea. He was the first to work on this problem and is called the Father of the Submarine. Some years later Robert Fulton (page 257) became interested in the submarine. In 1801 he built one for the French government. But Fulton turned his efforts to making steamboats and did not continue his plans for a successful diving boat.

John P. Holland, 1842

212. John P. Holland. John P. Holland was born in Ireland in 1842. He was a studious boy and became a teacher. The stories of Bushnell and of Fulton interested him and he studied carefully what they had done.

He came to America and settled in New Jersey. There he got a position as teacher in a parochial school. He continued his study of the undersea boat

making many experiments and tests.

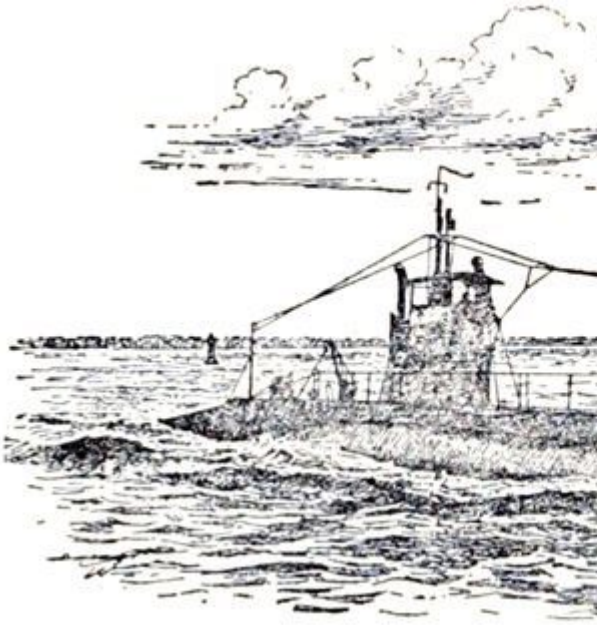
JOHN P. HOLLAN

From a photograp

Holland's first submarine became stuck in the mud.

But he did not give up. His next boat he called the "Fenian Ram." It frightened people when it suddenly raised its head out of the water and as quickly disappeared.

In 1895, after a number of severe tests, Holland succeeded in interesting the United States Government in his plans. He built for it a submarine which he named the "Plunger."



A SUBMARI

Holland now formed a company to build his boats. In 1898 he produced the famous Holland submarine. This boat settled any doubt about what submarines could do. It was only fifty feet long, but it could dive under water and rise again at the will of the inventor. From that time the Holland company built many submarines for all the great nations of the

world.

The periscope

From the top of the submarine there extends upward a long slender tube called a periscope. When the boat is under water the end of this tube extends above the surface. By means of a certain arrangement of lenses and mirrors in this tube, the observer in the submarine can see everything on the surface of the water. In this way the boat can be guided in any direction.

Holland died in 1914.

Value in war

213. The Submarine in War and Peace. The submarine is much used in war time. The war diver is provided with one and sometimes two tubes through which torpedoes or bombs may be fired at enemy ships while the submarine is hidden under water. It is very hard to detect a submarine when it is under the water. The only sign of its approach is a slight ripple on the surface. But if we look straight down at the water from high up in the air, then the outlines of the boat can easily be seen. In war time airplanes are used in spying out the submarine.

Use of the submarine in peace

In times of peace, too, the submarine is of great value. It is not exposed to great storms on the sea, since it can escape the waves by submerging. These

boats can cross the ocean and are large enough to carry cargoes of valuable goods. In July, 1916, the world was startled by the arrival of the merchant submarine, "Deutschland," at Baltimore. Loaded with articles of trade, mainly chemicals, she left Bremen, dodged the British and French blockade, and in fifteen days reached America.

One cause of America's entering the World War was Germany's attempt to starve England by a submarine blockade.

Fighting the submarine

214. Other Inventions in the War. The "depth bomb" was an out and out new invention. 11 could be "dropped" over the spot where a submarine was seen. Very often it blew the submarine to pieces.

The "tank" was a "moving iron fort" drawn by a tractor. It could tear wire entanglements to pieces and cross enemy trenches. The "depth bomb" and "tank" were used mainly by the Allies.

The wide use of "poison gas" was first introduced by the Germans. Guns able to shoot many miles were invented. One of them carried seventy miles or more.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Edison learned telegraphy, and made his own instruments. *2.* Edison saved the day in Wall Street, and made his reputation, as well as plenty of money. *3.* He made many telegraph and

telephone inventions. *4.* He built great laboratories in New Jersey, where many men worked helping him. *5.* Edison invented the phonograph, and worked to improve the electric light. *6.* An argument about horseracing led to the invention of moving pictures. *7.* Edison improved the moving picture camera. *8.* C. Francis Jenkins invented the first complete moving picture machine. *9.* During the World War remarkable moving pictures were taken on all fronts. *10.* Moving pictures are often used in schools and elsewhere for educational purposes. *11.* The typewriter was really the work of many different inventors. *12.* Typing machines for the blind first invented. *13.* Christopher Sholes' typewriter was the first practical one invented. *14.* The dictaphone is really a development of Edison's phonograph. *15.* It consists of two machines, and is used in business offices to save time. *16.* Steam automobiles were the first kind invented. *17.* For one hundred years many inventors worked trying to build automobiles. *18.* The first gasoline automobile in this country was built by Charles Duryea. *19.* The United States is far in the lead in the number of automobiles manufactured and used. *20.* Men have for ages tried to discover a way to fly. *21.* They filled balloons with gas or heated air which carried them far up. *22.* Dirigible balloons were invented by Zeppelin. *23.* Wilbur and Orville Wright built a successful heavier-than-air machine. *24.* The gasoline engine made their success possible. *25.* Airplanes

can now go three miles a minute. *26.* All the great progress in flying has come since Wright's first successful flight in 1903. *27.* In the war airplanes were used for observing the enemy, for fighting, and for bombing. *28.* In this country airplanes are now used chiefly for carrying mail. *29.* A hydroplane has a boat-like body. *30.* In 1919 three successful flights were made across the Atlantic. *31.* John P. Holland was the first to succeed in building a submarine. *32.* The submarine is guided by means of the periscope, and is valuable in peace and war. *33.* Depth bombs and tanks were new inventions. *34.* The Germans introduced poison gas.

Study Questions. *1.* What books could Edison read at twelve? *2.* Tell of his thousand newspapers. *3.* What were the cause and the effect of his first lessons in telegraphy? *4.* What was his first great invention? *5.* What did he find in Wall Street, New York? *6.* How much did Edison think of asking for his invention? *7.* How much was offered him? *8.* Tell the story of the work in Edison's shop at Newark, New Jersey, *9.* Why did he want a great library at Menlo Park? *10.* How does sound travel? *11.* What was the trouble with Edison's first phonograph? *12.* Name some of the uses of the phonograph. *13.* Make a list of Edison's great inventions. *14.* Tell how the first moving pictures came to be made? *15.* How did the machine Edison invented differ from a real moving picture machine? *16.* Who invented the first complete moving picture

machine? *17*. How important is the moving picture business? *18*. Tell some incidents of the war which you saw in moving pictures. *19*. Does your school use a moving picture machine in its classroom work? *20*. How are lessons studied when moving pictures are used? *21*. Where can schools get their films? *22*. Name two other uses for moving pictures. *23*. What earlier invention resembled the typewriter? *24*. Name one simple thing the lack of which kept men from inventing a typewriter sooner. *25*. Describe Sholes' first typewriter. *26*. From what invention did the dictaphone come? *27*. How is dictating done by means of the dictaphone? *28*. What difficulty held back the progress of the automobile? *29*. Name two ways in which this has been overcome. *30*. How old is the automobile business? *31*. How does the United States compare with other countries in number of automobiles used? *32*. How did auto trucks keep the Germans from capturing Paris? *33*. What is a Zeppelin or dirigible? *34*. Tell about the studies of the Wright brothers. *35*. What progress had others made before the Wright brothers succeeded? *36*. What was unusual about Wilbur Wright's flight in 1903? *37*. What is a monoplane? a biplane? a hydroplane? an airship? *38*. Name some peace-time and war-time uses of airplanes. *39*. Tell the story of Holland's inventions. *40*. What are the uses of the submarine? *41*. Name the first submarine to cross the Atlantic.

Suggested Readings. THOMAS A. EDISON:

Mowry, *American Inventions and Inventors*, 85-89; Dickson, *Life and Inventions of Edison*, 4-153, 280-388.

CHRISTOPHER L. SHOLES: Hubert, *Inventors*, 161-163.

THE AUTOMOBILE: Doubleday, *Stories of Inventors*, 69-84; Forman, *Stories of Useful Inventions*, 161-163.

WILBUR AND ORVILLE WRIGHT: Wade, *The Light Bringers*, 112-141; Delacombe, *The Boys' Book of Airships*; Simonds, *All about Airships*; Holland, *Historic Inventions*, 273-295.

JOHN P. HOLLAND: Corbin, *The Romance of Submarine Engineering*; Bishop, *The Story of the Submarine*; Williams, *Romance of Modern Inventions*, 143-165.

HEROINES OF NATIONAL PROGRESS

ELIZABETH CADY STANTON AND SUSAN B. ANTHONY, TWO PIONEERS IN THE CAUSE OF WOMAN'S SUFFRAGE

Women play an important part in early progress

215. The Women of Our Nation. Women have had a large part in the progress of our nation. In colonial days women often had to defend their homes against Indians. They endured the hardships of the first settlements as bravely as did the men. They had larger rights and greater freedom than in England at that time, because their help was so plainly necessary in this new country.

By 1850 nearly one-fourth of the nation's manufacturing was done by women, but otherwise until that time women's lives were spent almost entirely in their homes. Though no colleges were open to women until 1833, many mothers knew enough of books to prepare their sons for college at home.

Women's service in war

During the Revolution women formed a society

called "Daughters of Liberty," to spin and sew for their soldiers. They gave their treasured pewter spoons and dishes to be melted up for bullets. As women have always done, they cared for the sick and wounded after battles.

ELIZABETH CADY STA

From a photograp

In the great Civil War, women were needed still more to nurse the wounded, for even then there was no Red Cross or large body of women who were nurses by profession to call upon. Women took the place of the men called to war in many ways, and especially in teaching schools. On both sides women worked in the fields, and sometimes acted as spies, or served, disguised, in the ranks. Southern women also entered the factories in large numbers. They had to meet even greater hardship than women in the North, and were often face to face with starvation.

On the frontier women had always worked in the fields when necessary, and often helped to build the houses they lived in. The fearless pioneering spirit and fine, sturdy character of these women won them the highest respect. This was one reason why western states were the first to grant women the right to vote.

Women's equality with men

Long before the Civil War great leaders in the cause of woman's advancement had appeared. These leaders saw that in many ways women had proved their equality with men. This encouraged them to appeal for wider opportunities for women, who then had almost no legal rights. The leaders now demanded the privileges enjoyed only by men. We should all know the stories of these women of wise and fearless vision.

Born, 1815

216. Elizabeth Cady Stanton. Elizabeth Cady was born in New York, in 1815. Her girlhood was a happy one, spent with her brother and sisters. She was a healthy, rosy-cheeked girl, full of life and fun, who believed girls were the equals of boys and had just as much intellect.

Studies hard

When Elizabeth was eleven years old her brother died. Her father grieved deeply over the loss of his only son, and Elizabeth determined to try to be to her father all that her brother might have been. She therefore applied herself diligently to study and self-improvement.

Finds woman's position unequal

Her father was a lawyer. He had been a member of Congress. Many hours out of school Elizabeth spent in his office, listening while his clients stated their cases. She gradually became indignant at what she found to be the unequal position of women in almost every walk of life. She determined to devote her life to securing for women the same rights and privileges that men had.

Marries Henry B. Stanton

While studying she did not neglect the arts of housekeeping. She regarded these as occupations of

the highest dignity and importance. When twenty-five years old she married Henry B. Stanton, a lawyer and journalist who since his student days had talked and written against slavery. But she did not forget her old resolve to struggle for the rights of women, even when occupied with the duties of home and children.

Calls woman's rights convention

217. The First Woman's Rights Convention. In 1848 Mrs. Stanton called a woman's rights convention—the first ever held. Its purpose was "to discuss the social, civil, and religious conditions and rights of women."

"Declaration of Sentiments"

Women demand the right to vote

Mrs. Stanton read to the convention a set of twelve resolutions, the now famous "Declaration of Sentiments." It demanded for women equality with men and "all the rights and privileges which belong to them as citizens of the United States," including the right to vote. This was the first public demand for woman's suffrage. The resolutions were passed. A storm of ridicule followed the convention, but Mrs. Stanton's position remained unchanged.

SUSAN B. ANTH

From a photograph by Veed

Susan B. Anthony,

1820

218. Susan B. Anthony. A few years after this historic convention, Mrs. Stanton met Susan B. Anthony. Miss Anthony was the daughter of Friends, or Quakers as they are often called. She was born at South Adams, Massachusetts, in 1820. Her father maintained a school at Battenville, New York, and here Susan received her early education.

Teaches school

Won to the cause of woman's rights

From her seventeenth birthday until she met Mrs. Stanton, Miss Anthony had been engaged in teaching school. But now the great national questions of anti-slavery and temperance were drawing her away from her work as a teacher. At first Miss Anthony had not been in sympathy with the Declaration of Sentiments, but when she met Mrs. Stanton the cause of woman's rights won an able, enthusiastic, and untiring friend.

National Woman's Suffrage Association

From this time on these two fought side by side for the cause of women. They traveled and lectured in all parts of the country. In 1868 they started a weekly paper, which they called *The Revolution*. Miss Anthony was the business manager and Mrs. Stanton

was the editor. Its motto was, "The True Republic—men, their rights and nothing more; women, their rights and nothing less."

Miss Anthony casts vote for President

In 1869 they organized the National Woman's Suffrage Association. In many states the question of woman suffrage became an important one at election. Wherever they were needed, in California, in New York, or in any other state, these two women could be found. Every year from 1869 until her death, in 1906, Miss Anthony addressed committees of Congress. In 1872 she cast a vote for President. She declared it to be her right under the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution. For this act she was arrested and fined, but the fine was never collected.

Women win suffrage

Mrs. Stanton died in 1902. The great movement she had started was on its way to certain victory. Congress passed the suffrage amendment in 1919, and in August, 1920, it became law. Over twenty-five million women were entitled to vote in the presidential elections that year.

JULIA WARD HOWE, AUTHOR OF THE "BATTLE HYMN OF THE REPUBLIC," AND HARRIET BEECHER STOWE WHO WROTE "UNCLE TOM'S CABIN"

219. Julia Ward Howe. All the great wars in which our country has engaged have brought heavy burdens and sorrow to women. They could not march away to fight side by side with the men. Their duty was to cheer their loved ones as they went away to danger and perhaps to death.

Women in the Civil War

At the outbreak of the Civil War, from thousands and thousands of homes father, husband, son, or brother went away, in many instances never to return. Women were left behind, praying for their loved ones and working untiringly night and day to provide food and clothing and to keep up their homes.

Born 1819

But there were other women who could not serve their country in this way. Many had no one to send away to fight. Among these was Julia Ward Howe. She was born in New York in 1819, of wealthy and distinguished parents. She was carefully reared, but she knew little of the work that girls are usually

taught to do. Practically everything was done for her by servants. However, Julia dearly loved to read and study, and very early she began to write poetry.

Marries Doctor Howe

Desires to be of service to the Union

In 1841 she married Dr. Samuel Gridley Howe, a noted teacher and reformer. While visiting in Washington in 1861 she saw women nursing the wounded soldiers brought in from the battle field of Bull Run. She was deeply stirred by the sights around her. What service could she do for her country? Her husband was too old to enter the army, her son too young. She knew that there were thousands making clothes for the soldiers in the field. But she could not sew for the soldiers or care for the wounded, for she had never been taught to work with her hands. She could only write poetry. Of what use was that now?

Writes "Battle Hymn of the Republic"

One day her minister suggested that she write words for the popular army tune, "John Brown's Body Lies A-mouldering in the Grave." She did so, and the poem was published in a magazine under the name of "The Battle Hymn of the Republic."

It helps to bring victory

Soon the song was being sung through all the camps of the northern troops. The soldiers sang it on the march, in wild charges, or at night beside the camp fire. Everywhere its challenge roused the northern soldiers to a more determined fight for victory. In writing this poem Mrs. Howe had done a great service for the Union.

JULIA WARD HO

From a photograph by the Notma

Founds clubs for

women

220. The Woman's Club. After the war Mrs. Howe wished to continue serving her country in some way, and she took up the cause of woman's rights. Women had had little or no chance to educate themselves and broaden their minds by discussing with each other subjects outside their homes. She thought woman's clubs would work to free women from the narrowness of mind that comes from thinking only of dress, hired help, and housekeeping. From then on, she devoted herself to establishing clubs for women. She traveled over the country and wrote and lectured on this subject. She urged that the members of these clubs should seek not only for self-improvement but for means of serving others; and through their efforts hospitals for women and children, lodging houses, and labor schools were established.

Mrs. Howe had found a means of serving her country even greater and more effective than the writing of her "Battle Hymn of the Republic."

Born, 1811

221. Harriet Beecher Stowe. Another woman who did great service for her country with her pen was Harriet Beecher Stowe. She was born in 1811. Her father was a Connecticut minister, and she was brought up in a deeply religious home. At school she was apt at writing and she dreamed of becoming a great author.

Marries Calvin E. Stowe

She married Calvin E. Stowe, a student of theology, and thereafter devoted herself to her home and her children. During the years just before the Civil War there was much discussion of the slavery question. Mrs. Stowe had traveled in the South and had seen how the negroes were kept in ignorance, and how cruelly they were sometimes treated. She was aroused by the passage of the Fugitive Slave Law and by some of the things that happened as a result of it. She resolved to use her talent for writing to help the slaves.

Writes "Uncle Tom's Cabin"

In 1851 she began the story, *Uncle Tom's Cabin*. It was first published in serial form in an abolition paper in Washington. It was later published in book form. From the first, the sale of the book was enormous. It was translated into many languages and was very popular abroad as well as at home.

HARRIET BEECHER STOWE

From a photograph by Sarony, New

Mrs. Stowe became famous. It is said that the book converted more than two million people to the cause

of freedom for slaves. It helped to unite the North and to give it strength to stand firm in the great conflict.

Mrs. Stowe continued writing in behalf of the slaves. She gave her son to the cause of freedom. He was wounded at Gettysburg and never regained his health. She aided in establishing schools for the negroes in the South, and worked among them earnestly until her death in 1896.

FRANCES E. WILLARD, THE GREAT TEMPERANCE CRUSADER; CLARA BARTON, WHO FOUNDED THE RED CROSS SOCIETY IN AMERICA; AND JANE ADDAMS, THE FOUNDER OF HULL HOUSE SOCIAL SETTLEMENT IN CHICAGO

Frances E. Willard, 1839

Family moves to Wisconsin

222. Frances E. Willard. In 1839, when Frances Elizabeth Willard was born, thousands were leaving the eastern states for the new West. Her father and mother were successful teachers in New York, but when Frances was two years old they decided to move with the westward current. After living five years at Oberlin, Ohio, the family went on to Janesville, Wisconsin, settling on a farm in the midst of picturesque hills and woods. There Frances and her brother and sister grew up healthy, happy children, playing together in the forest and fields. The parents were religious and were total abstainers, and the children never forgot their teachings.

Stands at head of her class

At fifteen years of age Frances went to school in Janesville, and at eighteen to a Milwaukee college for girls. The following year she entered the Northwestern Female College at Evanston, Illinois. At graduation she stood at the head of her class.

Death breaks up the home

Miss Willard began teaching. Then the death of her sister Mary, and shortly afterward, of her father, broke up her home. That home had been an ideal one. There the father and mother were equal in all things, and discussed together the affairs of the household. It was a perfect home, orderly and temperate. Frances Willard made up her mind to spend her life in spreading abroad a knowledge of such homes, and in helping women to become equal with men before the law.

FRANCES E. WII

From a photog

President of

W.C.T.U.

In 1874 came the anti-saloon crusade. Miss Willard saw that this movement was part of the fight for better and happier homes, and threw herself ardently into the work. When the Woman's Christian Temperance Union was organized in Chicago, Miss Willard became its president.

In 1879 she became the president of the National Union. Her work was never-ending. She wrote books; she lectured all over the country. For twelve years she held an average of one meeting a day.

Favors woman suffrage

Miss Willard had seen that unless women had the right to assist in making laws, their cause was hopeless. Accordingly she declared herself in favor of woman suffrage. A few years later the Woman's Christian Temperance Union followed their leader into politics in an effort to encourage temperance legislation.

Women united for the protection of the home

Miss Willard's work constantly became wider. The organization of which she was the head became international in its influence, and the World's Woman's Christian Temperance Union was organized in 1883, with Miss Willard as president. She had united the women of the world in a great league for

the protection of the home. Miss Willard remained to the end of her life president of the World's Woman's Christian Temperance Union. She died in 1898.

CLARA BARTON

From a photograph by Charles E. Smith, Evans

Clara Barton, 1821

223. Clara Barton. Clara Barton was born in 1821, near Oxford, Massachusetts. She was educated to be a school teacher, and for many years followed that profession. In 1861 she visited Washington, and there felt the impulse that led to her great life work.

Nurses the wounded

The injured soldiers from the first battles of the Civil War were being brought to Washington. Miss Barton at once felt it her duty to help in caring for them. She not only nursed the wounded, but she encouraged those who were on the way to the line of battle.

224. Goes to the Battle Field. The men that were being taken to the hospitals received no care until they arrived there. Miss Barton saw that her place was on the battle field.

Constantly in danger

Received no pay

She secured a pass to the firing line, and for four years she followed the Union soldiers. She was constantly in danger; her clothing was pierced by bullets, her face blackened by powder. But she was undaunted. The soldiers needed her, and she must be

there to help them. When she could, she nursed wounded Confederate as well as Federal soldiers. She received no pay for her work.

Red Cross Society in Europe

When the war was over Miss Barton went to Europe. There she learned of the Red Cross Society, founded in Geneva in 1863. The purpose of the society was to care for the wounded of any nation on the field of battle. A treaty among the nations agreed that the Red Cross nurses should be safe from capture. Miss Barton was asked to organize a branch of the Red Cross in the United States.

American Red Cross

In 1882 President Arthur signed the treaty, and the American Red Cross, with Miss Barton as its first president, was established. She continued as president until 1904, when she resigned.

Goes to Armenia

In 1896 Miss Barton went to Armenia at the head of her Red Cross to relieve the suffering caused by the massacres. She saved thousands from starvation and disease.

Again she nobly responded to the call of President McKinley to go to the help of Cuba in the Spanish-American War.

Miss Barton lived to see the Red Cross a world-wide society carrying comfort and cheer to all nations. In

the World War after every great battle the Red Cross nurses worked on the field or in the hospital to lighten the awful sufferings of the wounded.

Work of the society in times of peace

225. The Red Cross Society in Times of Peace. It was Miss Barton's firm belief that the world needed the services of the Red Cross in times of peace as well as in times of war. Accordingly an amendment was made to the Geneva treaty. Local Red Cross societies sprang up in every part of the country. The suffering which followed the great Charleston earthquake, the Galveston flood, forest fires, mine explosions, and all similar accidents found the Red Cross Society on hand with aid and supplies.

The greatest calamity that has befallen our country since the Red Cross was well organized was the burning of San Francisco following the great earthquake of 1906. Five hundred millions in property was destroyed, and two hundred and fifty thousand people were left homeless and without food. The Red Cross alone spent three million dollars in giving aid to the sufferers.

Rural work of the Red Cross

An important new undertaking is the rural work of the Red Cross. This is not limited to health questions, though a nurse is the first person sent into a country. But also if possible another worker is sent to help the

country people with their social problems, their amusements, and the building up of a spirit of neighborhood coöperation.

JANE ADDA

From a recent pho

Jane Addams and the cause of the poor

226. Jane Addams. There was still another great and vital field of service waiting for a leader. This was the cause of a better chance in life for the very poor. A better understanding among all people, rich and poor, and a knowledge of the interests which all have in common are aiding in this. Education, reform of unjust working conditions, and social service—the help or relief of poor or unfortunate people—are all means of progress through which people like Jane Addams have worked.

In 1883 while traveling in Europe, Jane Addams, a daughter of wealthy and distinguished parents, was deeply touched by the terrible poverty and misery she saw everywhere around her. She herself had never known want or hunger. Indeed she had more wealth than she knew how to spend for things she herself needed or cared for.

Devotes herself to social service

She determined to devote herself and her fortune to a fairer distribution of the world's goods and pleasures among those who were always hungry and in want. It was a vast undertaking, but Miss Addams was not dismayed. She hoped that some day the rich and the educated would see that all men are equal and would unite with the unfortunate in one great brotherhood.

Hull House Social Settlement founded

She returned to Chicago, and there with a group of workers established a social settlement in a building in a poor quarter of the city and called it Hull House.

There everyone, however poor, was welcomed. People could come there for advice or help. Through personal influence they were led to become acquainted with the best books, to cultivate their minds, and to meet each other at times for study or social enjoyment.

The settlement a success

Men and women from all parts of the country and from abroad visited Hull House to see what Miss Addams and all her fellow-workers, through personal service, were doing to make the lives of the poor people around them a little brighter and happier. They found Hull House a success. The neighborhood was like a great family whose members sought each other's welfare. They regarded Miss Addams as one of themselves. This was a bit of the human brotherhood of which Miss Addams had dreamed.

Greater opportunities for women

227. What Has Been Accomplished. These great women of whom we have read have worked for the

advancement, not alone of their sex, but of all mankind in the United States and the world over.

Through their efforts great changes have taken place in woman's position. Throughout the country she has a place more equal to man's in the eyes of the law, almost unlimited opportunities in education and business, and whatever openings in public life she proves fitted for. Now looking back, we can see that the greater part of what Elizabeth Cady Stanton and Susan B. Anthony so relentlessly strove for has been gained. Woman suffrage will doubtless soon cause the more backward states to give women full legal rights, and it will also enable women to work more freely for the progress of the nation.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Women shared the hardships and dangers of the early colonists. *2.* They did heroic service during the Revolution and in the later progress of the nation; but they had no legal or political rights. *3.* Leaders arose among the women demanding for their sex the same rights and privileges that men had. *4.* As a girl Elizabeth Cady Stanton became indignant at what she found to be the unequal position of women in almost every walk of life; she resolved to devote her life to the struggle for the rights of women. *5.* In 1848 she called the first woman's rights convention, where she made the first public demand for woman suffrage. *6.* She met Susan B. Anthony, a school teacher, and won her to the cause. *7.* Together they organized the National

Woman's Suffrage Association. *8.* Their great work succeeded in making woman suffrage an election issue in many states. *9.* By 1915 eleven states had been won to woman suffrage; some voting rights had been won in twenty-two other states.

10. Julia Ward Howe was the daughter of wealthy parents and knew little of work. *11.* She began to write poetry early. *12.* When the Civil War broke out Mrs. Howe wanted to be of service to the Union. *13.* She wrote "The Battle Hymn of the Republic," a song that proved a great aid to victory since it cheered the soldiers in the field. *14.* After the war Mrs. Howe established women's clubs in all parts of the country for self-improvement among the women, and for social service.

15. Harriet Beecher Stowe as a girl was apt at writing. *16.* She resolved to use her talent to help the slaves. *17.* *Uncle Tom's Cabin* helped the North to win the victory by uniting the people against slavery. *18.* Frances E. Willard was raised in Wisconsin in frontier days. *19.* In school she stood at the head of her class. *20.* Joined the anti-saloon crusade; became president of the Woman's Christian Temperance Union and later of the National Union. *21.* Declared herself in favor of woman suffrage. *22.* As president of the World's Woman's Christian Temperance Union, Miss Willard united the women of the world in a world union for the protection of the home. *23.* Clara Barton took up the work of nursing after the first battles of the Civil War. *24.* First in the hospitals of Washington,

she finally went to the battle fields in order to give the wounded immediate help. *25.* The Red Cross Society was founded in Europe; a branch was established in the United States by Miss Barton. *26.* Following the great earthquake and fire in San Francisco in 1906, the Red Cross did heroic work in aiding the 250,000 people left homeless and without food.

27. Jane Addams while traveling in Europe was touched by the sight of the poverty and misery everywhere. *28.* She determined to devote herself and her fortune to make better and brighter the lives of the poor. *29.* She established the Hull House Social Settlement in Chicago.

Study Questions. *1.* How did women aid in the progress of the nation? *2.* What did they do during the Revolution? during the Civil War? *3.* What was their position in law and in affairs of government? *4.* Who was the first to champion woman suffrage? *5.* Describe Elizabeth Cady in her girlhood. What was her opinion of boys and girls? *6.* To what did she determine to devote her life? *7.* What was the purpose of the woman's rights convention? *8.* What demand was first publicly made at this convention? *9.* What was Miss Anthony's occupation before she met Mrs. Stanton? *10.* Describe the work of these two women for the cause of woman's rights. *11.* In 1915 how many states had granted women the right to vote? *12.* Why did Julia Ward Howe know so little of work? *13.* What did she like to do? *14.* What sights

did she see in Washington in 1861? *15.* What did she do to serve her country? *16.* How could a song count much for victory? *17.* What was the purpose of women's clubs? *18.* How did Harriet Beecher Stowe serve her country? *19.* What book did she write? What was its effect? *20.* Describe Frances Willard's girlhood, her home, and surroundings. *21.* Why did Miss Willard take up temperance work? *22.* Did Miss Willard work hard for temperance, woman's rights, and protection of the home? What makes you think so? *23.* How did Miss Willard become of international influence? *24.* Where did Clara Barton begin her work of nursing the wounded? *25.* Where did she go then, and why? *26.* Where was the Red Cross Society founded? *27.* What was its purpose? *28.* What great service does it perform in time of peace? *29.* What was the result of the San Francisco earthquake? *30.* How did the Red Cross relieve the distress? *31.* How did the sight of poverty and suffering affect Jane Addams? *32.* What did she determine to do? *33.* What did she establish in Chicago? *34.* What did the Social Settlement accomplish? *35.* Was it a success?

Suggested Readings. Wade, *The Light Bringers*, 64-111, 142-171; Adams, *Heroines of Modern Progress*.

RESOURCES AND INDUSTRIES OF OUR COUNTRY

HOW FARM AND FACTORY HELPED BUILD THE NATION

The great cotton crop of the southern states

228. Cotton Fields and Cotton Factories. Since the days of Eli Whitney cotton has been grown in all the southern states from Virginia westward to Texas, and from the Gulf of Mexico north to Missouri. More than one half of all the cotton in the world is grown in southern United States. High-grade cotton is also grown in California, Arizona, and New Mexico, and California is now one of our leading cotton-producing states.

A field of growing cotton is very picturesque. Its culture employs many laborers. The number of laborers needed, however, is not the same throughout the year. In the fall, when the bolls ripen, all hands, large and small, pick cotton. This work takes several months. Then the picked cotton is put through a gin which is still built along the lines of Whitney's invention. The cleaned cotton is pressed into large bales and is then ready for market.

Cotton-seed oil

The cotton seed goes to one mill, the cotton to

another. For many years the seed was wasted. Farmers burned it or threw it away. But now in all parts of the South great mills crush the seed and make from it a valuable oil. What is left is cotton-seed cake, and is bought eagerly by cattle growers everywhere.

PICKING COT'

From a photog

Cotton mills in

the South

Only a few years ago almost all the cotton grown in the South was shipped away, either to Europe or to New England. In Massachusetts and Rhode Island cotton mills employ more people than any other industry, and great cities are supported almost entirely by manufacturing cotton goods. Now the South has also discovered that it can spin and weave its cotton at home. About many of its waterfalls is heard the hum of busy cotton mills. New cities are growing up, and prosperity has returned to the South.

Wheat belt west of the Mississippi

229. The Grain that Feeds the Nation. From the days of the early colonists, wheat has been one of the most valuable crops produced in this country. In the states east of the Mississippi River the farmers have long raised it in connection with a variety of other crops. But as the newer lands west of this river were taken up, the settlers discovered that in that region wheat yielded more abundantly than any other crop.

From Kansas northward to Minnesota and western Canada lies a broad stretch of land which has cool spring weather and a light rainfall. This is the climate best suited to wheat, and here has developed the great wheat belt of America.

Traction engines

In this region there are vast wheat fields almost everywhere, stretching farther than the eye can see

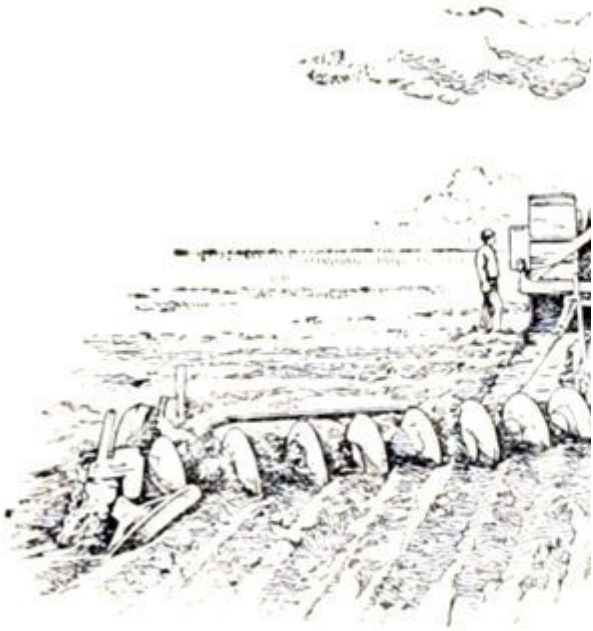
over the level surface. Most of the farms are very large, some of them including many thousands of acres. The work on these places is done with the most modern machines. Traction engines are used to pull the great plows, the largest of which turn fifty furrows at a time. In harvest time an army of reaping and binding machines harvests the golden grain. The harvesting machine and the thresher have also been combined. On some of the greatest farms a huge complex machine makes its way through the standing grain, leaving behind it rows of bags, filled with threshed grain ready for the market.

Grain elevators

With the aid of such machinery a few people can cultivate a great many acres. As a result, the country is thinly settled. The towns are few and far between. In most of them the principal building is the grain elevator, which holds the grain until it is ready to be shipped.

Flour mills

From the elevators the wheat goes to the flour mills. The largest of these are in Minneapolis, in the eastern part of the wheat belt. The flour in its turn goes to feed the many millions of people in all parts of the country.



THE STEAM PLOW AT WORK (

From a photog

Grain exports decrease

For many years this country grew much more wheat than we needed, and we shipped great quantities to Europe. But each year our growing population needs more food, and our exports of this grain decrease steadily. Even now our farms grow but little more of this grain than is needed at home, and the time is almost at hand when we shall no longer send any of it abroad.

Texas and Iowa lead

230. Cattle Raising and Meat Packing. Cattle raising, like wheat farming, is principally an industry of the West. As late as 1850 the states which raised the most cattle lay along the Atlantic coast. But today Texas and Iowa are in the lead, and Kansas and Nebraska follow closely.

Cattle ranches of the West

As the eastern states became peopled more densely, cattle grazing was forced west. The cattle pastures were broken up into fields. The prairies of Illinois and Iowa became a vast cornfield. Eastern Kansas and Nebraska were turned into corn and wheat farms. Always the cattle had to give way to the grain. At last the farmers came to a strip of country where the rainfall was not enough to make grain growing profitable. This comparatively narrow strip stretches north in an irregular area of plains from western Texas to Montana. This region grows fine grass and has become the great grazing country of the United States. Here vast herds of cattle still roam on large ranches and are cared for by cowboys.

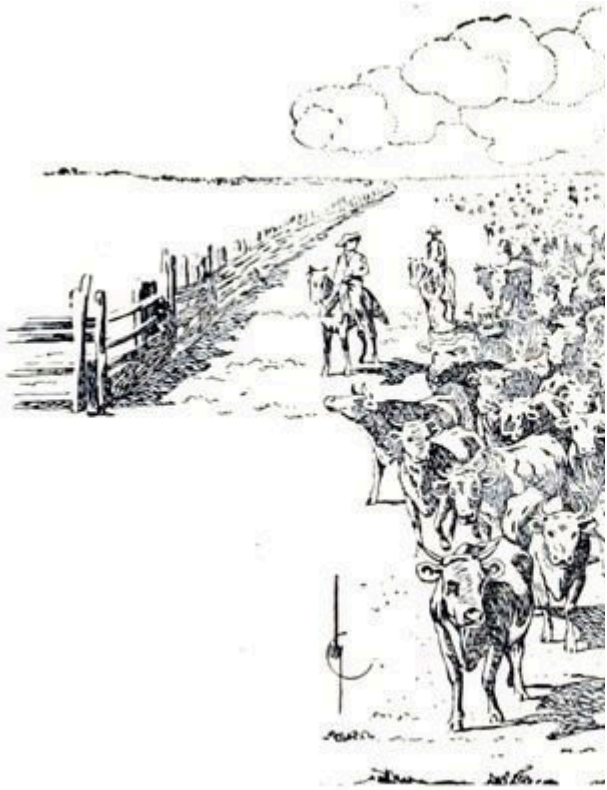
Corn-fed cattle

East of the ranch country lies the corn belt, in which Illinois and Iowa are the leading states. Cattle fatten better on corn than on any other food, and the meat of corn-fed stock brings the best prices.

The corn states have therefore taken up the raising and fattening of cattle on a tremendous scale. When western cattle leave the ranch they are generally not very heavy. Thousands of carloads are shipped into

the corn country each year, there to be fattened before going to the packing houses.

The Department of Agriculture, at Washington, is now taking great pains to induce the boys, especially of the South, to make experiments in corn raising. Some wonderful results have been produced, and the South is in a fair way to take to the raising of corn.



COWBOYS DRIVING CATTLE FROM

From a photog

Invention of

refrigerator cars

The largest meat-packing plants are located in the corn belt at Chicago, Kansas City, Omaha, and other cities. To-day meat packing is the greatest business of Chicago and many other large cities. A generation ago it had scarcely begun. But the packers learned to can meat, to use ice for cold storage, and, most important of all, the refrigerator car was invented.

By this last discovery it became possible to ship meat almost everywhere. Where before the packers had to sell their goods at home, now they have the world as a market. A steer raised on the western prairies may now be fattened for market in Illinois, slaughtered in Chicago, and served in New York, or sent to England or even to the Orient.

MINES, MINING, AND MANUFACTURES

Great value of coal and iron

231. Coal and Iron. Next to the great farm crops, coal and iron are the most valuable products of our country. The coal that is mined in one year is worth five times as much as the gold and silver combined. Our iron mines yield as much wealth in one year as the gold mines do in three. Gold and silver are luxuries without which we could get along, but our great factories, railroads, and steamship lines could not exist without an abundance of iron and coal.

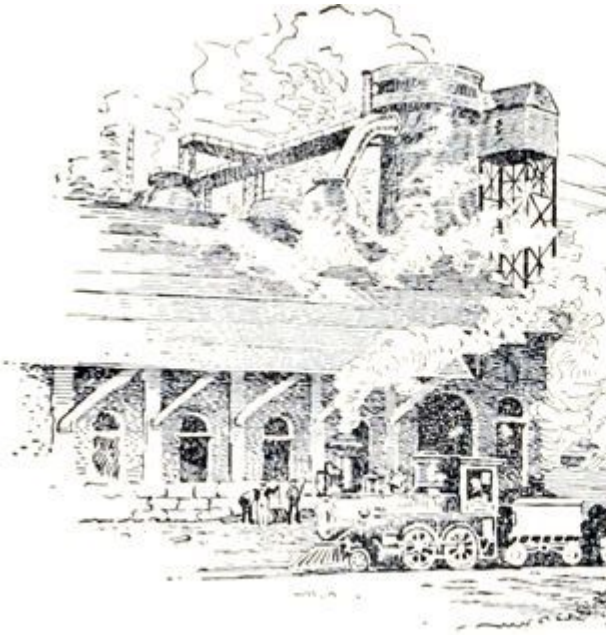
A hundred years ago there was almost no coal mined in this country. Now we use more of it than any other land, and almost a million men make a living by mining it.

Hard coal in Pennsylvania

Factories need coal

At first most of the coal produced was the hard anthracite of eastern Pennsylvania. But this hard coal is found only in one small section of Pennsylvania, whereas great beds of soft coal stretch from

Pennsylvania west to Washington. At present there is far more soft coal used than anthracite. Pennsylvania is the leading state in the production of both hard and soft coal, but West Virginia, Illinois, and Ohio are also great coal states. Generally, where there are productive coal mines, factories have been built, because most of them need a great deal of coal for fuel.



IRON AND STEEL WORKS IN

From a photog

Largest iron-ore deposits in the world

Iron was first worked by the colonists in the bogs of New England. Iron mining, however, did not become a great industry until the latter part of the last century. In that period the great iron "ranges" of Lake Superior were opened up. These are the largest deposits of iron ore in the world.

Carried to the smelters

Most of the ore lies in Minnesota. Here, far up in the northern woods, thousands of men are blasting or digging out the red and rusty ore. Huge steam shovels load a car in a few minutes, and in a short while a trainload of ore is on its way to Duluth or Superior. From there it is carried by steamer east, most likely to one of the Ohio towns on Lake Erie. Here much of the ore is again loaded into cars and hauled to the Pittsburgh region, there to be smelted.

Coal and iron support great industries

Pittsburgh has become the greatest iron and steel center of America. Enormous quantities of coal are mined here and used for smelting the iron ore that is shipped in. More people of western Pennsylvania and eastern Ohio make a living by mining coal and making steel and iron than anywhere else in America. Great blast furnaces melt the iron ore. Steel works turn out huge quantities of rail and sheet steel. Foundries make cast-iron products of all kinds. Vast shops are busily engaged in producing locomotives and machines of endless variety. Everywhere in this

region are smoking chimneys and busy industrial plants, all supported by coal and iron. The southern states, Alabama, the Carolinas, Georgia, and Tennessee, also contain rich stores of coal and iron. These resources were little used during slavery days. Now, however, the southern states are digging coal for use in their great factories and cotton mills, or sending it abroad. Birmingham, Alabama, is one of the great coal and iron centers of the United States.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* The toilers in forest, mine, and factory contributed to the development of our land. *2.* Cotton is grown in all the southern states and from the Atlantic to the Pacific. *3.* A valuable oil is made from the cotton seed. *4.* The climate west of the Mississippi best suited to the raising of wheat. *5.* The work of cultivating and harvesting is done by machines. *6.* Wheat is sent to the flour mills, the largest of which are in Minneapolis. *7.* Exports of wheat decreasing. *8.* Texas and Iowa the leading cattle-raising states. *9.* Cattle from the ranches are fed on corn in the corn states, principally Iowa and Illinois. *10.* The refrigerator car permitted the shipment of meat to all the world. *11.* Coal and iron mined in America worth many times more than the gold and silver. *12.* Hard coal mined in Pennsylvania. *13.* The Lake Superior iron ranges the greatest in the world. *14.* Pittsburgh is the greatest iron and steel center of America.

Study Questions. *1.* Describe the process of preparing cotton for the market. *2.* What is done with the cotton seed? *3.* What is the South preparing to do with the cotton crop? *4.* Where is the wheat belt of America? *5.* How is the wheat cultivated and harvested? *6.* Describe the progress of the wheat from the field to its use as food. *7.* What are the leading cattle-raising states? *8.* Where and how are the herds fattened? *9.* What was the effect of the invention of the refrigerator car? *10.* How does the value of coal and iron mined in America compare with the gold and silver? *11.* Where is anthracite or hard coal mined? *12.* Where was iron first mined? *13.* Where is the largest deposit in the world? *14.* Where is the great iron and steel center of America? *15.* Give a list of all the things you can think of that are made out of iron.

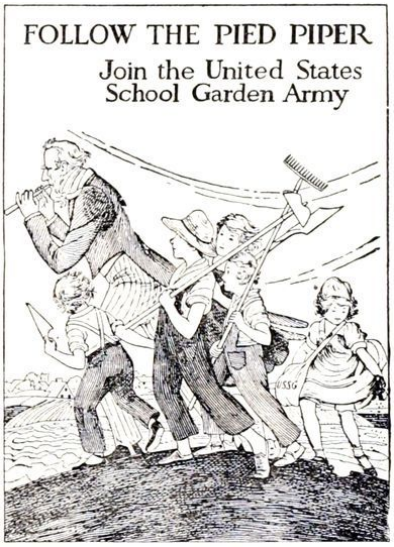
Suggested Readings. INDUSTRIES: Fairbanks, *The Western United States*, 215-290; Brooks, *The Story of Cotton*; Shillig, *The Four Wonders (Cotton, Wool, Linen, and Silk)*; Brooks, *The Story of Corn*.

AMERICA AND THE WORLD WAR

EARLY YEARS OF THE WAR

The hero of the World War

232. A War of All the People. We have been studying in this history the lives of America's greatest men and women, and the ways they have served their country. But in the last great part of American history, the World War, what counted most was the loyalty of every one of the people to a free government, and their willingness to fight and work unitedly for its safety. The plain, everyday American is our hero in this chapter.



A WAR GARDEN POSTER

In the "Food Will Win the War" campaign posters urged all make gardens

The war was so big that if each citizen had not done his bit, Germany might have conquered. The work of shipping boards and directors of fuel supply was less important than the work done by ordinary people. Much was done to win the war in the homes of each boy and girl in the United States as well as on the battlefields of France. Every member of the family found things he could do without to help buy more Liberty bonds. Boy Scouts sold bonds and thrift stamps. Girls worked to get food-card pledges. Mothers planned the meals carefully to save the wheat, meat, and sugar that had to be sent across to our army. Brothers and fathers had to answer the draft call and go to training camps if necessary. Not only must food and money, gasoline and coal, be saved, but everyone who could not fight overseas was expected to do some useful work.

With one hundred million people in the country, we might think it would not make any difference if we let someone else do our part. But this was not the spirit of America. For the most part, each person himself felt that this was *his* war, fought for *his* rights and for *his* aims. And because for the most part each person acted as if success depended on him, Europe was amazed at America's swiftness in getting ready to fight.

America by tradition aloof

The United States did not decide to enter this war

until it had been going on nearly three years, for its people had come from nations fighting on opposite sides. Besides, war had always been a common happening in Europe, and the United States had always tried to keep its hands free. Washington and Jefferson and later Monroe had advised that we should only be "interested spectators" of quarrels abroad.

The powers involved

233. A World at Arms. The outbreak of the war surprised the world by its suddenness. The heir to the throne of Austria, Archduke Ferdinand, was murdered in June, 1914. Austria blamed Serbia for the murder. When Serbia would not agree to all that was demanded of her, Austria at once declared war. The largest nations of Europe were united in two groups. Germany took up Austria's quarrel; Russia, France, and England combined to oppose Germany. Italy was bound to defend Germany and Austria if they should be attacked, but now believed they were the attacking nations, and later came in against them. Bulgaria and Turkey threw in their lot with Germany and Austria, these four nations forming the Central Powers, and Japan and Roumania with the Allies, as the nations opposing them were called.

Invasion of Belgium

Germany's first act was to rush her troops across the borders of Belgium, straight toward Paris. Belgium, of course, was too small a state to stand against the armies of her stronger neighbors. On this account the

great nations of western Europe had agreed never to invade Belgium, and now England felt bound to go to her defense.

Events at sea

British, French, and Belgian soldiers, fighting in whatever order they could, checked the on-coming masses of Germans. The Allies stopped them at the Battle of the Marne, far within France. On the sea England's mighty navy quickly put an end to all German shipping. She kept the German navy from venturing even into the North Sea. But German submarines could not be so easily blocked up, and slipped out and sunk Allied vessels.

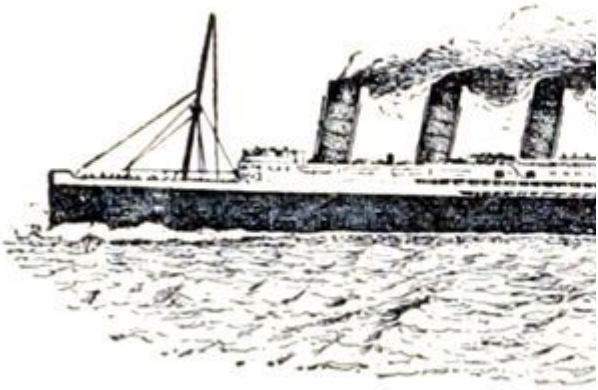
Opinion favors the Allies

234. The American Government Neutral. When Germany first attacked Belgium, some people believed that the United States should break off relations with her at once. Our government declared itself neutral. President Wilson asked the people to be friendly in their dealings with all the nations at war. But Germany's headlong haste in declaring war, and her methods of waging it made most Americans anxious for the success of the Allies.

Germany protests

The European countries were too busy fighting to raise all the food or forge all the guns their armies needed. They were producing these things on a very

great scale, but had to buy vast quantities besides. The United States was the country best able to supply them. The great steel factories of the country worked night and day making shells, tanks, and war material of all kinds. Since England controlled the seas, everything we made went to the Allies. Germany protested strongly against our supplying her enemies with the means to fight her. But America, not being at war, had a right to trade with all countries. To give up this right would have been to take sides with Germany. American merchants were willing to manufacture goods for Germany, but she could not send ships to get them.



THE LUSITA

235. Disputes with England and Germany. Our government had a just cause of complaint against England. Her acts were not always strictly lawful. She stopped our ships on the high seas and searched them, destroying mail which she thought was intended for Germany. When the United States objected, she promised to make good all losses.

The Lusitania

Germany, on the other hand, not only destroyed American goods but American lives. One of the two largest passenger ships ever built, the *Lusitania*, was sunk by a German submarine on May 7, 1915. Over one hundred Americans went down. Again there was a great cry that Germany should be punished. But President Wilson made every possible effort for peace. He gave Germany a chance to prove that she did not mean to continue such lawlessness. Finally Germany promised to take Americans off the ships to be sunk. In spite of her pledge Germany failed to change her methods. New notes protesting and more ships sunk was the order of things for almost two years.

A peace-loving nation

President Wilson was severely criticized for this "warfare of notes." But many people were not yet convinced that this was different from other European wars. Otherwise Congress, which like the President is the servant of the people, might have declared war sooner. The country was peace-loving, and far away from roaring guns and ruined towns of Europe. In a way it is to the credit of the American people that they were slow to believe in the world-wide plots of the Kaiser, and the reported cruelty of his soldiers.

United support of war essential

236. The Need of a United Nation. President Wilson sought to be a true public servant, by listening to the opinions of people throughout the land. He did not try to lead the nation into war while the feelings of the people were still divided. A divided people could have done little in this gigantic war.

His training made him able to understand the temper of the American people well. He was a student of history, and the author of well-known books on the American government.

Wilson's boyhood

President Wilson's boyhood was much like that of any other boy. In his classes he was neither brilliant nor slow. He took part in all regular school sports, and at Davidson College once saved the day for his team in baseball. Later at Princeton and Johns Hopkins, two of the most famous eastern universities, he studied history and economics. At the age of twenty-three he began a book called *Congressional Government*, which shows his command of words and thorough knowledge of his subject.

WOODROW WILSON

Governor of New Jersey

He had tried practicing law, but did not make a success of it and decided to be a teacher. In this he is like many other Americans who have failed in their first undertaking, and have later been successful in a different line. He taught first at Bryn Mawr, a woman's college near Philadelphia, then at Wesleyan, the old Methodist university, then at Princeton. "Princeton, Trenton, Washington"—Wilson's career has been jokingly summed up, for he was in turn chosen president of Princeton, governor of New Jersey, whose capital Trenton is, and President of the United States. On the whole, his record at Princeton and Trenton, and as President during his first term, was that of a liberal and fearless chief. The elections of 1916 came at a critical time and President Wilson was reëlected partly because "he kept us out of war." Banners with this motto on them were largely used in the campaign. The American nation did not have that "warlike spirit" of loving war for war's sake which the Kaiser boasted of in his people.

A Mexican Crisis

In 1913 Mexico had been so upset that it looked as though the United States might be drawn into a clash with her. President Wilson avoided this except when our soldiers landed at Vera Cruz for a short time. Later General John J. Pershing was sent down to Mexico to punish Villa and his outlaw bands. He killed many of Villa's followers, but the wily old fox himself escaped.

Germany's lawless acts

After the *Lusitania* was sunk, the submarine warfare grew more widespread and reckless month by month. In January, 1917, Germany openly declared that in the future she would not limit this warfare by any rules whatever. She aimed to cut off all supplies from Great Britain and to starve her people. She gave America one little port among the British Isles where the United States might send her passengers and commerce. Secret agents of the Central Powers had been blowing up factories in the United States, and purchasing newspapers to defend the German cause. Their treacherous acts had already caused President Wilson to dismiss the German ambassador.

Germany's statement that hereafter her submarines would know no law at last proved to all the nation that America could not honorably remain out of the war.

AMERICA ENTERS TO WIN

Loans to the Allies

237. Congress Votes Billions. Congress voted billions of money to be spent in various ways, and President Wilson loaned millions of dollars to England, France, and Italy. They in turn sent great men to talk with those who were managing our war preparations.

Never did a nation given to peace turn so quickly to war. Thousands of Americans in Europe had already been taking part for years. Some had joined the Canadian army or the Lafayette Squadron, part of the French air service. Others were working under the Red Cross or the American Committee for the Relief of Belgium.

Hoover as food administrator

Other measures necessary to "mobilize" the nation were quickly passed. The railroads were put under the control of a director-general of railroads, who ran them first of all in the service of the army. A fuel administrator decided what factories and businesses were most necessary in the war and in the life of the nation. Others had to limit their use of coal, or to close down entirely for a short time. Herbert Hoover, head of the great committee which had charge of

feeding the starving people of Belgium, was made food administrator. On one hand, he decided how much food whole nations could buy of us. On the other, he helped American housewives plan their daily meals to save the wheat, meat, and fat that were needed for the soldiers, because food would "win the war."

An army of millions

238. The Selective Draft. Millions of soldiers would have been America's share of the Allied fighting forces if the war had gone on longer. Congress decided that a "Selective Draft" would be the most fair and just method of raising these millions. All men between the ages of twenty-one and thirty, and later between nineteen and forty-five, had to be examined by "Draft Boards," and the proper number selected.

Great training camps built

Immense training camps were built, with railroad lines, electric light and water systems, and all the needs of a modern city. Many of these camps sprang up in a few months, ready to take care of fifty thousand men apiece.

239. The War's Nameless Heroes. All these great preparations at home were more businesslike than they were stirring and warlike. They meant a great change in the life of the whole nation. Workers were shifted from all kinds of small, unimportant peace-time tasks to a few gigantic businesses on which the

success of the war depended. All the efforts of the nation were centered on saving goods, time, and money, and producing goods to carry on the war.

Not a war of great names

The "home front" did not give great honors to those who held it. But the war was fought to preserve the rights of free citizens, and it had the nearly united support of a whole people. There are few famous names in the fighting abroad, and few, too, at home. It was a war in which the average man was the hero. He did not expect medals for doing his duty in battle, or a high salary for doing his duty at home. But he did it, and unbelievable deeds were accomplished—fleets built, factories multiplied, waste lands planted, two million men sent across the seas, and the war brought to a swift end.

The Burial of an "Unknown Warrior"

England had a great state funeral not long ago. It rivaled in ceremony the honors paid to dead queens and kings. Throngs followed the great procession to Westminster Abbey, where England's famous dead of all time are buried. A tablet was placed above the tomb of a hero whom a nation united to give its highest honors. The name on that tablet was "To an Unknown Warrior." In America, too, the deeds of the great number, in battle or at home, will always be nameless.

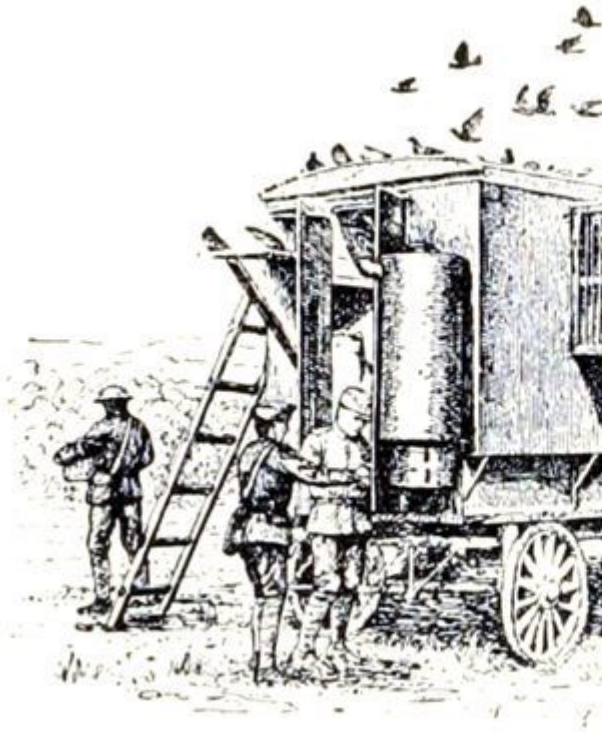
The spirit

of heroism needed in peace

If each person, instead of looking straight ahead at the task to be done, had looked to see who else could do it, America's war program would have failed. It has been said that in a great nation any one person, by himself, is lost, and does not count. The chapter in American history just ended proves that when his country is in danger, each citizen can and must act as if the result depended on him. This spirit of patriotism among millions of those whom history will call nameless heroes brought victory in the war, and if it is still followed in peace, will bring "victories no less renowned."

An unparalleled war

240. The World's Greatest War. The war of 1914-1918 is the greatest history has ever known, because of the number of nations in it, the number of lives lost, the cost in goods and money, and the changes it has made among nations.



CARRIER PIGEONS, A MEANS OF COM

A record in shipbuilding

Its size is too vast for any one mind to picture it fully. The front-line trenches, with all their turns and twists, were six hundred miles long, nearly equal to the straight distance from Philadelphia to Chicago. Mountains of material had to be sent across to keep our soldiers well fed and warmly clothed, and furnished with the cannon and shells they must have to meet the enemy. Only about two out of three men in the army could fight, for the third man had to

keep these mammoth quantities of supplies steadily moving toward the front. Ships were the thing our government needed most, since it was fighting so far away from home. American shipyards grew so rapidly that they broke all records for number of ships launched and swiftness in building them. The United States soon led the world in shipbuilding for this war.

The War Department was so anxious to keep our men warm and comfortable that it bought up all the wool in the country. The army had to have thirty-five million more pairs of woolen socks than were made for the whole nation in 1914. It used more woolen blankets in one year than the one hundred million people in the United States buy in two ordinary years.

Attacks carefully planned

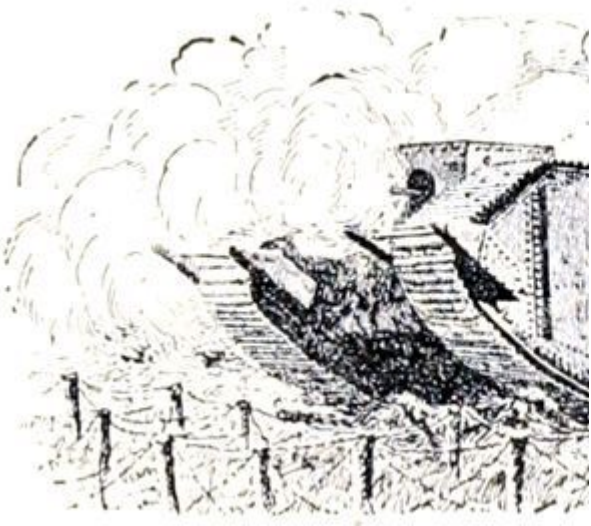
241. A War of Science. Every movement in the war had to be planned as exactly as possible. This was a war of science, rather than a war of dashing adventure, as those in the past had been. Before attacks were made on the enemy, a barrage, or curtain-like rain of shells, was turned on his lines. This "curtain of fire" moved forward at a fixed rate, and the men walked behind it. They had strict orders to go only so many yards a minute, or their own guns would kill them.

Use of poison gas

Poison gas was one of the new weapons of this war. It caused almost one-third of our losses in 1918.

Science produced new gases so rapidly that inventors had to be continually making new gas masks to strain out the deadly fumes. Over thirty kinds of gas were used during the war.

No one commander could be present at once on every part of the hundreds of miles of battle-lines, or even a small part of them. The war had to be carried on largely by telephone. The Americans strung one hundred thousand miles of wire in France.



THE TANK, A NEW WEAP

Pershing trained for his work

242. Pershing Heads the Army. The youngest of American generals, John Joseph Pershing, was put at the head of the American forces. The choice of Pershing was hailed everywhere as a wise one. A war so immense and mechanical needed a general who had studied the art of war thoroughly, as Pershing

had. He had seen much actual fighting, and was the only American general who had commanded a division in actual war. He carried with him the love and respect of all national guardsmen. They would have followed him anywhere he wished to lead.

From a Photograph by Clinedinst

JOHN J. PERSHING

We have already heard how he had routed Villa's bandits in Mexico. He had also led a charge of colored troops against the Spaniards in Cuba, and had conquered a powerful savage tribe in the Philippines. Before he was sent to Mexico he had been governor of a province in the Philippines for four years.

Fights squarely

243. A Boy Who Was Made of Fighting Stuff. As a boy, Pershing was brave and modest, with the ability to stay by a hard task until he finished it. John was a hardy, active boy. He played at mimic war and attended school. He played "hookey," and got into fights with his fellows, but he was square. One day the father saw the signs of battle-torn clothes and a bruised face. "Been fighting? Never let any boy say that he has licked you," was the father's remark. John had expected a whipping.

At day school he was a plodder. But he did win a prize, a nicely bound volume of the *Life of Washington*. This was offered by the president of the school board. John's mother was there. The children clapped and called for a speech. "I'm sorry you didn't all win a prize. I'm going to grow up like Washington," he said.

Studies at West Point

In the 70's, when times were bad, John had to help earn the family living, and he did it by teaching

some of the hardest schools in the district. He took the examinations for West Point when he was twenty, and defeated his friend. "I'm sorry you could not win too," he said. At the end of his first year at West Point he was made class leader, a position won only by hard study.

Made a general by Roosevelt

After he graduated from West Point, honors and promotions came fast. Roosevelt had passed by eight hundred and sixty-two older officers to make him a brigadier general. At the beginning of the war he was major general, and later Congress promoted him to the full rank of general, a very rare honor, and the highest in its power to give.

Arrival in France

When Pershing, with a few officers and engineers first landed in France the news spread quickly. "The Americans have come." Their arrival meant that the United States would soon take part in the fighting in earnest. New life and fresh resolution came into the hearts of the war-tired veterans of France.

Germany's last great effort

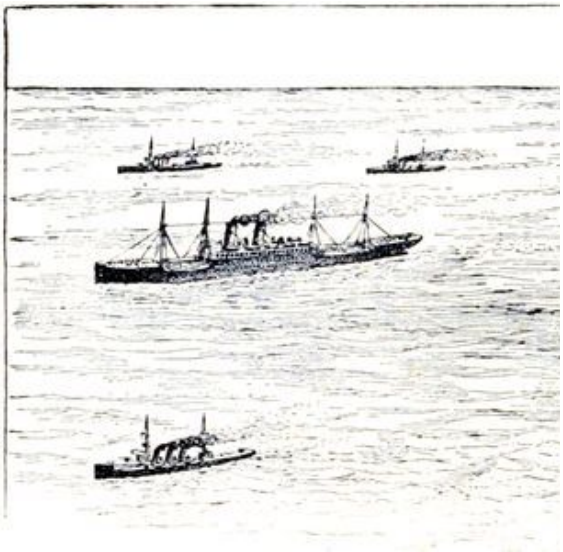
244. The Great Danger in 1918. Russia had fought bravely for the Allies at the beginning of the war, but about the time the United States entered, a revolution drove the Czar from his throne. Russia was so upset by the revolution that after a year it

gave up trying to keep its army at the front, and made peace with Germany. Hundreds of thousands of German soldiers were thus left free to attack the Allies in the west. Germany thought that if she could succeed in taking Paris before many Americans arrived in the trenches, the war would be won. It was her last chance to win.

THE CONCLUSION OF THE WAR

Need of a united front

245. Foch the Allied Supreme Commander. Before the spring of 1918 each of the Allied armies had been acting on its own plan. The places where the trenches of two armies came together were, of course, the weakest, and were favorite points for German attacks. It was now decided to have one commander for all the Allied forces. Foch, a French general highly skilled in the science of war, was chosen for this great task.



TRANSPORTS CARRYING AMERICAN TROO

The German advance

246. The Crisis of the War. In their great drive the Germans always struck at the weakest point. They found this where the French and English armies were joined. They drove forward in mass formations or solid blocks. Thousands upon thousands were mowed down by the English and French guns, but on they came. Back, back the Allies fell, day after day, until the Germans reached the Marne again. The world held its breath. Each day the Germans were expected to break through, but each day the Allied troops retreated. Slowly they moved, fighting like demons and always holding at vital points.

American troops scattered along the front

America was eager to be of the greatest possible help in the grave danger to Paris and France. The Allies were short of reserves. General Pershing, putting his own honors second in the same generous way he had done at school, decided to scatter the Yankee troops all through the French and British lines, wherever they were needed.

Rushing troops to France

Germany had sneered at our nation because she thought our people were so devoted to dollars that we could not or would not fight. Now she began to

learn how high the war spirit flamed in the soldiers we were preparing to send by millions to France. By the help of England's great fleet, we were able to send over more than a million men by the summer of 1918. The American troops then formed a united army, fighting under their own flag. They took over a hundred miles of the front, relieving tired Frenchmen. Another million arrived by November.

The Allied command gave Pershing command of the region between the Aisne and the Marne. The Germans thought the Americans untried, and expected to break through by using their best "shock troops."

The battle of Château-Thierry

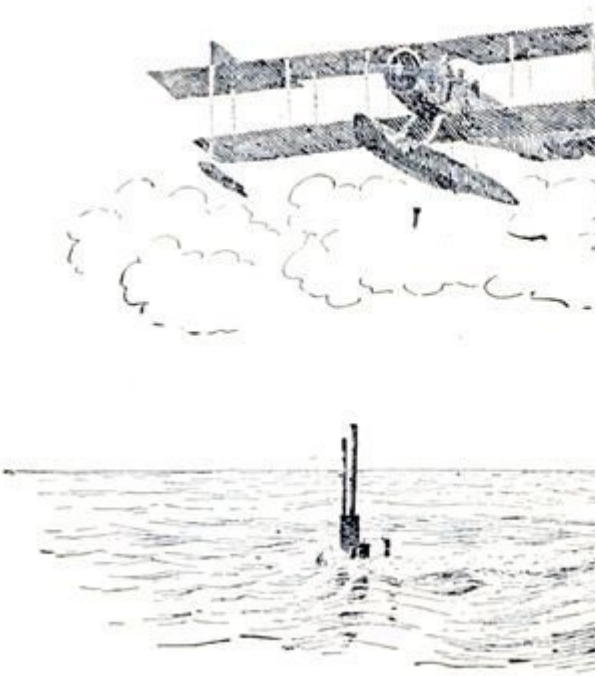
In July the Germans struck a terrific blow at Château-Thierry. Without waiting for artillery, Pershing struck, and in six hours had captured as much ground as the Germans had spent six days in getting possession of. The Americans were advancing with great rapidity. The Germans were dumbfounded. They did not have time to remove their supplies.

The turning point of the war

By the brilliant generalship of Foch the great German attack was stopped in the middle of July, and after that it was the German army which was in danger.

Now Pershing got ready for St. Mihiel. He drew from

the French and English ranks the Americans he had sent to learn war from these veterans. Now he also had tried men. St. Mihiel was important. It threatened the famous battlefield of Verdun and protected the great German fortified city of Metz.



SUBMARINE PURSUED

American victory at St. Mihiel

247. Germans Cry "Kamerad." On September 12 the Americans burst forth in a rain of shot and shell such as the Germans had seldom before witnessed. The fierce battle raged for four hours. The Americans then charged across the river yelling like demons.

The German soldiers had been taught to despise these "green American troops." But these same Germans now cried "Kamerad" in dead earnest. Five miles of ground were gained before these "green" Americans halted.

The next day our artillery opened fire at 1:30 in the morning. Before the day was done, more than one hundred and fifty square miles of German territory were in our possession.

Both the French and the English were busy. The French were driving at the center of the great line stretching from the North Sea to Switzerland. The English were driving the Germans out of the Belgian cities.

The greatest American battle

248. Battle of the Argonne. Many large battles were fought by the Americans, besides the smaller clashes that occurred. The greatest one was in the Argonne Forest. This was a half-mountainous, woody country, much of which was covered with underbrush. The Germans had fortified it strongly. Besides their great cannon, they had filled the Argonne with nests of machine guns, placing them in gullies and behind trees, stumps, and rocks, for protection. Here too, they had their best fighting men.

The battle started on September 26. This was the most bloody fighting of the war. Companies and regiments were cut off and lost for a time. The Germans were bound to hold the forest, and the

Americans were bound to win it. Gradually the Germans were forced back, thousands were captured, and thousands more were killed. They could not stem the American tide. After many days of hard fighting in which the Americans proved themselves fully equal to the best shock troops of the German army, victory fell to the better army.

Allied victories on all fronts

The storm was just breaking loose on Germany. The combined navy of the Allies was choking out her life in spite of the submarines. The English in Asia were capturing the strongholds of the Turks, and the Italians now were gaining against the Austrians. Calamities came fast. Bulgaria, an ally of Germany, surrendered. Turkey followed. The hungry people of Germany began to plot revolution against their rulers, and the armies were retreating toward the Rhine.

249. The Kaiser Runs Away. Seeing that his cause was lost, the German ruler, the Kaiser, gave up his throne and fled to Holland. The German generals agreed to an armistice November 11, 1918, by which they gave up much fighting material and moved back many miles across the Rhine into their own land.

The bravery of ordinary men

250. American Soldiers in Battle. The American doughboys were splendid fighters. The officers had

to check the rash daring of their men, they did not need to urge them forward. The Americans were drilled in methods of attack rather than defense, from the start. A joking comment was made that it took only half as long to train American troops as it did others, because they only had to be taught to go one way.

The ordinary American showed what courage lay behind the quiet round of his peace-time life. Our soldiers were clean and full of high spirits, and they were keyed to the most stubborn efforts by knowing that they were not fighting in a selfish cause. They "fraternized" famously with the French children of the villages.

Work of the Peace Conference

251. The Treaty of Peace. After the armistice, the nations which had won the victory planned to meet at Paris to make a treaty of peace. President Wilson went over to France to take part in this meeting.

The men who made the peace treaty gave France her two states, Alsace and Lorraine, which Germany had taken in the war of 1870. They divided Austria into a number of separate states, giving to each kind of people its own government. They took land from Germany and Russia and created Poland. They also decided that Germany should pay Belgium and France for the destruction of property in those countries.

Opinion favors a League

Why the League was defeated

252. America and the League of Nations. Included in the treaty was an agreement called the League of Nations. Its purpose was to combine all nations, great and small, in a covenant which would work for the peace of the world. The need of a league was urged by men of different parties in this country during the war. A great number of Americans were in favor of such a world agreement. This country had always been a peace-loving people, and had fought in the hope that this would be a war to end war. But after the armistice Europe remained more unsettled than anyone had expected. In spite of all the treaties, wars of various kinds continued in Europe. President Wilson toured the country speaking for the League, but met much opposition. The American people came to believe that under the League they would be too closely bound up with European affairs, which were now so disturbed.

In 1920 the question of entering the League in its original form was widely debated. It was the chief point on which the presidential election turned, and the result was overwhelmingly against the League as it had been drawn up at Paris.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* This war was so great that it needed the support of every American citizen. *2.* People at home had to do without many things needed by the army and by the

Allies. *3.* Nearly all the great powers of Europe were drawn into the war. *4.* Germany, contrary to treaty, invaded Belgium. *5.* The German navy was quickly driven from the seas, and Germany was blockaded. *6.* The American government remained neutral, but most of its people favored the Allies. *7.* Germany sank the *Lusitania* and other vessels illegally. *8.* President Wilson did not lead the nation into war until the people were unitedly in favor of it. *9.* When Germany declared that her submarines would obey no law, and the United States entered the war. *10.* Congress voted billions of dollars for war. *11.* A selective draft raised a great national army. *12.* The part of the average man in this war stands out more than that of famous leaders. *13.* This was a war of science, and by far the greatest war in history. *14.* Pershing was given command of the American army. *15.* When Russia withdrew from the war Germany used her extra troops for a final great attack. *16.* Foch was put in command of all the Allied armies, and turned the Germans back. *17.* The United States sent more than two million men in all overseas. *18.* The peace treaty changed many boundary lines. *19.* Americans wished to uphold world peace, but in the election of 1920 defeated the League of Nations as it stood.

Study Questions. *1.* Name some of the things that were done in American homes to win the war. *2.* Why did everyone wish to do his part? *3.* Why was the United States so

late in entering the war? *4.* Make a list of the principal countries that took part in the World War. *5.* What was the importance of the invasion of Belgium? *6.* Give the story of the war at sea. *7.* What disputes occurred between the United States and the different warring countries before 1917? *8.* Tell briefly Wilson's life before he became President. *9.* How did Germany's treatment of the United States lead to war? *10.* How did the United States "mobilize" for war? *11.* What means were used to raise a national army? *12.* What was done to take care of these millions of men? *13.* What did the United States need most at the start? *14.* Why was this "a war of science"? *15.* What training had Pershing had for his new position? *16.* Tell some events of Pershing's boyhood. *17.* What was the great danger in 1918? *18.* Give a number of reasons why a supreme commander for the Allied armies was needed. *19.* What action of General Pershing's reminds you of the boy, John Pershing? Why? *20.* Tell about the battle of Château-Thierry; of St. Mihiel; of the Argonne. *21.* What events led up to Germany's surrender? *22.* Who in your opinion was the real hero of this war? *23.* What did the Peace Conference do? *24.* Do you think we should enter a world league of nations?

Suggested Readings. Rand McNally's *School Atlas of Reconstruction*; Perry, *Our Navy in the War*, 170-175.

WHERE THE AMERICAN PEOPLE AND THEIR CIVILIZATION CAME FROM

INTRODUCTION

First settlers from a built-up Europe

253. Why Boys and Girls Should Know about Europe. In the part of the book just studied, you have become acquainted with men and women who have been great American leaders. Did you ever stop to think that the early settlers in this country, from whom most of our great men sprang, came from countries in Europe already built up? What the settlers gave to this country they got from people who had lived a long time ago. Therefore in many ways their habits and institutions were different from ours now. They had their own ways of living, their own schools, churches, and forms of government.

The rulers

In most European countries kings and queens ruled the people. Next to the king stood the lords, who were great men and owned acres and acres of land. They had their own soldiers and many servants to do their work and to wait on them.

From an early 14th ce

SERFS OF THE MID

The serfs

Below the lords, who spent their time in war, in the chase, and in going to see play-battles, called mock-fights, were the common people. In some countries these people were not free, as you are, but lived in huts in small villages on the great man's land. They had to work on his land, and were only a little better off than slaves. These people were called serfs.

In the few large cities there lived at that time rich merchants who traded in slaves, or went on long journeys to buy and sell their wares. In the cities, too, lived workers in wool, cotton, brass, iron, wood, and other materials. After a time the workers of a given class gathered into a sort of union called a guild, to protect themselves.

The roots of our civilization

But in neither country nor city did the common man have the many rights and privileges he has now-a-days in America.

These people, so different from us, got their habits and their ways of doing things from still older nations in Asia, in Africa and in Europe.

THE OLDEST NATIONS

254. Egypt, the Land of the Nile and the Pyramids. Egypt has always been a land of curious things. It lies across the Mediterranean, southeast of Europe. It is a land of sunshine day after day. Were it not for the Nile River, it would be a part of the Great Sahara Desert. Every year for ages, the Nile has risen in a great flood and its waters have spread out over Egypt. In coming down from their mountain home these waters carry rich earth which they spread over a part of Egypt. The result is that Egypt, in an early day, became the garden spot for nations less favored.

Egypt in Bible times

Many of you can recall the Bible story of Joseph's brethren who were sent down into Egypt to buy corn because there was a famine in their land. Thanks to the Nile, there was plenty of corn in Egypt. The people of Egypt were among the first of the world's farmers and gardeners of which history has any record.

Carrying the waters of the Nile to the land

255. Irrigation Systems of the Egyptians. In a great many parts of western United States where

little rain falls, how do farmers and gardeners get water for their plants? "Irrigation" is the word that tells the story. The Egyptians taught the people of the world how to save water for irrigation by building great dams in the Nile. This water they carried in ditches throughout the land so that the thirsty crops would have the moisture they needed for growing.

THE PYRAMIDS OF GIZEH

The tombs of the kings

256. Egypt Ruled by Kings. For several thousand years Egypt was ruled by kings. The most famous of these rulers was a great warrior called Rameses II. He built great tombs or monuments called "pyramids." These were built out of huge blocks of stone much larger than any now used in buildings. For many years he had the common man or the slave

doing this work for him.

The Bible tells us about Moses, who became a great leader among the Israelites. The Israelites were slaves to the kings of Egypt. Moses led them forth from Egypt to escape the hard tasks of one of their kings.

257. What the Egyptians Gave to Other Nations. Among the Egyptians there were great students for that early time. A few men among them studied the stars and learned about the movements of the heavenly bodies. In arithmetic they could count up to millions. They could weave cloth, cut jewels, and make most beautiful objects out of glass.

Egyptian hieroglyphics

But above all the Egyptians could write. Not as we do, of course, but they used letters, not rude pictures as seen in most early writings. Scholars have named the characters used in writing by Egyptians and other ancient peoples "hieroglyphics."

258. Babylon and Nineveh. Asia, too, had early peoples. Perhaps some of them were older than the Egyptians. There lived in southwestern Asia, in the valleys of the Tigris and Euphrates rivers, two mighty nations whose chief cities were Babylon and Nineveh.

The hanging gardens of Babylon

Babylon on the Euphrates was a splendid city. It had great walls to protect it against enemy nations. Its

hanging gardens were the wonders of the ancient world.

To the north, on the banks of the Tigris, lay the great city of Nineveh. The fierce kings of Nineveh conquered many nations and forced them to pay tribute.

In this region, nature furnished the kings no building stone such as was found in Egypt. But they made their homes and their palaces out of sun-dried brick. This soft material, as the years rolled on, fell into decay, and now men can find the ruins of these wonderful cities only by digging where they lay.

How the Babylonians wrote

The Babylonians did their writing upon bricks or clay tablets before they dried them. They had their own way of writing, using a sharp piece of metal for making wedged-shaped lines instead of letters. They used a sort of picture-writing too, making rude cuts of birds, animals, and man. On these clay tablets, buried centuries ago, we may read the stories of what they did and how they lived.

Phœnician	Old Greek	Roman
∝	A	A
ϱ	B	B
⊃	C	<C
Δ	▷D	D
∃	E	E
日H	EH	H
ϟ	K	K
⌊	L	⌊L
ϖ	M	M
ϒ	N	N
O	O	O
φ	Q	QQ
ϱ	PR	R
W	≳S	≳S
ϯ	T	T

TYPES OF EARLY ALPHABETS

259. How Jews and Phoenicians Helped Mankind. Along the eastern end of the Mediterranean lies Palestine, which was conquered

by the Jews early in their history, and became their home. The Jews as a people interest us because they have given us our religious ideas. They have never been a warlike nation, but at times they could fight. David was one of their great kings, and Solomon another.

During long years this people has held faithful and true to the idea of one God. Although the Jews were driven from Palestine and scattered among the nations of the world they have never given up their religion. They have always looked forward to the time when they might return to Jerusalem and set up a Jewish nation once more. As a result of the World War that time seems to have come.

Phoenicians helped to advance learning

The Phoenicians were akin to the Jews. They lived near the Jews on the Mediterranean and were a sea-going people, the traders of that early time. In their ships, driven by oar and sail, they braved the dangers of the Atlantic and reached Spain and England. To these people must be given the credit of carrying to the Greeks and Romans much of the learning of Egypt and Asia. To the Phoenicians also belongs the honor and fame of inventing an alphabet much like the one we have to-day, although with fewer letters.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* The first settlers in America came from old and well-established

countries in Europe. *2.* Their ways of living were very different from ours. *3.* The classes of people were very different from those we have. *4.* Egypt the oldest nation. *5.* What the Nile does for Egypt. *6.* What Egypt taught the world. *7.* Babylon and Nineveh, the early cities of Asia. *8.* How they differed from Egypt. *9.* How Egypt, Babylon, and Nineveh recorded their deeds. *10.* What the Jews were noted for. *11.* Who were great among them? *12.* How the World War has changed the hope of some Jews. *13.* The Phoenicians were celebrated for carrying trade and learning. *14.* They also invented the alphabet.

Study Questions. *1.* Name the different classes of people in Europe. *2.* What would have happened if a great lord had carried his people to America in an early day? *3.* Make a list of useful things that the Egyptians knew. *4.* How do you imagine we know about the ancient cities of Babylon and Nineveh? *5.* Why did they use brick? *6.* Why is it better to use letters than pictures in writing?

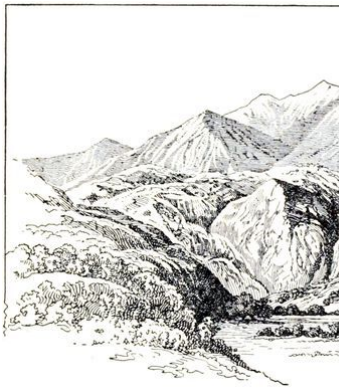
Suggested Readings. Dopp, *The Tree Dwellers*; *The Early Cave-men*; *The Later Cave-men*; *The Early Sea People*; *Stories of Ancient Peoples*; Ragozin, *A History of the World*, Vol. I. Earliest Peoples; Retold from *St. Nicholas*, Stories of the Ancient World, 3-52, 69-77, 92-124; Mace-Tanner, *Old Europe and Young America*, 14-24.

GREECE, THE LAND OF ART AND FREEDOM

260. Greece, a Beautiful Land. Among the countries of the ancient world Greece was the one bright spot where men had the right to think and act for themselves.

The geography of Greece

Greece is a small peninsula in southeastern Europe cut up by many deep gulfs and bays and crossed by rugged mountains. The colors of its landscape have been thus described: "Against a deep blue sky, its bold hills and mountains, often powdered with snow, stand out in clear outline, and its fertile valleys please the eye with their green vineyards and groves of silver-gray olive trees."



MOUNT OLYMPUS, IN GREEK MYTH

Greece is kissed by gentle winds of the Mediterranean Sea and has the warm, balmy climate that all the shores of this inland ocean have.

Greek colonies

261. The Greeks of the Olden Times. The Greeks were bold people and many of them went on long voyages in their small vessels. These voyages were not for plunder, but for trade and for planting colonies. Under the lead of some brave Greek they made their way to France, to Italy, to Africa, to Asia Minor, and to the shores of the Black Sea. Some of these colonies became rich and prospered greatly. There were so many Greeks living in southern Italy that it was called "Greater Greece." In the island of Sicily stood the largest and most splendidly built city in Greater Greece, called Syracuse.

PART OF THE FRIEZE OF THE PARTHENON

An old

Greek myth

262. The Brave Deeds of Ancient Greek Heroes. The story of the Greek heroes was the invention of her early poets. The most famous of these heroes was Hercules, the most powerful man that ever lived, according to story. He performed twelve mighty labors, among them killing with his hands a big lion, and a terrible water serpent or snake which bore many heads.

The blind singer of Greece

263. The Favorite Story of the Greeks. The favorite tale of the old Greeks was the story of the capture of Troy. It was written by one of their poets, the blind Homer. He told how Paris, son of the king of Troy, stole Helen, the wife of the king of a Greek city called Sparta. Helen was said to be the most beautiful woman in the ancient world.

The king of Sparta called upon all Greeks for help. From every city of Greece came bold warriors. The Trojans were great fighters, too. For nine years war was waged under the walls of Troy. The Greek leaders quarreled among themselves and the Trojans drove them to their ships. This united the Greeks, and their great leader Achilles, clad in new armor made for him by the god Vulcan, rushed forth and slew Hector, leader of the Trojans. There was great sorrow among the people of Troy, but they fought on.

The fall of Troy

Now Ulysses, another Greek of great fame, had built a huge wooden horse. The Greeks left the horse standing near the walls of Troy. Then they pretended to sail home. The Trojans drew the great wooden beast within the walls of the city. It was full of Greek warriors. They climbed out at dead of night and opened the gates. The Greeks rushed in, slew the Trojans, burned their city, and carried home the beautiful Helen to be queen of Sparta again. The ancient Greeks never tired of telling their children the wonderful story of these brave deeds.

264. Socrates, the Philosopher. After ages had gone by the Greek nation still flourished, having improved in many ways, especially in art and in education.

One of the world's greatest men

One of the wisest of their great men was Socrates. Socrates was an ugly old man with a scolding wife. In spite of these drawbacks he stands out as one of the foremost teachers of the world. Socrates was truly a wise man, because he knew that the wisest man knows very little. He did not pretend to know things that he did not know.

The method Socrates used

Socrates taught, for the most part, by going among the people and asking them questions. Some people liked him, but some hated him because he asked

questions that led persons on from one point to another until they saw their own mistakes.

His enemies grew in numbers and brought false charges that Socrates had not respected the gods of the city.

PORCH OF THE CARYAT

There came a day when he was called before the city's judges, who heard the charges against him. The judges decided that he must die by drinking a cup of poison. Some of the friends of Socrates found a way by which he could escape death. But the brave old Greek had faced death on the battlefield and was not afraid to die.

The death of Socrates

Socrates believed that the laws of the city should be obeyed even if they were unjust. He drank the fatal cup while telling his friends and followers of a life beyond the grave. It was a favorite doctrine of Socrates that men would live again after the body died.

We know what Socrates taught from the writings of his most famous pupil, Plato. These *Dialogues* of Plato's, in the form of question and answer, are among the greatest books ever written.

A very learned man

265. Aristotle, the Scientist of Ancient Times. Aristotle was one of the later Greeks. He was celebrated for his learning. He was called a "Scientist," for he was not simply a philosopher as Socrates and Plato were.

Followed without question

for ages

Aristotle was indeed a wonderful man. He studied about every subject known to the ancients and won honors in all subjects; people for centuries and centuries after Aristotle's time accepted what he said and did not try very hard to study further. They thought that the giant mind of Aristotle had found out all there was to know.

Aristotle studied animals and plants, putting them in different classes and finding out many of their characteristics. He also knew a great deal about music and his *Logic* has been the great text book even down to modern times.

One of the earliest geographers

We have a special interest in Aristotle because in his studies in geography he taught that the world is round. From men who accepted Aristotle's teaching about the shape of the earth, Columbus, the discoverer of America, got his idea of sailing west to find eastern countries.

ALEXANDER AT TWENTY

266. The Father of Alexander the Great. Macedon was a country just north of Greece. Its great king was Philip, father of Alexander the Great. Philip was a brave king and had good soldiers. He taught them to

form in bodies sixteen ranks deep and armed them with lances or spears fourteen feet long. A body of soldiers so formed and armed was called a Macedonian phalanx. "When the Macedonians leveled their long spears and advanced with steady step they bore down" the ranks of the enemy.

Alexander seeks to imitate the old Greek heroes

With these soldiers Philip conquered Greece, but he ruled the Greeks kindly. He even employed one of them to give lessons to his young son. Aristotle was the teacher who opened to this young man all the learning of the Greeks. Alexander was a bright boy and learned quickly. Although not born a Greek, he admired their learning. He was fond of the blind poet Homer, and it was said could repeat his poems by heart.

Achilles was his favorite among the Greek heroes, and he finally made himself believe that Achilles was one of his forefathers. At any rate he resolved to imitate his hero and to conquer cities more splendid than Troy.

HOW THE GREEKS TAUGHT MEN TO BE FREE

267. Self-Government among the Greeks. The Greeks were not many in number, if we compare them with modern nations. But we admire them because they were free and had the most democratic government in the ancient world.

Greece a city-state

They lived in little cities located in the valleys shut in by hills or mountains. Around their cities they built strong walls to shut out dangerous enemies. There were some benefits growing out of living in small cities. The people could know each other. The men could come together quickly and easily to talk of things needed for the good of the city. Only a small part of the men and women in a modern city can get together. These Greeks could know the best men for office, for they were their own neighbors. Now but a few men who want office can be known to all the voters in a city, and still fewer who want to run for governor or for president can be known by all the voters of a state or country.

The most famous of the cities in ancient Greece were Athens and Sparta. Their history is well known to us because of the great deeds of their people. Another reason for remembering them is that the two cities were so very different, as we shall see.

The Greeks their own rulers

268. The Government of the Cities. At first, just as in the case of other nations, the Greeks had kings in all their cities. But unlike the other nations, the Greeks drove their kings out and made for themselves a kind of government called a republic. This was the best and wisest government for a people as intelligent as the Greeks. In a republic all the people, or a majority of them, take part in making and in carrying out the laws. This is the kind of government we have.

But while a republican government is the best, it is also the hardest to run. It demands that each one of its citizens shall be educated so that he may be able to vote wisely.

AN ATHENIAN SCHOOLBOY LEARNIN

From an Athenian

The Greeks had a hard time keeping their self-government. There were shrewd men among them

who seized the power in the city and compelled the people to obey them. Such a man the Greeks called a "tyrant." A tyrant was either good or bad. He sometimes gave the people a better government than they had when they ruled themselves. But the Greeks were liberty-loving and liked to govern themselves even though their government was worse than a tyrant's government. So they generally drove out the tyrants and again set up a government under rulers of their own choosing.

THE DISCUS THROWER

269. The Two Rival Cities, Athens and Sparta. The people of Athens were the most democratic in all Greece. The Spartans, on the other hand, were the most soldier-like of the Greeks. The Athenians loved

new things while the Spartans liked old ways best. The Athenians made Athens the most beautiful city in the Old World. The Spartans cared nothing for beautiful things. They loved only things that were useful.

All the citizens of Athens came together to make the laws. In the center of their city they met in their assembly, a semicircle of stone seats rising one above another. Here the men of Athens listened to their speakers. Each speaker placed a wreath upon his head before he began speaking.

The public life of the Athenians

Often there were exciting debates between great speakers called orators. They spoke eloquent words and sometimes stirred people deeply. The Athenians enjoyed these debates almost as much as they did their Greek plays.

THE WRESTL

Athenian orators

The people of Athens, because they made their laws after debating them in the assembly, placed emphasis on public speaking. All the citizens were taught how to speak in public and how to appear before the assembly. It was natural for the best orators to have the most influence. But the people were keen and quick to see the difference between orators who were interested only in winning applause and honor for themselves through their speeches and the ones who

were true patriots and spoke for the good of the city.

Yet while the people of Athens trained their citizens to make the laws they saw to it that their young men were trained to be good soldiers. Training began with the school boy. There were two schools, one called the music school and the other the wrestling school.

The music school

In the music school the Greek boys did not study music alone, but learned to read and write and do simple sums in arithmetic. More than this, their teachers wanted them to learn the poems written by blind Homer, their wonderful old poet. They learned to play and sing. A stringed instrument called a lyre was the favorite among the Greeks.

The gymnasium

In the wrestling school the boys learned to run, to jump, to dance, and especially to throw the javelin. At fifteen they attended the gymnasium where they were taught the more difficult athletic games. This led up to the next great event in the young man's life, his preparation for becoming a citizen.

Soldier-citizens

This important event came at the age of eighteen. It began with a great ceremony. The young men came into the assembly before all the men of the city. Here they were given a spear and shield. With their hands raised they took an oath never to bring shame upon

the city nor to desert a companion in arms. They pledged themselves to give over the city of Athens to their children greater than when they had found it.

After this ceremony was over, the young men marched away to be trained for two years more in the art of being soldiers. When they had reached their twentieth year, they returned to Athens to become citizens of the republic, to work for its good, and to enjoy the pleasures of that charming city.

Character of Pericles

270. Pericles, the Wise Statesman. Pericles lived in the "Golden Age of Athens." He was born nearly 500 years before Christ. He was trained in the same manner as any other boy in Athens. He became one of the first orators of Greece and his ability as a speaker gave him great power over his people. He became one of their leading officers. Pericles stood for the people and against those men of aristocratic ways who wanted the city ruled by the few.

HEAD OF PERICLES

After the original in the British Museum

Cimon was the leader of the aristocracy. The people of Athens voted to banish him. But after a time

Pericles had him brought back to Athens. This shows how very kind-hearted Pericles was toward his great political enemy.

For thirty years Pericles was the most popular man in Athens. He ruled the people kindly and well during this time.

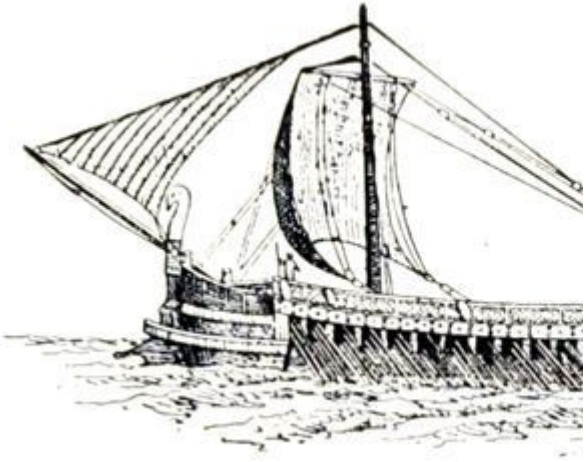
It was Pericles who made Athens the City Beautiful. When you are older you may read all about the many wonderful buildings and monuments he erected.

The rule of Pericles had one bad result: He was so popular and had been the great man in the government so long that when he passed away there was no one who could take his place. The time in which he lived is often called the "Age of Pericles." After his death history handed his high ideas on to Rome and the rest of the world. No doubt these ideas influenced the great men of Rome.

SPREAD OF GREEK CIVILIZATION

The Greeks of Asia Minor

271. The Old Wars of the Greeks. The once greatest enemies of the Greeks were the Persians, living in western Asia. The Persians conquered Asia Minor. Here on its coast the Greeks had planted many cities, and they naturally sent ships and soldiers to aid their kinsmen.



AN ATHENIAN WAI

The battle of Marathon

The king of the Persians, Darius by name, whom we read about in the Bible, sailed with a great army across the sea to Greece. One hundred thousand Persians met ten thousand Greeks on the battlefield of Marathon. The Greeks won.

The old folks and children among the Greeks waited for the news with breathless anxiety. The minutes grew into hours. At last they saw a runner coming. He was covered with dust. He had been on the battlefield and was running to tell the waiting people of the great victory. He dropped dead as he called out, "Victory!" He had run twenty-four miles!

Both Europe and America have celebrated the victory at Marathon by naming one of their races in the great Olympic contest the Marathon race.

Xerxes' forces

Again, a new king, Xerxes, who reigned over Persia, decided to overthrow Greece. He gathered a vast host from forty-six tributary states. He also gathered a fleet greater than any Greece had.

THE PERSIAN KING FLEEING IN

The city of Sparta gave three hundred brave soldiers. Their leader was Leonidas. The Persian army had to march along the narrow pass of Thermopylae that ran between high mountains and the sea. Here stood the brave Spartans. For two days Leonidas held the pass. Through a mountain road the Persians gained the rear of the Spartan army. But the Spartans did not retreat. Every Spartan fell fighting for his country. A noble example!

The battle of Salamis

The Greek warships met the Persians in the Bay of Salamis and overthrew them completely. Xerxes took his army and hastened back to Persia. Asia might be ruled by tyrants but the Greeks were bound to be free.

272. How Alexander Spread Greek Ideas. But

these wonderful deeds were not all the Greeks were to do. We have seen Alexander come to the head of the Greek Empire. He had a wonderful army and resolved to teach the Persians a lesson or two as well as to spread Greek ideas.

The march of the Greeks

Alexander's army was not large, but it was the best trained in the world. Think of the Macedonian phalanx! All the cities of Persia fell into his hands. Before he was thirty years old, southwestern Asia and Egypt recognized his rule. Alexandria, situated at the mouth of the Nile River, was founded by him. It became a center of Greek ideas and boasted the largest library in the Old World.

273. Why Alexander Failed. Alexander's army made its way to India. But its great general, now only thirty-two, was drunk with power. He even permitted the people he conquered to worship him as a god. He loved the wine-cup too well and was stricken with a fever and died.

There was no one to take his place, but much that was finest and best in Greek life remained to the world.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* Greece, a land of hills, mountains, plains, bays, and gulfs. *2.* Greeks traded and planted colonies. *3.* The deeds of Greek heroes. *4.* The great men of the newer Greece. **5.** The reason why the

Persians attacked the Greeks. **6.** Marathon, Thermopylae, and Salamis. *7.* Alexander the Great, his father, his education, his army, and his victories. **8.** Spread of Greek ideas.

Study Questions. *1.* See map for the boundaries of "Greater Greece." *2.* Name heroes among the ancient Greeks. Do you know of any others? *3.* What was their favorite story? *4.* What was the cause of the Trojan War? *5.* Who was Helen and for what was she famous? *6.* Who was Socrates? Plato? Aristotle? *7.* How is Aristotle connected with Columbus? *8.* Who were the Persians? *9.* Why did they attack the Greeks? *10.* Name the great battles. *11.* How was Alexander able to beat the Persians in their own land? *12.* How did Alexander benefit the world in what he did?

Suggested Readings. Guerber. *The Story of the Greeks*; Hall, *Life in Ancient Greece*, II, 166; Harding, *Stories of Greek Gods, Heroes, and Men*; Tappan, *The Story of the Greek People*; Yonge, *Young Folks' History of Greece*; Mace-Tanner, *Old Europe and Young America*, 24-73; Hall, *Four Old Greeks*.

WHEN ROME RULED THE WORLD

274. Rome, the Eternal City. Italy looks like a big boot hanging from the Alps Mountains down into the Mediterranean Sea. "Sunny Italy," people call it.

An old Roman myth

The ancient Romans all believed that their city, Rome, was founded by a hero called Romulus. He had a twin brother, Remus. A wicked uncle threw them while babies into a basket and set it adrift on the river Tiber. But the boys—so the story runs—were found by a she-wolf that nursed them until they became men, strong and cruel. With the aid of others as brave as himself, Romulus founded the city of Rome.

How Rome was ruled

275. Rome Becomes a Republic. Romulus was the first of six kings. The people drove out the sixth because he was cruel, and Rome became a republic. The republic was ruled by two men called "consuls," aided by the advice of great men called "senators." These senators were among the wisest men in the Old World.

276. Stories of Roman Heroes. The people of Rome, like the Greeks, had their tales of what the

bold heroes of olden times had done.

Horatius saves Rome

One of the most famous stories is about a hero named Horatius. The Romans sent for him to lead their soldiers against the last king, who was trying to get back the Roman throne. Bold Horatius took his stand on a narrow bridge leading across the Tiber to the city. Here he met the enemy, and defended the bridge with only his good sword until the Roman soldiers broke down the bridge behind him. When the bridge fell, he plunged into the fast rolling stream and swam ashore.

THE PANTHEON, A ROMAN TEMPLE D

The story of Cincinnatus

The story that American boys and girls like best, perhaps, is one the Romans never tired of telling their children. It is about an old farmer-soldier named Cincinnatus. Rome's enemies were knocking at the very doors of the "Eternal City." The Romans called for Cincinnatus to head the army. They found him ploughing on his little farm. He left his plough

and oxen in the field, took command of the Roman army, and by a night attack completely defeated the enemy. He was the most popular man in Rome and could have held any office in the government. But he returned to his plow as if nothing had happened.

George Washington is often called the American Cincinnatus, for he, too, at the close of our Revolution, laid down his arms and went to live on his farm on the banks of the Potomac.

How the common people gained new rights

277. The First Battle between Rich and Poor. A fierce war between the rich and poor threatened to destroy the republic itself. The rich were selfish and thought they should have all the power. After a long struggle the poor gained some political rights by all moving to a sacred hill and beginning to build a rival city. The rich gave in and the poor in Rome had a right to choose a man who could raise his hand in the assembly and say: "I forbid," which he did by using the Latin word, "veto." This is where we get our word "veto."

278. The People Called Gauls Take Rome. For many years the Romans quarreled among themselves. How could they defend Rome from the great bands of brave and fierce people who swarmed down from the North? These were the Gauls. They were very large men who dressed in skins of beasts. They defeated the Romans, burned their cities, and murdered the people.

Gauls become Romans

After a time the Gauls lived among the Romans and

finally became so mixed with them you could hardly tell them apart. They all became Romans, and Rome was then united and strong. The natural result was that Rome conquered all the other tribes or peoples living in Italy.

HANNIBAL TRIES TO CONQUER ROME

HANNIBAL'S ARMY CROSSING THE ALP

A Phoenician colony

279. Carthage the Rival of Rome. Just as Persia was the rival of Greece, so Carthage was the rival of Rome. Carthage had been settled by the Phoenicians, the traders of the ancient world. Carthage, the richest of their colonies, was just across the Mediterranean from Rome. In the days of her greatest power Carthage was said to have nearly a million people. Rome and Carthage quarreled about the island of Sicily, lying midway between them, and Rome was successful in driving her enemy out of the island. The great Carthaginian general, Hannibal, when only a boy took a solemn oath to carry on war with Rome without ceasing. When he later became a famous general he still remembered his oath against Rome. He gathered a mighty army from all Carthaginian colonies as well as from the homeland. Soldiers came from all parts of Spain and Gaul. From Africa came the finest body of cavalry in the world. The strangest part of the body was a long line of war elephants driven by their riders to trample down the Roman soldiers and to break their solid lines.

ROMANS PLOWING THE GROUND WH

The army came together in Spain and marched over the mighty Alps into Italy. Their march was slow and hard. There were no roads at all through the mountains. The army was often attacked by people living in the mountains who hurled huge stones upon it.

After five months the army finally reached the plains

of Italy, though hundreds of brave soldiers had been lost.

Rome was stirred to her depths. A great army was raised to meet the Carthaginians. But Rome had no general like Hannibal. For fifteen years he remained in Italy, defeating every general sent against him.

How Hannibal made war

Hannibal's greatest victory was on the field of Cannae. Rome raised a mighty army, 86,000 men. Hannibal had only 50,000, but he had faith in his veterans, especially in the African horsemen. He arranged his troops so that his center gave way easily. When the Romans thought victory near, Hannibal's heavy troops on each wing attacked them from both sides and his African horsemen struck them in the rear. The Romans lost in killed and wounded 70,000 men.

The Romans hit upon the plan of sending an army to attack Carthage. Hannibal had to rush his troops home to save his beloved city. In the great battle of Zama Hannibal was defeated and Carthage fell.

The fate of Carthage

Rome would not permit a rival, so she wholly destroyed Carthage, her great fleets of ships, her hoards of money, her stores of goods and her great buildings. It is said that Romans sowed salt where Carthage once stood so that nothing might ever grow there.

ROME CONQUERS THE WORLD BUT GROWS WICKED

280. How Rome Came to Win Victories. The wars made great soldiers out of the Romans, who, now that they had trained generals, began to conquer all the nations about them. They invaded Macedonia, Greece, Asia, and Africa, destroying the mighty nations which had grown out of the work of Alexander the Great.

How the Romans defeated the phalanx

How do you suppose the Romans defeated the Macedonian phalanx? The Roman generals planned the battle with the Macedonians so that it always occurred in a forest or on rough broken ground where the phalanx could not stand in solid columns. With the phalanx already in disorder the Romans charged and defeated them easily.

Roman slaves

281. The Effect on the Romans. Long before the Romans began to conquer other nations they were a simple farmer-like people living by raising grain and horses and cattle and sheep. But as soon as they began to conquer other nations many of the Romans

grew proud and haughty. A great many grew rich from what they took from the defeated nations. Hundreds of Romans who had been small farmers now lived on great farms. On these farms or plantations the work was done by slaves, who were prisoners taken in battle. Some of these slaves were rude men taken in wars against half-savage people. Others, like the Greeks, were well educated, and really knew more than their masters. Those who belonged to this class of slaves were treated kindly and often played the part of tutors to the children of their rich masters.

282. The Rich and Poor Quarrel Again. The rich men oppressed the poor in many ways. A great many poor went to Rome to live because they found it hard to make a living on their little farms. Then, too, the great city was full of interesting doings. Besides, the city did not permit her poor to starve. Great shiploads of grain were brought from Egypt to feed them.

The Gracchi

In Rome at this time there lived two brothers called the Gracchi. They were both great orators and rose to high positions in Rome. They saw their city was in a bad way on account of the many poor that were flocking to it.

The Gracchi tried to change this by taking away from the very rich landowners a part of their land and giving it to the poor. The Gracchi wanted to make farmers out of the poor. This plan roused the anger of the rich. They raised riots against the brothers and both men were killed. Rome never forgot the Gracchi, and even in our time they are looked upon

as noble men laboring for the good of their country.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* What Italy looks like on the map. *2.* Romulus and Remus. *3.* The founding of Rome; the six kings. *4.* A republic with "consuls" and "senators." *5.* The story of Horatius; of Cincinnatus. Our Cincinnatus. *6.* The first quarrel, and the removal to the second hill. *7.* The capture of Rome by the Gauls; the Gauls become Romans. *8.* Rome and Carthage rivals. *9.* Quarrel over Sicily. *10.* Hannibal takes a great oath. *11.* Hannibal's army. *12.* How it reached Italy and how long it remained. *13.* Hannibal's victory at Cannae. *14.* The Romans invade Carthage and defeat Hannibal at Zama. *15.* How Rome defeated the phalanx. *16.* Romans before conquests a simple people. *17.* Effect on the Romans of conquering the world. *18.* Second great contest between rich and poor. *19.* The Gracchi to the rescue. *20.* Death of the Gracchi and why they are remembered.

Study Questions. *1.* Why did the Romans believe the story of Romulus and Remus? *2.* Tell the story of Horatius and Cincinnatus. Which do you like best? *3.* Tell the origin of the word "veto." *4.* Who was Hannibal and how could he stay so long in Italy with his army? *5.* Who built Carthage? *6.* Describe the battle of Cannae. *7.* Why did the Romans scatter salt over the ground where Carthage stood? *8.* How did Rome overcome the

Macedonian phalanx? *9.* What bad effect did the world conquest have upon Rome? *10.* Tell the story of the Gracchi.

Suggested Readings. Tappan, *The Story of the Roman People*, 1-122; Yonge, *Young Folks' History of Rome*, 13-202; Harding, *The City of the Seven Hills*, 7-165; Lang, *The Red Book of Heroes*, 43-94; Guerber, *The Story of the Romans*; Mace-Tanner, *Old Europe and Young America*, 74-93.

THE ROMAN REPUBLIC BECOMES THE ROMAN EMPIRE

Conditions that favored Caesar

283. The Rise of Julius Caesar. When a country is torn by quarrels between rich and poor, very often some great man rises, seizes the government, and rules the country himself. He may use the army in compelling all parties to submit quietly to his rule. So it was in Rome.

Caesar was "tall and erect, with hooked nose, and piercing glance." He made the common people believe him to be their friend. They probably thought that he was another Gracchus.

Governor of Gaul

284. Caesar Governor of Gaul. Caesar was chosen consul, and then later made governor of Gaul. In Gaul the people were half savage and were constantly fighting.

They made friends with Caesar because he helped them defeat the Germans. The Germans were carrying fire and sword into Gaul until Caesar put them to rout.

War with the Gauls

Caesar now decided that he must conquer all the country of the Gauls. He called for more of the Roman legions, such as had defeated the Macedonian phalanx. One after another the tribes of Gaul were overcome. Then suddenly, when Caesar least expected it, the Gauls rose as one man and defeated the Romans. But Caesar would not give up. He finally defeated the Gauls and sent their great leader a prisoner to Rome.

ROMAN REMAINS IN GREAT BRIT

The Lighthouse, Dover Castle

285. His Invasion of England. The Britons were kinfolk of the Gauls and had sent them help in the

fight against Caesar. The Britons were also half savage, and Caesar resolved to make them feel the power of Rome. But Caesar found the Britons ready for him when his ships tried to land his soldiers. The Britons, though bravely fighting for native land, were finally defeated.

Caesar made two invasions into England, but when his soldiers were needed at home, he withdrew.

JULIUS CAESAR

Trouble at home

286. He Crosses the Rubicon. There were other great generals in Rome and they now became jealous of Caesar's many victories and of his popularity. They prepared to punish him. But Caesar was too quick for them. He marched his army rapidly into Italy until he reached a little stream called the Rubicon. To cross this stream meant war—victory or defeat. He stood awhile—so the story runs—in deep study. "The die is cast," said Caesar, and plunged into its waters.

287. Caesar the Ruler of Rome. Caesar's enemies fled from Rome, so quickly did he come. He now held the great city in his hands. He followed his enemies and defeated them in a great battle. Other armies were raised against him, but he was the final victor. He sent a famous dispatch to Rome: "I came, I saw, I conquered." Julius Caesar was now master of the civilized world.

The plot against Caesar

But in ruling the world Caesar had changed Rome from a republic into an empire. Many good Roman nobles could never forget that fact. Caesar planned to give Rome a good government. He was in many ways a wise ruler. Still many people could not forgive him. So those who believed Rome should still be a republic and others who were merely jealous of him, planned to kill him. As he came into the Senate Hall one day they stabbed him.

But the death of Rome's greatest man did not set her free. Another and a worse tyrant ruled Rome.

WHAT ROME GAVE TO THE WORLD

How Rome ruled

288. Great Lawmakers and Governors. Of all the ancient nations Rome was the most famous in establishing laws in regard to the ownership of property and in regard to the way men should act toward one another.

Her consuls and senators were men skillful in planning laws not only for Rome but for the nations which she had conquered.

The Colosseum

289. Romans Were Great Builders. The buildings of Greece were beautiful but those of Rome were large and strong. The Colosseum, built as a place of entertainment for the people, was a gigantic affair seating 87,000 people. In this were held fights between gladiators, men trained to kill each other, and between men and wild beasts. The effect was to make the Romans lovers of such cruel sports.

Other famous buildings put up by the Romans were the Forum and the Pantheon. You may see remains of these now in Rome. They are visited by hundreds of Americans every year.

ROMAN BRIDGE AND AQUEDUCT

Roman roads

The Romans also built wonderful roads in all parts of the empire for the use of armies and for travel and trade. Some of these roads are still used. They built strong bridges over the rivers and erected aqueducts in different parts of the empire. These Roman aqueducts brought good, pure water from the hills to supply the needs of the townspeople.

290. The Romans Gave a Literature to the World. Not all Romans were educated. All boys and girls did not then go to school, as they do in America. Only the sons of the well-to-do could become educated.

Classic Roman writers

Rome became famous for her great writers. Even Julius Caesar found time to write the story of his war against the Gauls. High school boys and girls read Caesar's *Commentaries*. There was Vergil, a great poet, who told the story of how the Greeks beat the Trojans. Vergil made these Greek heroes the ancestors of the Romans. Horace was another of Rome's great poets. He amused the Romans "by his genial and quiet humor." But Cicero was the great orator of Rome. His voice went ringing down the senate halls as he challenged Catiline, who had plotted to overthrow the republic.

291. Rome Prepared the Way for the Spread of Christianity. When Rome seemed sunk in wickedness there came out of Palestine the story of Jesus. His disciples were carrying the glad news everywhere over the empire. Paul, the most learned

of these followers of Christ, carried the story to Greece and to Rome.

Early Christian martyrs

The emperors tried to stamp out the new religion, but the more they opposed the more it grew. Hundreds of Christians perished holding firm to the faith. Many were destroyed by wild beasts in the Colosseum before the eyes of thousands of Romans. But the new religion appealed to many, and especially to the poorer classes. The Emperor Constantine (305 A. D.) soon accepted the new religion and gave it protection. It then spread rapidly. Priests were sent into the villages to preach and to set up churches. Above the priest was a bishop in charge of all the churches in a district or province.

The government of the new church was formed like that of the empire and became strong. Other religions were driven out. In time the many offices of the empire were in the hands of the priests or under their influence. Many years later these two governments of the church and the empire quarreled over their rights to rule the people.

THE DOWNFALL OF ROME

How the Teutonic tribes lived

292. The Coming of the Huns and Teutons. North of the Alps, beyond the Danube and the Rhine, and between the North Sea and the Black Sea, was a vast region of wild lands. Here the German or Teutonic tribes had lived for hundreds of years. They had made little advance in ways of living. They still dwelt in poor villages. They loved to fight, or waste their time in idleness and feasts. They were noted for their love of liberty and pure family life. At the time of the invasions (4th century) they were learning to live in towns, to unite in confederations, and to be ruled by elected kings. They had so increased in numbers that more land was needed to afford them a living. This was the main cause of their moving south to the Roman frontiers.

Gradual coming of the Germans

For three hundred years the Germans were restless in their northern homes. But the Roman armies were strong enough to keep them beyond the Danube. Some had come over as soldiers in the Roman legions. By 330 half the troops were German. Some

of the more peaceful Germans were allowed to make settlements within the empire. Other Germans came in as slaves, but mainly to work on the farms.

By the end of the fourth century after Christ the Romans had become too weak to keep the Germans back.

THE COMING OF T

From a print after the paintin

Battle of Chalons

But the Germans were gentle compared with the fierce Huns from Asia who made the next great invasion into Europe. And under their terrible chief, Attila, they swept over Europe like firebrands, laying waste all they could not carry away. At last the

Germans and the Romans united and defeated the Huns at Chalons (451). The Huns moved eastward, passed through northern Italy, and soon reëntered Asia. Europe was saved.

293. End of the Empire. Other German tribes entered the empire, took possession of the lands, and even formed governments under their chiefs. In a quarrel over lands the German troops removed the Roman emperor and declared their chief, Odoacer, king (476). This marks the end of the Roman Empire and the rise of the kingdom of Italy, though the present United Kingdom, formed after centuries of division, among small, jealous city states, is only sixty years old.

Other invasions went on for many years. Europe was in disorder and confusion for nearly four hundred years. It was a time of seeding, when the rough, brave, liberty-loving German peoples were intermarrying with the Greeks and Romans and learning from them the finer ways of living. From this fusion a new society was built on the ruins of the old, as shown in the nations of Italy, France, and Spain.

THE ANGLES AND SAXONS IN GREAT BRITAIN

294. The Britons. There were already two groups of people in these islands. Under the rule of the Romans one group, the Britons, had been weakened as fighters.

Britons fight among themselves

Rome called her legions out of Britain to fight the Germans. This left the Britons without good soldiers to keep order and the tribes began fighting one another. One tribe, the Britons proper, invited bands of Jutes from Denmark (449) to help them. After the Britons had forced back their enemies the Jutes refused to go away. They took possession of the land, making it their home.

Where the name England came from

295. Coming of the Anglo-Saxons. Other German tribes, chiefly the wild Angles and Saxons, now came over from Europe. The new tribes soon brought the Britons under their rule. They gave their names to the land they had taken—Angle land or England. The Angles and Saxons are the forefathers of the "English"

people. The Britons who would not submit were driven into the lands to the west known as Wales, and became the "Welsh."

296. Rome Brings Christianity to the Germans. When the western Roman Empire passed away in 476, the church remained the only strong central government in all that vast territory. It acted as a steady light when all about was dark and changing. Its priests came to be the only educated class, giving it great influence.

Clovis, king of the Franks, converted

Even before the invasions began, missionaries went among the German tribes on the frontiers to preach the religion of Christ. Many of the Germans had accepted the new religion either before or soon after entering Roman territory. Clovis, king of the Franks, was influenced by his Christian wife to accept the new religion. His army followed, and was baptized with its leader.

England becomes Christian

Missionaries under Augustine were sent from Rome to England. Through their earnest preaching and noble living the king of Kent and his followers accepted the new religion. A church was built at Canterbury. Others carried on the work until all England had accepted Christianity. Other missionaries went to the northern Germans, and many of these people became Christians.

These early missionaries were mostly monks. Their homes (monasteries) were like small settlements among the people. They not only preached the new religion, but showed people better ways of farming and living. In their schools, they taught people to read and write.

CHARLES THE GREAT, RULER OF THE FRANKS

After an engraving in Green's History

WORK COPYING MANUSCRIPT, 1

297. Charlemagne. While the Germans were still moving into the Roman Empire the Franks had set up a government under Clovis. They had become Christians and lived on friendly terms with the church. They grew strong and settled down to a more orderly and quiet way of living. Their first great king, Charles Martel, the Hammer, checked the invasion of the Mohammedans at Tours (732), and again Europe and Christianity were saved. But the greatest of all the leaders of the Franks was Charlemagne, the grandson of Charles Martel, for he was not only a great conqueror but a wise and able ruler.

CHARLES THE GREAT AT THE SCHOOL OF THE

Charlemagne, or Charles the Great, was by far the most famous man of his time. He seemed to be a happy fusion of Germanic strength and Roman learning. He was tall and strong, with large, bright

eyes, fair hair, and a face round and laughing. He exercised much, riding, hunting, and swimming. He liked the Frankish costume: "... next to his skin a linen shirt and linen breeches, and above these a tunic fringed with silk; while hose fastened by bands covered his lower limbs, and shoes his feet, and he shielded his shoulders and chest in winter by a close-fitting coat of otter or marten skin. Over all he cast a blue coat: always too he had a sword girt about him."

Character of Charles

The School of the Palace

Charles ate and drank with care, never taking too much of either food or drink. During his meals his attendants entertained him with reading and music. He liked the stories and deeds of the olden time and the books of Augustine. He was a good speaker, easily understood. He loved learning, but had little education himself. He had the famous School of the Palace in his own home to educate his own children and those of the nobles. Wise teachers like Peter of Pisa, and Alcuin of England were brought to his court. He helped the priests in their study and in building schools. Charles loved the church and gave much to aid its educational and religious work. He really brought learning to the people.

Charlemagne's wars

Charles the Great was for three years ruler with his father (768-771), then sole ruler until 814. His

kingdom was surrounded on all sides by fierce enemies. Most of his long rule was taken up in fighting the wild Germans to the north and east, the Arabs in Spain, or the Lombards and others to protect the church in Italy. He was a great warrior. Before his death he had brought most of western Europe under his rule.

Crowned Emperor of Rome

298. The Crowning of Charlemagne. So successful was he that it seemed the Roman Empire was again to live in the memories of men. God was surely with him. How simple it then seemed to bestow the symbol of divine blessing upon Charles! On Christmas day, 800, Charles was in Rome. And on that sacred day of the Christians he entered the great church and knelt in prayer before the altar. In that solemn moment the pope, as the messenger on earth of God, quietly stepped to where Charles was kneeling. Lifting the crown which he held in his hands, he placed it upon the head of the king of the Franks and proclaimed him Emperor of Rome (800). What glorious memories it must have brought to the thousands gathered there! In their joy they cried out: "Long life and victory to the mighty Charles, the great and pacific emperor of the Romans, crowned of God!"

How he governed

299. The Ruler Charlemagne. Charles was a great ruler as well as soldier. He divided his territory into districts over each of which a count ruled. An army

officer cared for all military matters. At certain times inspectors passed over the several districts. These three officers reported directly to Charles and were checks on the conduct of each other.

His just laws

Some of the orders which he sent to his officers show how great and just a ruler he was. He orders that "all shall live entirely in accordance with God's precept, justly and under a just rule, and each one shall be admonished to live in harmony with his fellows." Let no one "do injury to the churches of God, or to the poor, or the widows, or the wards, or any Christian." He then lays down the rules of living for the clergy, nuns, bishops, and other church officers, that their lives may be holy and their influence good.

He wanted to see justice done all over his kingdom—to the poor as well as to the rich. Wonderful stories, some true, have been woven about the name of the great emperor.

Why his empire fell

He built up a great empire, but it was too great to live long. There were too many races with different ways of living, and the provinces were too far apart. When the strength and wisdom of his hand and head passed away in death, the great empire began to crumble and fall apart.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPILS

The Leading Facts. *1.* Julius Caesar takes the popular side. *2.* Governor of Gaul. *3.* Conquest of Gaul and the Germans. *4.* Caesar

invades Britain. *5.* Crosses the Rubicon and becomes ruler of the Roman Empire. *6.* Why he was assassinated. *7.* What Rome gave to the world. *8.* Rome famous for its wonderful buildings and roads. *9.* Her great literature. *10.* How Rome prepared the way for Christianity. *11.* Coming of the Huns and Teutons marks the downfall of Rome. *12.* The removal of the Roman emperor and Odoacer made king. *13.* Anglo-Saxons in Britain. *14.* Rome takes Christianity to the Germans. *15.* Charles the Great. *16.* The Palace School. *17.* The crowning of Charlemagne.

Study Questions. *1.* Who was Julius Caesar? *2.* What did he do to make people remember him? *3.* Why did good men join in murdering him? *4.* Name the different things given to the world by Rome? *5.* Explain how Rome helped Christianity. *6.* Who were the Huns and the Teutons? *7.* Tell about the following in Charlemagne's career: (1) The battle of Tours; (2) How Charlemagne looked and dressed; (3) His Palace School; (4) How he ruled the Franks; (5) How he was crowned; (6) Why his empire crumbled at his death.

Suggested Readings. Tappan, *The Story of the Roman People*, 123-237; Harding, *The City of the Seven Hills*, 184-211; Yonge, *Young Folks' History of Rome*, 229; Clarke, *The Story of Caesar*; Guerber, *The Story of the Romans*.

THE COMING OF THE NORTHMEN

The vessels of the Northmen

Movements of the Northmen

300. The Vikings or Sea-Rovers. The Northmen lived in the lands of Denmark, Norway, and Sweden. They lived on the inlets of the ocean, or viks, and were called "vikings." Their boats were long, and each one had a high prow with the head of a dragon or other fierce-looking animal upon it. They drove their vessels by sail or oar. Often there were as many as fifty rowers in a boat, their bright shields hanging over the sides. When the sun shone on them they looked like great moving lights. The Northmen were great sea-rovers and pirates.

THE LANDING OF LEIF ERICSON IN AM

In the eighth and ninth centuries these Northmen or Norsemen began moving out in great bands. Some overran the northern part of France and settled on the river Seine. They were called "Normans," and this region is now Normandy. Others sailed to the west and founded Iceland and Greenland. And their "sagas" or records tell us that Leif Ericson and his men even sailed as far as the coast of North America, although the settlements they made then did not prove to be lasting.

The conquest of England

The Northmen, called Danes by the English, had made many attacks on the coasts of England. Now they came in armies to take the land for homes. As they were heathen they took the riches from the churches and slew the priests. They captured place after place, driving the English before them, until the greater part of England fell into their hands. Young Alfred, king of Wessex, finally forced them to stop. While he drove them back some distance, he could not make them leave England.

ALFRED THE GREAT

Childhood of Alfred

301. Alfred the Boy. Alfred was born in 849. His mother was a good woman who gave much time and care to her children. Alfred learned early to read and to love books. A story is told of how Alfred won a beautiful book as a prize from his mother for learning to read it sooner than the other children. He spent much time in learning about wise men, in order to become wise himself.

Alfred fights the Danes

As he grew older he found other serious work to do. He aided his brother Ethelred, king of Wessex, to give battle to the Danes, who were moving south. In one battle Alfred led the English "with the rush of a wild boar," and defeated the Danes. Later the Danes drove them back and killed the English king. Alfred now became king of Wessex (871).

The story of the cakes

302. Alfred as King. Soon after Alfred became king his army was beaten and his men fled. With a little band of followers he hid in the marshes and there

built a fort on an island. A story is told of how he was lost while wandering alone, and asked for shelter at the hut of a herdsman. The good wife told him to watch some cakes on the fire while she was busy. Alfred was bending his bow and arrows, and forgetting the cakes, let them burn. When she came back and saw the burnt cakes the good wife scolded the king.

> "Can't you mind the cakes, man?
> And don't you see them burn?
> I'm bound you'll eat them fast enough,
> As soon as 'tis the turn."

Of course she did not know he was the king or she would not have scolded him.

Makes a treaty with the Danes

The next spring Alfred raised a large army, drove the Danes back, and forced them to make peace. By this treaty, and another later one, the Danes were given that part of England north and west of the river Thames. Alfred and his people ruled over the country south of them. The land of the Danes was called "Danelagh." They soon settled down to till the soil. Years later they became Christians and intermarried with the English.

STATUE OF ALFRED AT WINCHESTER

To protect England from other sea-rovers, Alfred now built many ships, and thus became the father of the English navy. The army was also made larger. Later, Vikings again reached the shores of England, but

Alfred's navy beat them off. Peaceful times now gave Alfred a chance to help his people in other ways.

303. What Alfred Did for England. It is difficult to know what the law is if it is not written, and injustice is often done to the people. Alfred now began the work of collecting and changing the laws of England. It is interesting to know what he thought of his work, as shown in his writing: "I, Alfred, gathered these laws together, and commanded many of them to be written which our forefathers held, those which seemed to me good. And many of those which seemed to me not good, I rejected, and in other wise commanded them to be held. For I durst not venture to set down in writing much of my own, for it was unknown to me what if it would please those who should come after us."

Advances learning

In those far-away days learning and schools were found in monasteries and in the churches. When the Danes came they destroyed most of these buildings. The people, therefore, were growing up in ignorance. Alfred felt then, as we feel now, that the people should be educated. So he invited wise men from other countries to come to England to teach his people. He built many churches and monasteries, and set up schools where the people might go to learn. But there must be books for them to read.

The learning of that day was mostly in Latin. Besides the priests and monks very few could read that language. "I wondered extremely," said Alfred, "that the good and wise men who were formerly all over England, and had perfectly learned all the books, did not wish to translate them into their own tongue."

Translates Latin books into English

He now began earnestly the work of making English books for his people. He translated a book containing a history of the world, and an account of two voyages to the north seas. He then put into English the famous book *Bede's History of England*. A book on religion by Pope Gregory the Great, and another of wise sayings, were soon after translated into English. In this way Alfred helped his people to learn to read, and to read good books. The English people have saved these works that their children for many generations to come might learn good things from them. Now, however, they must be translated into the English of our day before most of us can read them, for our language has changed greatly since Alfred's time.

Alfred also helped his people to learn new trades, and to do their work better in those trades they already knew. He had skilled workers from other countries come to England to help his people.

King Alfred's purpose

Alfred was a true and good man. He loved his home and his people. He said: "To sum up all, it has ever been my desire to live worthily while I was alive, and after my death to leave to those that should come after me my memory in good works."

His time well-

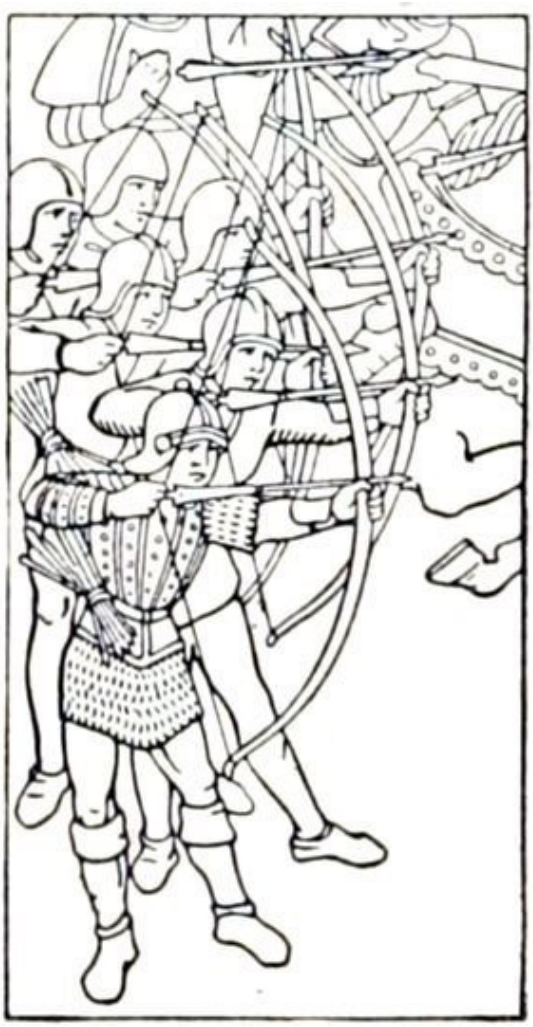
ordered

The daily life of the king was orderly. The twenty-four hours were divided into three parts; eight hours were given to the business of the people (governing), eight hours to study and prayer, and eight hours to exercise and rest. "As he had no clock, he measured out his time by burning candles, each of which lasted for four hours. In order that the candles might burn evenly and mark the time properly, he enclosed them in lanterns of thin horn" which he had invented.

Alfred the Great

Good King Alfred died in 901. A thousand years later the English raised a statue to him at Winchester. Because of his many good works he is called "Alfred the Great." He is one of the noblest men in all history.

THE NORMAN CONQUEST



From an old print

ENGLISH ARCHERS

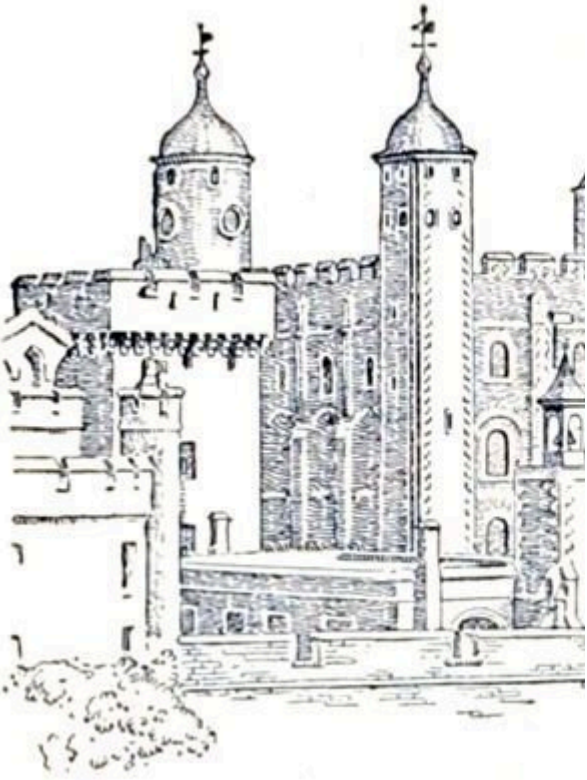
304. England Conquered Many Times. England had been conquered by the Romans, the Anglo-Saxons, and the Danes. Now she was conquered for the last time. The people who defeated her were the Normans of France. We have seen them come into France when the Normans scattered from their native lands in the north of Europe.

After Alfred died several kings ruled in England. When Harold was chosen king, the Duke of Normandy claimed the throne of England. He made this claim on the ground that the former English king had promised it to him. The Duke of Normandy has always been called William the Conqueror. He was a stern man who knew how to rule and fight. To establish his claim to the English throne he gathered together an army, crossed the Channel, and landed at Senlac, near Hastings.

ST. CUTHBERT, A NORMAN CATHE

305. The Battle of Hastings (1066). Harold had gathered his soldiers to resist the Normans. They fought bravely, as any good soldiers do when defending their native land. "All day long they stood

stubbornly together on a hilltop and beat back every attack with their swords and axes." When Harold was wounded, his men still fought on. William of Normandy now thought of a trick. He ordered his soldiers to pretend to be beaten and to retreat. This they did. The English soldiers now rushed forward to follow on their heels and cut down as many as they could. What was their dismay to see the Normans turning around and cutting down the English! When night came the English army was no more.



A NORMAN CASTLE BUILT IN 1078, NOW P

Character

of the Normans

England had staked all and had lost. Most of the country gave up. William was crowned king. He divided the land among his nobles, and England, which was democratic under the Anglo-Saxon became aristocratic under the rule of William. The Normans built the huge castles and cathedrals that dot the face of England. From their castles they lorded it over the Anglo-Saxon. But slowly this condition changed. After many years Normans and Anglo-Saxons commenced to grow friendly and their sons and daughters began to marry one another. The fusion of these two classes made the English people a more hardy and daring race than before.

How the Anglo-Saxons conquered the Normans

The local institutions which had grown up under the Anglo-Saxons now began to appear again. And in time the Normans may be said to have been conquered by the Anglo-Saxons. The Anglo-Saxon way of doing things belonged to the shire, the county, and the township. The people were called together in the different districts and practiced self-government.

THE STRUGGLE FOR THE GREAT CHARTER

Lawlessness of the nobles

306. Henry II a Great Ruler. Nearly a hundred years had gone by since William the Conqueror ruled England. There was great confusion in England. The Norman nobles were doing about as they pleased. They rode forth from their castles with their little armies and attacked each other, or attacked the citizens of a town, sometimes murdering them.

Then Henry II, the grandson of William the Conqueror, came to the throne. He was like his ancestor in many ways. He could brook no opposition. He was short and powerfully built. "He had red hair, a bull neck, and bow legs." He was careless about his dress, but was a hard worker. He saw that England needed order first. He therefore first of all compelled the nobles to behave by destroying some of their castles and driving the soldiers, which they had hired, back to France.

Trial by jury

He changed the way of finding out whether or not a man was guilty. Instead of employing the "ordeal by fire," by water, or by battle, he sent judges around to different places. These judges called together sixteen

good men who told them about those who they thought had broken the law. These men made up the Grand Jury.

Twelve other men were selected to examine into all the facts of a given case before the man was condemned or set free. This way of "trying men by jury" was a great improvement over the old way. In these ways Henry II brought the evildoers in England, whether high or low, to obey the law or be severely punished. England was now once more an orderly country.

John a worthless king

307. King John and the Pope. The son of Henry II, John, was about the worst king that England ever had. John was bad; he would not keep a promise, was a great liar, was cruel, was cowardly, was a traitor and a tyrant.

All the churches closed

Ever since the days of William the Conqueror the kings of England had been the dukes of Normandy. In a war with the French king, John lost all of Normandy. The Pope named as Archbishop of Canterbury a man whom John opposed. The Pope and John quarreled. "The Pope closed every church in England. No bells rang to call the people to prayer or to service on the Sabbath. No priest could preach. The dead could not be buried; the living might not marry. Every church stood silent and grass grew about the doors."

The Pope called on the king of France to take John's place, for in the eyes of the Pope John was no longer king of England. John turned about and begged for the Pope's mercy. He promised to submit to his will and to pay him a large amount of money each year.

The barons revolt

308. John Compelled to Grant Magna Charta. John was so cruel to his own people that the barons rose in revolt. Their forefathers had been free, and "why not we?" they asked. John only "laughed in his sleeve." But the barons meant business. They met in a meadow, called Runnymede, and summoned the king to face them. He came.

The meeting at Runnymede

It was a great scene. There stood the barons with their soldiers not far away. Their faces showed their anger and their decision to have their rights. The head of every house had his great banner which he had carried to victory on many a field of battle. But worse than all, there John saw the very Archbishop of Canterbury whom he had refused to permit to enter England. John was furious, but he could not help himself, for he heard the clanking of cold steel all around him.

What the Great Charter meant

The barons told him plainly that he must give all England a pledge to do right according to England's law. They told him that this promise must be signed by his own hand and on the signed paper he must place the royal seal. This great paper is called the Great Charter—"Magna Charta" (1215). Englishmen love it and have often shed their blood in defense of it.

The Petition of Right

For more than four hundred years this charter was the foundation of the rights of Englishmen. But they found in the charter only the old laws which had come down from good Edward the Confessor (1042-1066). In 1628 another English king, Charles I, was compelled by Parliament to sign another charter, called the "Petition of Right." In this new pledge to the English people they found nothing very new but mostly the old laws or principles contained in Magna Charta.

The Bill of Rights

When James II was driven from the throne by the English people they drew another charter, which King William signed (1689). This was called the "Bill of Rights." In this there were not many new things, but it contained mostly the principles of Magna Charta and the Petition of Right. Besides, this last charter contained several rules which made Parliament superior to the king.

When the American people after their Revolution came to make a Constitution, they put in it many

principles found in the English Bill of Rights. We ought to admire and love our Constitution because it contains ideas that have been tried out for more than ten centuries.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. *1.* England almost ruined by the Danes. *2.* Alfred's youth. *3.* Alfred as king. *4.* What he did for his people. *5.* The Norman conquest. *6.* Battle of Hastings. *7.* Norman nobles built castles and brought confusion to England after William's time. *8.* The Normans and Anglo-Saxons mix. *9.* Henry II a great king. *10.* Nobles forced to behave. *11.* Established the Grand Jury and the jury to try cases. *12.* King John lost Normandy and quarreled with the Pope. *13.* John submits to the Pope. *14.* Barons at Runnymede force John to sign Magna Charta. *15.* The Petition of Right, the Bill of Rights, and the American Constitution.

Study Questions. *1.* Why did the Danes go to England? *2.* Tell all the anecdotes about Alfred the Great. *3.* Prove that he was a good man. *4.* Why did the Normans invade England? *5.* Tell the story of Hastings. *6.* Explain the mixture of races in England. *7.* How did the Anglo-Saxons conquer the Normans? *8.* Who was Henry II, and what did he do? *9.* How did he prepare the way for Magna Charta? *10.* Prove that John was a bad king. *11.* Tell the story of Runnymede. *12.* Give the date of Magna Charta, the Petition of Right, and the Bill of Rights. *13.*

What do Americans owe these charters?

Suggested Readings. Mowry, *First Steps in History of England*, 38-97; Tappan, *England's Story*, 24-93; Blaisdell, *Stories from English History*, 27-77; Dickens, *A Child's History of England*, 18-24, 50-63, 89-110, 122-168; Guerber, *Story of the English*, 42-53, 73-84, 117-128; Yonge, *Young Folks' History of England*; Mace-Tanner, *Old Europe and Young America*, 162-183.

A PRONOUNCING INDEX

Webster's New International Dictionary, the Century Cyclopedia of Names, and the Encyclopedia Americana have been used as authorities for spelling and pronunciation.

Adirondack (ăd´ĭ-**rŏn´**dăk)
Achilles (ă-**kĭl´**ēz)
Aisne (ân)
Alamo (**ä´**lä-mō)
Alcuin (**ăl´**kwĭn)
Algonquin (ăl-**gŏŋ´**kĭn)
Allegheny (**ăl´**ē-gā´nĭ)
Altamaha (ôl´tȧ-mȧ-**hô´**)
Andes (**ăn´**dēz)
Angles (**ăŋ´**g'lz)
Annapolis (*ă*-**năp´**ō-lĭs)
Antietam (ăn-**tē´**t*ă*m)
Appalachian (ăp´ȧ-**lăch´**ĭ-*ă*n)
Appomattox (ăp´ō-**măt´***ŭ*ks)
Argonne (är´**gōn´**)
Aristotle (**ăr´**ĭs-tot'l)
Arizona (ăr´ĭ-**zō´**nȧ)
Arkansas (**är´**k*ă*n-sô´)
Armenia (är-**mē´**ni-ȧ)
Attila (ăt´ĭ-lȧ)
Babylon (băb´ ĭ-lŏn)
Bahama (bȧ-**hā´**mȧ)
Barcelona (bär´sē-**lō´**nȧ *or* bär´thā-**lō´**nä)

Bede (bēd)
Birmingham (**bûr**´mĭng-*ă*m)
Bon Homme Richard (bō´ **nŏm**´ rē´**shär**´)
Boone (boōn)
Boulton (**bōl**´*tŭ*n)
Breckinridge (**brĕk**´ĭn-rĭj)
Bristol (**brĭs**´*tŏ*l)
Buchanan (b*ŭ*-**kăn**´*ă*n *or* bū-**kăn**´*ă*n)
Buena Vista (**bwā**´nä **vēs**´tä)
Burgoyne (bûr-**goin**´)
Cabot, Sebastian (sē-**băs**´ch*ă*n **kăb**´*ŭ*t)
Cadiz (**kā**´dĭz *or* **kä**´thēth)
Caesar (**sē**´zȧr)
Cahokia (kȧ-**hō**´kĭ-ȧ)
Cairo (**kā**´rō)
Calhoun (kăl-**hoōn**´)
Canandaigua (kăn´*ă*n-**dā**´gwȧ)
Canaries (kȧ-**nā**´rĭz)
Cañon (**kăn**´y*ŭ*n)
Cape Breton (**brĕt**´*ŭ*n)
Carthage (**kär**´thāj)
Cartier, Jacques (zhäk kär´**tyā**´)
Catawba (kȧ-**tô**´bȧ)
Cavite (kä-**vē**´tā)
Cervera (thĕr-**vā**´rä)
Chalons (shä´lôN)
Champlain (shăm-**plān**´)
Charlemagne (**shär**´lē-mān)
Charles Martel (shȧrl or chärlz mär´**tel**´)
Château-Thierry (shä-**tō**´tyĕ´**rē**´)
Chattanooga (chăt´ȧ-**noō**´gȧ)
Cherokee (chĕr´ō-**kē**´)
Chesapeake (**chĕs**´ȧ-pēk)
Chickahominy (chĭk´ȧ-**hŏm**´ĭ-nĭ)
Chickamauga (chĭk´ȧ-**mô**´gȧ)
Cicero (**sĭs**´ĕr-ō)

Cimon (**sī**´mŏn)
Cincinnati (sĭn´sĭ-**nȧt**´ĭ)
Colorado (kŏl´ō̤-**rä**´dō)
Concord (**kŏŋ**´kẽrd)
Connecticut (kŏ-**nĕt**´ĭ-kŭt)
Constantinople (kŏn-stăn´tĭ-**nō**´p'l)
Cornwallis (kôrn-**wŏl**´ĭs)
Coronado (kō´rō̤-**nä**´thō)
Cortés (kō̤r-**tās**´)
Crèvecœur (krĕv´**kûr**´)
Danelagh (**dān**´lâ)
Darius (dȧ-**rī**´ŭs)
Dewey (**dū**´ĭ)
Diego (dē̤-**ā**´gō)
Dinwiddie (dĭn-**wĭd**´ĭ *or* **dĭn**´wĭd-ĭ)
Duluth (doo̤-**looth**´)
Duquesne (doo̤-**kān**´)
Duryea (**dụr**´yȧ)
Edison (**ĕd**´ĭ-sŭn)
El Caney (ĕl **kä**´nā)
Ericson (**ĕr**´ĭk-sȯn)
Ethelred (**eth**´ĕl-rĕd)
Eutaw Springs (**ū**´tô-)
Faneuil (**fŭn**´l)
Fannin (**făn**´ĭn)
Farragut (**făr**´ȧ-gŭt)
Foch (fōsh)
Frontenac (**frŏn**´tē̤-năk *or* frôN´tẽ-**nȧk**´)
Gadsden (**găds**´dĕn)
Gama, da (dä **gä**´mä)
Gaul (gôl)
Geneva (jē̤-**nē**´vȧ)
Genoa (**jĕn**´ō̤-ȧ)
Genoese (jĕn´ō̤-**ēz**´ *or*-**ēs**´)
Gettysburg (**gĕt**´ĭz-bûrg)
Ghent (gĕnt)

Gibault (zhē´**bō**´)
Goethals (**gû**´tălz´)
Goliad (gō´lĭ-**ăd**´)
Gooch (goo͞ch)
Gracchi (**grăk**´ī)
Guam (gwäm)
Guilford (**gĭl**´fĕrd)
Haiti (**hā**´tĭ)
Hannibal (hăn´ĭ-b*ă*l)
Hawaiian Islands (hä-**wī**´y*ă*n)
Hennepin (**hĕn**´ē-pĭn)
Hercules (**hër**´kū-lēz)
Herkimer (**hûr**´kĭ-mẽr)
Hong-kong (**hŏng**´-**kŏng**´)
Horatius (hō-**rā**´shĭ-ŭs)
Houston (**hūs**´t*ŭ*n)
Huguenot (**hū**´gẽ-nŏt)
Iceland (**īs**´l*ă*nd)
Indianapolis (ĭn´dĭ-*ă*n-**ăp**´ō͵-lĭs)
Iroquois (ĭr´ō͵-**kwoi**´)
Isthmus (**ĭs**´m*ŭ*s)
Jamaica (jȧ-**mā**´kȧ)
Joliet (zhō͵´**lyā**´ *or* **jō**´lĭ-ĕt)
Jutes (joo͞tz)
Kanawha (kȧ-**nô**´wȧ)
Kaskaskia (kăs-**kăs**´kĭ-ȧ)
Kieft (kēft)
Labrador (lăb´rȧ-**dôr**´)
Lachine (lȧ-**shēn**´)
Lafayette, de (dẽ lä´fā͵-**yĕt**´)
La Salle, de (dẽ lȧ **sȧl**´)
Leiden (**lī**´dĕn)
Leif Ericson (līf **ĕr**´ĭk-sȯn)
Leonidas (lē͵-**ŏn**´ĭ-dȧs)
Lisbon (**lĭz**´b*ŭ*n)
Los Angeles (lōs **ăŋ**´gĕl-ĕs)

Louisburg (**loo͞**´ĭs-bûrg)
Luzerne (lū-**zûrn**´)
McClellan (mȧ-**klĕl**´ăn)
McCrea (mȧ-**krā**´)
Macdonough (mȧk-**dŏn**´ō)
Macedonia (măs´ē-**dō**´nĭ-ȧ)
McGregor (măk-**grĕg**´ẽr)
Mackinac (**măk**´ĩ-nô)
McKinley (mȧ-**kĭn**´lĭ)
Magellan (mȧ-**jĕl**´ăn)
Magna Charta (**măg**´nă **kär**´tă)
Manila (mȧ-**nĭl**´ȧ)
Manitou (**măn**´ĩ-too͞)
Marathon (**măr**´ȧ-thŏn)
Marianas (*Ladrones*) (mä´rē-**ä**´näs, lȧ-**drōnz**´)
Marne (märn)
Marquette (**mär**´**kĕt**´)
Massachusetts (măs´ȧ-**choo͞**´sĕts)
Massasoit (**măs**´ȧ-soit´)
Matagorda (măt´ȧ-**gôr**´dȧ)
Maumee (mô-**mē**´)
Mediterranean (mĕd´ĩ-tẽr-**ā**´nē-*ă*n)
Memphis (**mĕm**´fĩs)
Merrimac (**mĕr**´ĩ-măk)
Milan (**mĭl**´*ă*n)
Minneapolis (mĭn´ē-**ăp**´ō-lĭs)
Minuit (**mĭn**´ū-ĭt)
Missouri (mĭ-**soo͞**´rĭ)
Mobile (mō-**bēl**´)
Monmouth (**mŏn**´mŭth)
Monongahela (mō-nŏŋ´gȧ-**hē**´lȧ)
Montcalm (mŏnt-**käm**´)
Monterey (mŏn´tĕ-**rā**´)
Montezuma (mŏn´tē-**zoo͞**´mȧ)
Monticello (mŏn´tē-**sĕl**´ō)
Montpelier (mŏnt-**pē**´lĭ-ẽr)

Moultrie (**mōl**´trĭ *or* **moo͞**´trĭ)
Munich (**mū**´nĭk)
Muybridge (**moi**´brĭj)
Nassau (**năs**´ô)
Natchez (**năch**´ĕz)
Newfoundland (**nū**´fŭnd-lănd´)
New Orleans (nū **ôr**´lē-*ănz*)
Nez Percé (nā pẽr-**sā**´)
Niagara (nī-**ăg**´ȧ-rȧ)
Ninevah (**nĭn**´ē-vĕ)
Nolichucky (nŏl´ĭ-**chŭk**´ĭ)
Normandy (**nôr**´măn-dĭ)
Oberlin (**ō**´bẽr-lĭn)
Oglethorpe (**ō**´g'l-thôrp)
Oneida (ō-**nī**´dȧ)
Oregon (**ŏr**´ē-gŏn)
Orinoco (ō´rĭ-**nō**´kō)
Oriskany (ō-**rĭs**´kȧ-nĭ)
Palos (**pä**´lōs)
Panama (păn´ȧ-**mä**´)
Patagonia (păt´ȧ-**gō**´nĭ-ȧ)
Penobscot (pē-**nŏb**´skŏt)
Pensacola (pĕn´sȧ-**kō**´lȧ)
Pericles (pĕr´ĭ-klēz)
Peru (pē-**roo͞**´)
Philadelphia (fĭl´ȧ-**dĕl**´fĭ-ȧ)
Philippine Islands (**fĭl**´ĭ-pĭn-*or*-pēn-)
Phoenician (fē-nĭsh´ăn)
Pinzón (pēn-**thōn**´)
Pisa (pē´sä)
Pizarro (pĭ-**zär**´rō *or* pē-thär´rō)
Platte (plăt)
Pocahontas (pō´kȧ-**hŏn**´tȧs)
Porto Rico (**pōr**´tō **rē**´kō)
Portugal (**pōr**´tū͡-*găl*)
Portuguese (**pōr**´tū͡-gēz)

Potomac (pō͝-**tō**´măk)
Poughkeepsie (pō͝-**kĭp**´sĭ)
Powhatan (pou´hȧ-**tăn**´)
Raleigh (**rô**´lĭ)
Rameses (**răm**´ē͝-sēz)
Rapidan (răp´ĭ-**dăn**´)
Rappahannock (răp´ȧ-**hăn**´ŭk)
Raritan (**răr**´ĭ-tăn)
Remus (**rē**´mŭs)
Richelieu (rē´shē-**loō**´)
Rio Grande (**rē**´ō **grän**´dā)
Roanoke (rō´ȧ-**nōk**´)
Rochambeau, de (dē rō͝´shäN´**bō**´)
Rochelle (rō͝-**shĕl**´)
Romulus (rŏm´ū-lŭs)
Roosevelt (**rō**´zē-vĕlt)
Rosecrans (**rō**´zē͝-krănz)
Sacramento (săk´rȧ-**mĕn**´tō)
St. Louis (sānt **loō**´ĭs *or*-**loō**´ĭ)
St. Mihiel (săN´mē´**yel**´)
Samoset (**săm**´ō͝-sĕt *or* sȧ-**mŏs**´-ĕt)
San Diego (săn dē͝-**ā**´gō)
San Francisco (săn frăn-**sĭs**´kō)
Sangamon (**săŋ**´gȧ-mŏn)
San Jacinto (săn jȧ-**sĭn**´tō)
San Joaquin (săn wä-**kēn**´)
San Juan (săn **hwän**´)
San Salvador (sän säl´vȧ-**dōr**´)
Santa Ana (**sän**´tä **ä**´nä)
Santa Maria (**sän**´tȧ mȧ-**rē**´ȧ)
Santiago (sän´tē͝-**ä**´gō)
Savannah (sȧ-**văn**´ȧ)
Schenectady (skĕ-**nĕk**´tȧ-dĭ)
Schley (slī)
Schuyler (**skī**´lẽr)
Schuylkill (**skoōl**´kĭl)

Seattle (sē-**ăt**´l)
Seminole (**sĕm**´ĭ-nōl)
Senlac (sĕn´lăk)
Serapis (sē-**rā**´pĭs)
Sevier (sē-**vēr**´)
Shafter (**sh**ȧ**f**´tẽr)
Shawnee (shô´**nē**´)
Shenandoah (shĕn´ăn-**dō**´ȧ)
Sierra Nevada (sĭ-**ĕr**´ȧ nē-**vä**´dȧ)
Sioux (soō)
Sloat (slōt)
Socrates (**sŏk**´rȧ-tēz)
Solway Firth (**sŏl**´wā-)
Spokane (spō´**kăn**´)
Spottsylvania (spŏt´sĭl-**vā**´nĭ-ȧ)
Steuben, von (fŏn **stū**´bĕn)
Stuyvesant (**stī**´vĕ-*s*ănt)
Tallapoosa (tăl´ȧ-**poō**´sȧ)
Tecumseh (tē-**kŭm**´sĕ)
Terre Haute (**tĕr**´ẽ **hōt**´)
Teutons (**tū**´tŏnz)
Thames (thāmz)
Thorvald (**tôr**´väld)
Ticonderoga (tī-kŏn´dẽr-**ō**´gȧ)
Tippecanoe (tĭp´ē-kȧ-**noō**´)
Ulysses (ū-**lĭs**´ēz)
Valparaiso (văl´pȧ-**rī**´sō)
Vancouver (văn-**koō**´vẽr)
Van Rensselaer (văn **rĕn**´sẽ-lẽr)
Venezuela (vĕn´ē-**zwē**´lȧ)
Venice (**vĕn**´ĭs)
Vergil (vûr´jĭl)
Vespucci, Amerigo (ä´mā-**rē**´gō vĕs-**poōt**´chē)
Vikings (**vī**´kingz)
Villa (**vē**´yȧ)
Vincennes (vĭn-**sĕnz**´)

Walla Walla (**wŏl**´ȧ **wŏl**´ȧ)
Watauga (wȧ-**tô**´gȧ)
Weehawken (wē-**hô**´kĕn)
Westminster (**wĕst**´mĭn-stẽr)
Windsor (**wĭn**´zẽr)
Xerxes (zûrk´zēz)
Zuñi (**zoō**´nyē)

THE INDEX

Abolitionists, 308-310, 318.
Achilles, 453, 456.
Adams, John, 131;
sent to First Continental Congress, 172;
at Second Continental Congress made Washington general of American troops, 131, 177;
appointed to help draw up Declaration of Independence, 232;
death, 238.
Adams, Samuel, 167-178;
portrait of, 167;
early turns to politics, 167;
leads movement against Stamp Act, 168;
forms "Sons of Liberty Society," 168;
opposes Tea Tax, 169;
writes Circular Letter, 169;
drives British out of Boston, 169;
and the Boston Tea Party, 129, 170, 171;
sends Paul Revere on his ride, 172;
goes to the First Continental Congress, 172;
forms companies of minutemen, 174;
goes to the Second Continental Congress, 177;
works for Declaration of Independence, 177;
made governor of Massachusetts, 178;
death, 178.
Addams, Jane, 412-413;

becomes interested in social service, 412;
portrait of, 412;
founds Hull House Social Settlement, 413.
"Agamemnon," The, 270.
Agricultural development, 374-376.
Agriculture, 416-421;
machinery used for, 418-419.
Airplane, 390-393;
uses of, 393, 397.
Alamo, capture of the, 279-281.
Albany, Fort Orange becomes, 90.
Alexander the Great, 455, 463, 469.
Alfred the Great, 484-488;
early life, 484-485;
king of Wessex, 485;
drives Danes back, 485;
begins to build fleet, 485-486;
re-makes the laws, 486;
advances learning, 486-487;
translations by, 487;
death, 488.
Algonquin Indians, 49-52.
"Alliance," The, 200-201.
Alsace-Lorraine, 442.
Altamaha River, colony on, 101-102.
American Committee for the Relief of Belgium, 431.
American Red Cross Society, 410-412.
American River, 289, 372.
Amerigo Vespucci, *see* Vespucci, Amerigo.
Anderson, Colonel, 323.
Anglo-Saxon tribes, 478-479, 488.
Annapolis, founded, 70.
Anthony, Susan B., 403-404;
portrait of, 403;
early life of, 403;

works for cause of woman's rights, 403-404;
death, 404.
Anthracite, 421-422.
Antietam, battle of, 338.
Anti-saloon crusade, 408.
Appomattox Court House, Lee's surrender at, 336.
Argonne, battle of, 441.
Aristotle, 454-455, 456.
"Ark," The, 69.
Armada, *see* Spanish Armada.
Arthur, President, 346-347;
portrait of, 347.
Ashland, Clay's home, 295, 298.
Athens, 456, 457-460;
assembly of, 458;
orators of, 458-459;
schools of, 459;
training for citizenship in, 459-460;
in the "Age of Pericles," 460-461.
Atlantic cable, 268-271.
Augusta, settled, 102.
Automobile, 388-390.

Babylonians, 448-449.
Ball, Mary, mother of Washington, 115, 116.
Baltimore, colony of, 70.
Baltimore, Lord, *see* Calvert, George *and* Cecil.
Baltimore and Ohio Railroad, started, 263.
Barlow, Captain, 44.
Barry, John, 199-201;
early life of, 199;
portrait of, 199;
captain of the *Lexington*, 199;
on the Delaware, 199-200;
commands the *Alliance*, 200, 201;

first commodore of American navy, 201;
death, 201.
Barton, Clara, 409-412;
early life of, 409-410;
portrait of, 410;
goes to the battlefield, 410-411;
and the American Red Cross, 410-412;
goes to Armenia, 411;
in the Spanish-American War, 411.
"**Battle Hymn of the Republic**," 405, 406.
Baxter, 265.
Belgium, invasion of, 426-427;
American Committee for the Relief of, 431;
and the German Peace Treaty, 442.
Bell, Alexander Graham, invents telephone, 268.
Benton, Jessie, 285.
Benton, Thomas H., 249, 253, 285.
"**Bill of Rights**," 493.
Biplane, 393.
Birmingham, Alabama, great coal and iron center, 423.
Blackbeard the Pirate, 72.
Black Hawk War, 317.
Blockade of southern ports, 324.
"Bon Homme Richard," The, 197, 198.
Boone, Daniel, 202-210;
early life of, 202-203;
crosses mountains, 203;
and the Indians, 204-209;
blazes famous "Wilderness Road," 205;
builds Fort Boonesboro, 206;
goes to Kentucky, 206;
at siege of Boonesboro, 208-209;
portrait of, 209;
moves to Missouri, 210;

death, 210.
Boonesboro, Fort, 206, 207, 208, 217.
Booth, John Wilkes, 327.
Boston, settled, 82;
British soldiers in, 129, 169, 172.
Boston Port Bill, 129, 172.
"**Boston Tea Party**," 162-163, 170-172.
Boulton, Matthew, inventor, 259.
Bowie, Colonel, 279.
Braddock, General, 123-124.
Bradford, William, 73, 76, 79, 81.
Brandywine, battle of the, 137.
Breckenridge, John, 322.
Brewster, William, 73.
Bridgewater, Duke of, 258.
Britons, 472, 478.
Buchanan, President, 270.
Buckner, General, 333.
Buffalo, herds of, 24.
Bunker Hill, battle of, 132, 176-177.
Burgesses, House of, 127, 159, 162, 167, 230, 231.
Burgoyne, General, 217;
compliments Morgan, 186.
Burke, Edmund, 162, 233.
Bushnell, ——, work on submarine, 394.

Cabot, John, 34-37;
born in Genoa, 34;
voyages of, 34-36;
statue of, 35;
seeks India and discovers Labrador, 35;
honored by king and people on return to England, 35, 36;
on second voyage, 36;
England claims large part of North America through discoveries of, 37.

Caesar, Julius, 471-473.
Cahokia, 220, 223.
Calhoun, John C., 252, 297, 306-311;
early life of, 306;
portrait of, 307;
works hard for success of army in War of 1812, 307;
made Secretary of War, 307;
twice elected Vice-President, 307;
favors nullification, 308;
opposes Abolitionists, 308-309;
annexes Texas, 310;
opposes Compromise of 1850, 310;
death, 311.
California, conquest of, 288-289;
missionaries in, 291-292;
sends greatest number of volunteers to Spanish-American War, 356;
admitted as a state, 373;
an agricultural state, 375.
Calvert, Cecil, 69-70;
and the Indians, 69;
locates village of St. Marys, 69.
Calvert, George, 69;
prepares to found a colony for Catholics and Protestants, 69;
colony named after, 70.
Camden, battle of, 182.
Campbell, Colonel, 213, 214.
Canada, French in, 49-53, 106-114, 121.
Cannae, battle of, 468.
Cape Breton Island, 35.
Cape of Good Hope, rounded by Drake, 39.
Carpenter's Hall, 163, 173.
Carroll, Charles, 263.
Carson, Kit, 285, 286, 288.

Cartier, Jacques, takes possession of Montreal for France, 49.
Carthage, 467-469.
Carver, John, first Pilgrim governor, 73, 75, 78.
Catholics, 68, 69.
Catiline, 475.
Cattle raising, 419-421.
Cavaliers, settle in Virginia, 69.
Cervera, Admiral, 357.
Chalons, battle of, 477.
Champlain, Lake, discovered, 50.
Champlain, Samuel de, 49-53;
portrait of, 49;
founds Quebec, 49;
and Indians, 49-52;
discovers Lake Champlain, 50;
death, 53.
Chancellorsville, battle of, 338.
Charlemagne, 479-482;
grandson of Charles Martel, 479-480;
appearance, 480;
and the School of the Palace, 481;
crowned Emperor of Rome, 481;
methods of governing, 482;
fall of empire, 482.
Charles I, friend of Lord Baltimore, 69;
gives charter to Puritan colony, 81.
Charles II, and William Penn, 94;
gives Pennsylvania to Penn, 96.
Charles Martel, 479-480.
Charles the Great, *see* Charlemagne.
Charleston, 101-102, 104;
surrenders to Cornwallis, 182.
Charleston earthquake, Red Cross Society relieves suffering caused by the, 411.

Charleston Harbor, 323.
Château-Thierry, battle of, 439.
Cherokee Indians, 104, 211, 277, 278.
Chickamauga, 335.
Christianity, rise of, 475;
becomes widespread, 478-479.
Cicero, 475.
Cimon, 461.
Cincinnatus, 465.
Circular Letter, Adams', 168-169, 173.
Cities, development of, in West, 376.
Civil War, 323-327, 337-341;
woman's part in the, 400-401, 404;
Clara Barton's part in the, 410.
Clark, Captain William, 239-244;
and Lewis sent to explore Louisiana Purchase, 239;
and Lewis and the Indians, 239-243;
portrait of, 240;
and Lewis cross Rocky Mountains, 240, 241;
with Lewis reaches Columbia River, 241;
with Lewis reaches the Pacific, 242;
and Lewis return to St. Louis, 242;
rewarded by Congress, 242;
appointed governor of Missouri Territory, 243.
Clark, George Rogers, 216-224, 236;
in Virginia, 216;
portrait of, 217;
becomes a leader in Kentucky, 217;
at Harrodsburg, 217;
receives aid from Patrick Henry to raise army, 218;
at old Vincennes, 218-224;
at Louisville, 218;
surprises Kaskaskia, 218-219;

builds the *Willing*, 220;
marches on Vincennes, 220-222;
retakes Vincennes, 223;
unrewarded, 224;
result of his work, 224;
death, 224.
"**Clark's Grant**," 224.
Clay, Henry, 294-300;
"mill boy of the Slashes," 294;
studies law, 295;
goes to Lexington, 295;
sent to United States Senate, 295;
speaker of House of Representatives, 296;
urges war in 1812, 296;
and the Treaty of Ghent, 296;
and the Missouri Compromise, 296;
and his Compromise Tariff Law, 297;
the "Pacificator," 297;
portrait of, 297;
retires to Ashland, 298;
and the Compromise of 1850, 298-299;
receives ovation from the people, 299;
death, 300.
"**Clermont," The**, first successful steamboat, 259-260.
Clovis, 479.
Coal, 421-422.
Cold Harbor, battle of, 336, 349.
Cold storage of meat, 421.
Colorado, Grand Cañon of the, 24.
"**Columbia," The**, 238.
Columbia River, discovered by Captain Gray, 238;
Lewis and Clark embark on, 242;
Fremont on, 286.
Columbus, Christopher, 2-16, 18, 31;

boyhood of, 2, 3;
goes to Lisbon, 4;
plans new route to India, 5;
unfairly treated by King of Portugal, 5;
seeks aid of Spain, 6;
begs bread for his son at monastery, 7;
portrait of, 8;
first voyage of, 9-13;
discovers the New World, 11;
names the natives Indians, 12;
honored on return to Spain, 13, 14, 15;
last voyages of, 15, 16;
death, 16;
effect in England of discoveries of, 34.
Committees of Correspondence, 232.
Compromise of 1850, 298, 300, 305, 310.
Compromise Tariff Law, 297.
Concord, battle of, 130, 175.
Confederate States of America, formed, 323;
capital of, 326;
war between Union and, 323-327.
Congress, 130, 134, 138, 141, 154, 155, 163, 232, 233;
First Continental, 172-174;
Second Continental, 177;
disputes in, 235;
Clay in, 296-300;
Webster in, 302;
Calhoun in, 306-307.
Constantine, Emperor of Rome, 475.
Constitution of the United States, 143, 144, 156, 157, 166, 493.
Cooper, Peter, 269.
Corn-fed cattle, 419-420.
Corn Island, 218;
Clark dies on, 224.

Cornwallis, Lord, 136, 137, 213;
Washington outwits, 139-140;
surrenders at Yorktown, 140;
gains victories, 182, 183;
Green turns tide against, 185;
pursues Morgan, 188;
at Guilford Court House, 189;
caught at Yorktown, 180;
orders Tarleton to catch Marion, 191.
Coronado, Francisco, 24;
searches for rich cities, 24;
discovers Grand Cañon of the Colorado, 24;
finds buffalo, 24;
returns home, 24.
Cortés, Hernando, 18-22, 23, 28, 37;
invades Mexico, 18;
sinks his ships, 18;
armor of, 19;
attacks the Indians, 20;
takes Mexican capital, 19, 20;
puts Montezuma to death, 21;
conquers Mexico, 21;
visits Spain, 21;
portrait of, 21;
shares Columbus' fate, 22.
Cotton, 227, 228;
fields and factories, 420-421.
Cotton gin, invention of, 227-228;
present-day machine built along lines of Whitney's, 416.
Cotton-seed oil, 417.
Cowpens, battle of the, 186, 188.
"**Cradle of Liberty**," 169.
Creek Indians, 104, 249.
Crèvecœur, Fort, 111.
"**Croatoan**," 46.

Crockett, David, 279, 282-283;
boyhood of, 282;
enlisted under Jackson, 282;
elected to Congress, 282;
fights for Texas at the Alamo, 282-283;
death, 283.
Cuba, discovered by Columbus, 13;
Spanish persecution in, 354-355;
United States at war with Spain in behalf of, 354-358;
made a republic, 358.
Custis, Martha, 126.
Cuzco, where Pizarro found fabulous riches, 23.

Da Gama, Vasco, rounds Africa, 28.
Danes, 484, 485, 486.
Dare, Virginia, first white child of English parents born in America, 45.
Darius, 461.
Daughters of Liberty, 400.
Davis, Jefferson, president of the Confederacy, 326, 336.
Declaration of Independence, Franklin appointed to help write, 155, 156;
made, 177, 178;
Samuel Adams worked hard for, 177;
Jefferson author of, 229, 232.
"**Declaration of Sentiments**," 402.
Democratic party, 322, 348, 351.
Democratic-Republican party, formed by Thomas Jefferson, 235.
Depth bomb, 397.
De Soto, Hernando, 24-28;
makes an expedition to Florida, 24-26;
welcomed at Cuba, 24;
portrait of, 25;

cruel to natives, 25;
fights way northward and inland, 25;
discovers Mississippi, 26-27;
marches far northward and westward, 27;
returns to the Mississippi and dies, 27.
"Deutschland," The, 397.
Dewey, Admiral George, 355;
portrait of, 355.
Dictaphone, 387-388.
Diego, son of Columbus, 6, 7.
Dinwiddie, Governor, 121.
Dirigibles, 391, 394.
"**Dogwood Papers**," 148.
Dorchester Heights, 133.
Douglas, Stephen A., debates with Lincoln, 319-322;
nominated by northern Democrats, 322.
"Dove," The, 69.
Drake, Sir Francis, 37-42;
ruined by Spaniards, 37;
portrait of, 38;
returns to England with Spanish gold, 38;
on voyage around the world, 38-40;
captures Spanish treasure ships in Pacific, 39, 41, 43;
given title by Queen Elizabeth, 40;
takes command of fleet to fight Spain, 40;
destroys Spanish towns in Cuba, 41;
burns Spanish ships, 41;
and the Spanish Armada, 42;
takes Raleigh's colony home, 45.
"Drake," The, 196.
Duquesne, Fort, 122;
captured, 126.
Duryea, Charles, 389.
Dutch, explorations of the, 54-59;

establish trading posts, 56;
Indians and the, 56-57;
fur traders, 57-58;
settle New Netherland, 58-59;
governed by Stuyvesant, 88-90;
surrender to the English, 90-91;
manners and customs of the, 91-92.
Dutch traders, 56-59.
Dutch West India Company, 88.

"**Ebenezer**," German colony in Georgia, 102.
Edison, Thomas A., 380-385, 387;
boyhood of, 380-381;
experiments in telegraphy, 381;
receives $40,000 for his inventions, 382;
portrait of, 382;
builds his first laboratory in Newark, 383;
builds a second laboratory at Menlo Park, 383;
invents microphone, megaphone, and phonograph, 383-384;
develops the electric light, 384-385;
and moving pictures, 385;
and the dictaphone, 387.
"Edward," The, 199.
"Effingham," The, 199.
Egypt, 446-448, 450;
and the Nile, 446-447;
irrigation in, 447;
and its kings, 447;
civilization in, 447-448;
Phoenicians spread learning of, 450.
El Caney, capture of, 356-357.
Electricity, Edison the wizard of, 383-385.
Electric light, developed by Edison, 384-385.
Eliot, John, preaches to the Indians, 83-84.

Elizabeth, Queen of England, knights Drake, 40;
favors Raleigh, 43, 44;
names colony of Virginia, 44.
Emancipation Proclamation, 326.
England, explorations made by, 34-47;
claims large part of North America, 37;
quarrel between Spain and, 37-42;
first permanent settlement in America by, 60-61.
Ericson, Leif, 1, 484.
Ericson, Thorvald, 1-2.
Eric the Red, 1.
Erie, Lake, battle of, 244-245.
Erie Canal, 262.
Euphrates River, 448.
Eutaw Springs, battle of, 189.
Evans, Oliver, 388.

Fairfax, Lord, 119, 122, 128;
friend of Washington, 120;
builds Greenway Court, 120;
makes Washington public surveyor, 120;
returns to England, 142.
Fair Oaks, battle of, 338.
Faneuil Hall, 169.
Fannin, General, 280.
Farming, *see* Agriculture.
Farragut, Captain David, 325.
"**Father of Waters**," 112.
Federalist party, 235.
Ferdinand and Isabella, 6, 15.
Ferguson, Colonel, 213;
defeated at Kings Mountain, 213-214.
Field, Cyrus W., 268-272;
early success of, 269;
becomes interested in telegraph lines, 269;

conceives idea of connecting Europe and America, 269;
aided by Peter Cooper and other wealthy men, 269;
success of invention of, 270;
portrait of, 270;
receives honors from many nations, 271;
death, 272.
Fillmore, President, 305.
Fitch, John, 257.
Five Nations, *see* Iroquois.
Fletcher, Grace, 302.
Florida, De Leon takes possession of, 17;
De Soto's expedition to, 24-26.
Flour mills, 418.
Foch, Ferdinand, 437, 438, 439.
Foote, Commodore, 333.
Forbes, General, 126.
Forts, *see under* names of forts.
France, aids Americans, 139;
discoverers and explorers of, 49-53;
missionaries of, 53, 106-114.
Franciscan friars, 300-302.
Franklin, Benjamin, 124, 147-157;
early life of, 147-151;
portrait of, 148;
in London, 150;
editor of *Pennsylvania Gazette* in Philadelphia, 151;
founds three great institutions, 151;
invents stove, 151;
forms first fire department in America, 151;
author of *Poor Richard's Almanac*, 151-152;
clerk of Pennsylvania Assembly, 152;
postmaster-general, 152;
plans union of colonies, 153;

becomes famed as scientist, 153;
experiments with electricity, 153;
sent to England to defend colonies, 154;
appointed to help write Declaration of Independence, 155, 232;
secures French aid for America, 155;
helps make treaty of peace, 155;
helps make and signs Constitution, 156, 157;
death, 157.
Franks, 479.
Fraunces' Tavern, 140.
Frederica, 103.
Fredericksburg, battle of, 346.
Fremont, John C., 283-290;
early life of, 284;
goes to South America, 284;
becomes a civil engineer, 284;
loves the wild life, 284;
portrait of, 285;
marries Jessie Benton, 285;
receives permission to explore South Pass, 285;
unfurls Stars and Stripes from summit of Fremonts Peak, 285;
seeks a more southerly route to Oregon and California, 285;
reaches Great Salt Lake, 286;
goes to Fort Vancouver, 286;
makes a circuit of the Great Basin and crosses mountains to California, 287;
third expedition of, 288;
in Mexican War, 288-289;
elected to United States Senate, 289;
fifth expedition of, 289;
first Republican candidate for president, 289;

major general in Civil War, 290;
governor of Arizona, 290;
death, 290.
Fremonts Peak, 285.
French, in North America, 49-53, 106-113.
French allies, in Revolutionary War, 139.
French and Indian War, 114, 121, 126, 130.
French in Canada, 121.
Friends, *see* Quakers.
"Friendship," The, 194.
Frontenac, Count, sends Joliet and Marquette to find Mississippi, 53;
sends La Salle and Hennepin, 106;
"children of," 111.
Frontenac, Fort, 106, 107, 111.
Fruit growing, 375.
Fugitive Slave Law, 407.
Fulton, Robert, 257-264, 395;
portrait of, 258;
starts life as portrait painter, 258;
meets James Watt, 258;
becomes interested in driving power of steam, 258;
makes trial steamboat in France, 258;
builds the *Clermont*, 259;
wonderful success of invention of, 260, 261;
death, 261;
and the invention of the submarine, 395.
Fur traders, 56-58 106-107, 243-244.

Gadsden, Christopher, 173.
Gage, General, 130, 131, 183.
Galena, 332.
Galveston flood, Red Cross relieves suffering caused by the, 411.
Gama, Vasco da, *see* Da Gama, Vasco.
Garfield, James J., 345-347;

portrait of, 345.
Gates, General, 182.
Gauls, 466, 472, 475.
George II, grants charter to Oglethorpe, 101.
George III, 135, 136, 141, 158, 159, 173.
Georgia, founded, 101-103;
planters of, 103-104.
Germanic tribes, 476, 477, 478, 479, 481.
Germany, one of the Central Powers, 426;
protests against United States trading with Allies, 427;
lawless submarine policy of, 428, 430-431;
America enters the war against, 431;
makes last great attack, 437;
defeated on all fronts, 441;
accepts armistice, 442;
treaty of peace with, 442-443.
Gettysburg, battle of, 335, 338.
Ghent, *see* Treaty of.
Gibault, Father, 220, 221.
Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 43.
Gist, Christopher, 122.
Goethals, George Washington, 376-378;
portrait of, 376;
early life of, 377;
in Spanish-American War, 377;
in charge of construction of Panama Canal, 377-378;
appointed governor of Canal Zone, 377.
Gold, discovery and mining of, 289, 372-373, 375.
"Golden Hind," The, Drake's ship, 38, 39, 40.
Gold Fleet, Spanish, 41.
Goliad, massacre at, 280.
Gooch, Daniel, 271.
"Good Man Richard," The, 197-198.

Gore, Christopher, 311.
Gracchi, the, 470.
Grain, 417-419;
elevators for 418.
Grant, Ulysses S., 325, 327, 331-337;
early life of, 331-332;
in Mexican War, 332;
promoted in the army, 333;
at Forts Henry and Donelson, 333;
portrait of, 333;
at Vicksburg, 334;
at Gettysburg, 335;
made commander of the Union armies, 336;
in the "Wilderness," 336;
Lee surrenders to, 336;
elected president, 337;
death, 337.
Gray, Captain Robert, the first to carry the Stars and Stripes around the world, 238;
discovers the Columbia River, 238.
Gray, ——, invents telephone, 268.
Great Basin, Fremont explores the, 287-288.
Great Charter, struggle for the, 490-493.
Great Salt Lake, 286.
Greater Greece, 451-452.
Greece, 450-463;
geography of, 450-451;
legendary heroes of, 452-453;
philosophers of, 453-455;
wins admiration of Philip of Macedon, 455;
government of, 456-460;
civilization of, 458-460;
in "Age of Pericles," 460-461;
defeats Persian kings, 461-463;
Alexander's conquests spread civilization of, 463.

Green Bay, 108.
Greene, Mrs., 227-228.
Greene, Nathanael, 182-185, 188, 189, 190, 191;
portrait of, 182;
given command of army in South, 182;
goes to Boston and meets Washington, 184;
made one of Washington's generals, 184;
divides army, 184;
on great march, 188;
at Guilford Court House, 189;
drives British into Charleston, 189;
honored by his country, 189;
praises General Marion, 191.
Greenland, discovered by Northmen, 1, 484.
Greenway Court, 120-121, 125.
Grenville, Sir Richard, 44.
"Griffin," The, 108-109.
Guam, annexed by United States, 359.
Guatemotzin, statue of, 20.
Guilds, 446.
Guilford Court House, battle of, 189.

Hale, Nathan, 134, 179-182;
in college, 179;
statue of, 180;
joins Washington, 180;
captures British man-of-war, 180;
passes safely through British lines, 181;
captured, 181;
death, 181.
"Half Moon," The, 54, 55.
Hamilton, Alexander, 235.
Hamilton, General, 220, 222.
Hancock, John, 177, 233.
Hanks, John, 315, 316, 321.
Hannibal, 467-469.

Harlem Heights, 134.
Harrison, Benjamin, 142, 232, 349, 351.
Harrison, William Henry, 304, 319.
Harrodsburg, 217.
Harvard Elm, 132.
Harvesting machines, 418.
Hastings, battle of, 489.
Hawaiian Islands, annexed by United States, 356.
Hawkins, Captain, 37.
Hayes, Lucy Webb, 344.
Hayes, Rutherford B., 342-344;
portrait of, 343.
Hayne, Senator, 303.
"**Hearts Content**," 271.
Helen of Troy, 452-453.
Helm, Captain, 220.
Henderson, Richard, 205.
Hennepin, a missionary, 106, 107, 110, 111.
Henry, Patrick, 129-130, 153, 158-167, 217, 230, 234;
portrait of, 158;
opposes Stamp Act, 159;
birth and parentage of, 160;
early failures of, 160;
orator of the Revolution, 160-167;
succeeds as a lawyer, 161;
first great speech of, 161;
elected to House of Burgesses, 161-162;
speaks against Stamp Act, 162;
sent to Continental Congress, 163;
offers resolutions for arming Virginia, 164;
defends his resolutions in great speech, 164-165;
in forefront of struggle with England, 166;
statue of, 166;

aids George Rogers Clark in raising an army, 217-218;
death, 166.
Henry, Prince of Portugal, 3.
Henry II, 490-491.
Henry VII, 35, 37.
Henry VIII, 37.
Hercules, 452.
Hermitage, The, 254.
Hessians, The, 135, 136.
Hieroglyphics, 448-449.
Hobkirks Hill, 189.
Holland, John P., and the submarine, 395-397;
portrait of, 395.
Homestead Law, 373.
Hooker, 335.
Hoover, Herbert, 431-432.
Horace, 475.
Horatius, 464-465.
Horseshoe Bend, battle of, 249, 277.
Houston, General Sam, 277-281;
lives with Cherokees, 277;
in battle of Horseshoe Bend, 277;
portrait of, 278;
studies law, 278;
goes to Congress, 278;
governor of Tennessee, 278;
visits Washington, 279;
goes to Texas, 279;
in Texas War with Mexico, 279-281;
at battle of San Jacinto, 280-281;
elected first president of Texas, 281;
sent to United States Senate, 281;
death, 281.
Howe, Elias, 274-276.

Howe, General, 133, 134, 137, 181.
Howe, Julia Ward, 404-406;
early life of, 404-405;
writes "Battle Hymn of the Republic," 405;
and the Woman's Club, 405-406;
portrait of, 406.
Howe, Samuel Gridley, 405.
Hudson, Henry, 54-56;
discovers Hudson River, 54;
portrait of, 55;
cruel to Indians, 55;
seeks northwest passage, 55-56;
set adrift by sailors, 56.
Hudson Bay Company, 286.
Hudson River, 54-55.
Hull House, 413.
Huns, 476-477.
Hydroplane, 394.

Iceland, discovered by Northmen, 1.
Illinois Indians, 111.
Illinois River, 109, 110, 111.
Inca, captured by Pizarro, 23.
Independence, Declaration of, *see* Declaration of Independence.
India, search for new route to, 2-16, 34-37;
Magellan first to reach, 31.
Indian corn, taken to England, 45;
best crop of the Pilgrims, 79.
Indians, first seen by white men, 12;
named by Columbus, 12;
Cortés and the Mexican, 18-21;
great city of the, 18-21;
cruelly treated by De Soto, 25;
welcomed Raleigh's sailors, 44;
Lane cruel to, 45;
hostile to English settlers, 45;

Champlain and the, 49-53;
Marquette loved by the, 53;
carried Champlain's remains to Mackinac, 53;
friendly to Hudson but repaid with cruelty, 55;
and the Dutch, 56-58, 59;
and the Jamestown Colony, 61-66;
friendly to Lord Baltimore, 69;
Pilgrims and, 76, 78-81, 84-85;
John Eliot and the, 83-84;
Penn's treaty with the, 98;
Oglethorpe made treaty with the, 103;
La Salle and the, 107, 110-112;
French trappers and, 113-114;
in French and Indian War, 114, 121-126;
war dance of the, 119;
Boone and the, 204-209;
fought with British in Revolutionary War, 207-209;
Sevier and the, 211-215;
Clark and the, 216, 217;
friendly to Lewis and Clark, 239-243;
missionaries among the, 243-244, 301;
Jackson and the, 247-249;
War of the Seminole, 252;
Houston and the, 277-278;
placed on reservations by U. S. government, 375;
see also names of Indians.
Indigo, 104.
Iron, 422-423.
Iroquois Indians, 50, 52, 56, 107, 111, 112, 114.
Irrigation, 375, 446-447.
Isabella, Queen of Spain, 6, 8, 15.

Italians, 102.

Jackson, Andrew, 245-254, 282, 308;
early life of, 246-247;
taken prisoner by the English, 246;
lawyer before twenty, 247;
emigrates to Tennessee, 247;
made U. S. senator, 248;
in War of 1812, 248-252;
wins the name "Old Hickory," 249;
fights Indians, 249;
at battle of New Orleans, 250-252;
portrait of, 252;
twice elected president, 252;
and the United States Bank, 252-253;
and nullification, 254, 308;
death, 254.
Jackson, General "Stonewall," 338.
James I, puts Raleigh to death, 47;
gives London Company a charter, 60;
makes Calvert, Baron of Baltimore, 69.
Jamestown, settled, 61;
life in the colony of, 60-66, 71-72.
Jefferson, Thomas, 229-238;
early life of, 229;
studies law, 230;
meets Patrick Henry, 230;
member of House of Burgesses, 231;
marries, 231;
and Committee of Correspondence, 232;
and the Declaration of Independence, 232-233;
governor of Virginia, 234;
minister to France, 234;
first Secretary of State, 235;
leader of the Democratic-Republican party, 235;

elected president, 235;
portrait of, 235;
purchases Louisiana, 236;
sends out Lewis and Clark Expedition, 237;
elected president second time, 237;
"Sage of Monticello," 238;
death, 238.
Jenkins, C. Francis, 385.
Jews, 447, 449.
John, King of England, 491-492.
John II, of Portugal, 5.
Johnson, Andrew, 328-329, 337;
portrait of, 328.
Johnston, General Joseph E., 338, 340.
Johnston, Sarah Bush, stepmother of President Lincoln, 314.
Joliet, 53, 106, 112;
with Marquette sets out to find the Mississippi, 53;
sails down the Mississippi, 53;
death, 53.
Jones, John Paul, 194-198;
early life of, 194;
enters American navy, 195;
portrait of, 195;
shows his mettle in West Indies, 196;
sent to France, 196;
in Whitehaven, 196;
on English coast, 197;
captain of *Bon Homme Richard*, 197;
and the *Serapis*, 197-198;
great naval hero, 198.
Jonesboro, 247.
Jutes, 478.

Kaiser, The German, 430, 442.
Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 319-322.

Kaskaskia, Clark at, 218, 219, 223.
Keith, Sir William, 150.
Kentucky, Boone in, 204-210, 216.
Kieft, Governor, 59.
King Philip, Indian chief, 84-85.
Kings Mountain, battle of, 184, 213-214.
Knox, General, 201.
Knoxville, 215, 216.

Labrador, discovered by John Cabot, 35.
Lachine, 106.
Lafayette, Marquis de, 137, 139, 140, 189;
visits Washington after war, 142-143;
rewarded by Congress, 143.
Lafayette Squadron, 431.
Lake Superior, iron "ranges" of, 422.
Lane, Ralph, 44.
La Salle, Robert Cavelier, Sieur de, 106-113;
seeks Canada, 106;
builds Fort Frontenac, 106;
portrait of, 107;
returns to France for permission to explore Mississippi Valley, 107;
sets out for Mississippi, 107;
builds *Griffin*, 108-109;
builds Fort Crèvecœur, 111;
plans union of Indian tribes, 111;
journeys to mouth of Mississippi, 112;
takes possession for France, 112;
builds Fort St. Louis on Starved Rock, 112;
returns to France and brings over colony, 113;
killed by disappointed colonists, 113.
"Lawrence," The, Perry's flagship, 245.
Lee, Henry, "Light Horse Harry," 184.
Lee, Richard Henry, 130, 173, 177, 232.
Lee, Robert E., 325, 326, 327, 335, 336,

337-341;
at West Point, 337;
wins fame and honor in Mexican War, 337;
in charge at West Point, 337;
in charge of Confederate army at Richmond, 338;
defeats McClellan, 338;
retreats from Maryland after battle of Antietam, 338;
at Fredericksburg and Chancellorsville, 338;
at Gettysburg, 338;
in the "Wilderness," 339;
plans to join Johnston, 340;
meets Sheridan, 340;
surrenders to Grant, 341;
president of Washington College, 341;
death, 341;
portrait of, 341.
Leonidas, 462.
Lewis, Captain Meriwether, 239-244;
portrait of, 239;
and Clark sent to explore Louisiana Purchase, 239;
and Clark and the Indians, 239-243;
and Clark cross Rocky Mountains, 240-241;
and Clark reach the Columbia River, 242;
and Clark reach the Pacific, 242;
and Clark return to St. Louis, 242;
rewarded by Congress, 242;
made governor of Louisiana Territory, 243.
Lewis and Clark Expedition, 237, 239.
Lexington, battle of, 130, 175.
"Lexington," The, 199.
Lincoln, Abraham, 313-329;
born in Kentucky backwoods, 313;
early life of, 313-317;

in Black Hawk War, 317;
goes to Illinois legislature, 318;
speaks for General Harrison and Henry Clay, 319;
goes to Congress, 319;
the champion against Douglas, 319;
in the U. S. Senate, 320;
debates between Douglas and, 320-322;
elected president, 322;
calls for troops, 323;
portrait of, 325;
issues Emancipation Proclamation, 326;
assassinated, 327;
and reconstruction, 328-329.
Lincoln, General, 182.
Lincoln, Nancy Hanks, 314.
Livingston, Robert R., helps draw up Declaration of Independence, 232;
helps make Louisiana Purchase, 236;
aids Fulton, 258, 259.
Locomotive invented, 263.
Loe, Thomas, 92, 94.
London Company, formed, 60.
"**Lone Star Republic**," 281.
Longstreet, William, 257.
Lookout Mountain, battle of, 335.
Los Angeles, 376.
Louisiana Purchase, 236-238;
Lewis and Clark explore territory obtained by, 237, 239-244.
Louisiana Purchase Exposition, 237.
Louisville, 218.
"Lusitania," The, 428, 430.
"Luzerne," The, 201.

McClellan, General, and Lee, 325, 338;
at Antietam, 338.

Mace, Samuel, 46.
Macedonian phalanx, 455, 463, 469.
McCormick, Cyrus H., 272-274.
McKinley, William, 352-359;
early life of, 352-353;
in the Civil War, 353;
becomes a successful lawyer, 353;
portrait of, 353;
in Congress, 354;
and the Spanish-American War, 354-359;
assassinated, 359.
Madison, James, 250, 296.
Magellan, Ferdinand, 28-31;
portrait of, 28;
first to sail around earth and prove it round, 28-31;
names, and is first to cross Pacific Ocean, 30;
visits the Philippines, 30;
killed defending his sailors, 31.
Magellan, Strait of, discovered, 30;
Drake sails through, 38.
"**Magna Charta**," *see* Great Charter.
"**Maine," The**, 355.
Manhattan Island, trading posts established on, 56;
purchase of, 58.
Manila, bay, 355-356;
city of, 357.
Manufactures, 421-423.
Marathon, battle of, 461-462.
Marconi, invents wireless telegraphy, 268.
Marianas, 30.
Marion, Francis, 184, 189-192;
portrait of, 190;
the "Swamp Fox," 190, 191;
sets free one hundred and fifty prisoners,

191;
honored by friends, 192.
Marne, first battle of, 427;
second battle of, 438.
Marquette, Father, 53, 106, 112.
Maryland, 68-70.
Massachusetts Bay, Colony of, 82, 83.
Massasoit, Indian chief, 78, 79, 80, 84.
"Mayflower," The, 73-75, 77, 78, 80, 81.
Meat packing, 376, 419-421.
Megaphone, 275.
Menlo Park, Edison's laboratory at, 383, 385.
"Merrimac," The, 324-325.
Mexican Indians, 18-21.
Mexico, invaded and conquered by Cortés, 18-22;
mines of, 22;
war between Texas and, 279-283;
Fremont in the war with, 288-289;
war between United States and, 298, 310;
Grant in war with, 332;
Lee in war with, 337;
Pershing sent into, 430.
Microphone, 383.
"**Mill boy of the Slashes**," 294.
Mims, Fort, massacre at, 249.
Mines and mining, 375, 421-423.
Minuit, Peter, first governor of New Netherland, 58.
Minutemen, 174-175, 183.
Missionaries, 53, 106-114, 243.
Missionary Ridge, battle of, 335.
Missions, in the Southwest, 300-302.
Mississippi River, discovered by De Soto, 26, 27;
explored by Joliet and Marquette, 53;

La Salle reached mouth of, 112;
western boundary of United States, 224, 236.
Mississippi Valley, La Salle explores the, 107, 109-113.
Missouri, state of, 210, 238, 296.
Missouri Compromise, 296, 319.
Missouri River, Falls of the, 240.
Mohave Desert, 288.
"**Mohawks**," 171.
"**Monitor," The**, 324-325.
Monoplane, 392-393.
Monmouth, battle of, 138, 139.
Monroe James, 236, 307, 426.
Monterey, 289.
Montezuma, 20.
Monticello, home of Jefferson, 231, 232, 234, 237, 238.
Moravians, 102.
Morgan, General, 184, 185-189;
fights French and Indians, 185;
helps capture Burgoyne, 186;
complimented by Burgoyne, 186;
at battle of Cowpens, 186, 188;
portrait of, 186; joins Greene, 188;
last days of, 188-189.
Morristown, 137.
Morse, Samuel F. B., 264-268;
interested in electricity, 264;
plans instrument, 265;
meets helper in Alfred Vail, 265;
gets government aid, 267;
portrait of, 267;
receives rewards and honors, 268;
death, 268.
Moving pictures, 385-386.

Moultrie, Colonel, 182.
Mount Vernon, 116, 119, 121, 123, 128, 129, 141, 142, 143, 145.
Murfreesboro, 335.
Murray, Mrs., entertains Lord Howe, 133.

Napoleon, sells Louisiana Territory to the United States, 236.
Nassau, Fort, 56.
Natick, Mass., 84.
National Woman's Suffrage Association, 403.
Necessity, Fort, 123.
Negro slaves, *see* Slavery.
Neutrality, American in World War, 426, 427-429.
New Amsterdam, 58, 91, 92;
becomes New York, 90.
New England, Puritans in, 68, 81-86;
Pilgrims in, 73-81;
industries, manners, and customs of colonists in, 85-86.
New France, 52;
trappers, soldiers, and missionaries of, 113-114.
New Netherland, 88-90;
settlement of, 58-59;
industries, manners, and customs of, 91-92.
New Orleans, 236;
battle of, 250-252.
Newport, Captain, 60, 62.
New York, New Amsterdam becomes, 90;
William and Mary give representative assembly to, 90;
British in, 133;
Washington inaugurated in, 143-144.
Nez Percé Indians, 241, 243.

"Niagara," The, 245.
Niagara River, 108, 109.
Nile River, 446-447, 463.
"Niña," The, 10, 13.
Ninevah, 448.
"**Nolichucky Jack**," 212-216.
Nolichucky River, 212.
"**No-Man's-Land**," 203.
Normans, 483, 488-490.
Northmen, voyages of, 1-2;
in Iceland and Greenland, 1;
discover Vinland, 1;
wanderings of, 483, 484, 486.
See also Normans *and* Danes.
"North River," The, 260.
Nullification, and President Jackson, 254, 308;
Webster's great speech on, 303-304;
Calhoun favors, 307-308;
South Carolina and, 253-254, 308.

Odoacer, 477.
Oglethorpe, James, 100-103, 104;
friend of the unfortunate, 100;
portrait of, 101;
settles Georgia, 101-103;
death, 103.
"**Old Hickory**," 249.
Old North Church, 174.
Old South Church, 169, 171.
Orange, Fort, 56, 57, 90.
Orange growing, 375.
"Oregon," The, 377.
Oregon Country, Lewis and Clark Expedition sent to, 237, 243;
sought by fur traders and missionaries, 243-244;

United States and Great Britain occupy, 244;
northern boundary of the established, 244;
Benton speaks on the, 285.

"Pacificator," The, 297.
Pacific Northwest, 333.
Pacific Ocean, named by Magellan, 30.
Pakenham, General, 251.
Palos, 7, 9, 13, 15.
Panama-California Exposition, 378.
Panama Canal, 376-378.
Panama-Pacific International Exposition, 378.
Paris, son of the king of Troy, 452.
Parker, ——, 243.
Parsons' Case, The, 161-162.
Patagonia, 29, 38.
Patroons, The, 58-59, 89.
Paul, John, *see* Jones, John Paul.
"Pelican," The, Drake's ship, 38.
Penn, Admiral, 93, 94, 95, 96.
Penn, William, 92-98;
becomes a Quaker, 93;
sent to Paris and Ireland, 93-94;
portrait of, 94;
King Charles and, 94;
founds Pennsylvania as home for Quakers, 95-98;
invites all persecuted people, 96;
founds Philadelphia, 97;
treaty with the Indians, 98;
death, 98.
Penn's Woods, 96.
Pennsylvania, founded, 95-96;
coal in, 421-422.
Pennsylvania, University of, founded, 151.
"**Pennsylvania Dutch**," 98.

"**Pennsylvania Gazette**," 151.
Pericles, 460-461.
Perry, Oliver Hazard, 244-245;
midshipman at fourteen, 244;
in war against Barbary States, 244;
ordered to Lake Erie, 244;
battle of Lake Erie, 244-245;
portrait of, 245;
highly honored, 245.
Pershing, John J., sent to Mexico, 430;
heads American forces, 436;
portrait of, 436;
early life, 436-437;
lands in France, 437;
divides his troops among the Allies, 438-439;
defeats the Germans at Château-Thierry, 439;
wins battle of St. Mihiel, 439-440.
Peru, Pizarro in, 23.
Petersburg, siege of, 336.
"**Petition of Right**," 493.
Philadelphia, 137;
founded, 97;
British at, 138;
first Continental Congress at, 172;
Second Continental Congress at, 177.
Philip, *see* King Philip.
Philip of Macedon, 455.
Philippines, Magellan visits, 30;
United States pays Spain for, 357.
Phoenicians, 449-450.
Phonograph, 384, 387.
Pickett, General George E., 338.
Pierce, President, 269.
Pilgrims, The, 73-81;

seek Holland, 73;
land in America, 74-77;
and the Indians, 76, 78-81, 84-85;
settle at Plymouth, 77;
build homes in the forest, 77;
celebrate Thanksgiving, 80;
industries, manners, and customs of, 85-86.
"Pinta," The, 10, 11, 13, 14.
Pinzón, 7;
sails with Columbus, 10.
Pitt, Fort, 126, 218.
Pitt, William, 126, 154, 162, 233.
Pittsburgh, iron and steel center of America, 423.
Pittsburg Landing, 334-335, 380.
Pizarro, Francisco, 23-24;
marches army to Cuzco and finds vast wealth, 23;
killed by his men, 24.
Planters, industries, manners, and customs of the southern, 103-104.
Plato, 454.
Plymouth, landing place of the Pilgrims, 77;
colony of, 83.
Plymouth Rock, 77.
Pocahontas, 66-68;
rescues John Smith, 64;
carries corn to settlers, 64;
warns settlers of danger, 65;
marries John Rolfe, 66;
received as a princess in England, 67;
portrait of, 68;
death, 68.
Ponce de Leon, 17-18;
takes possession of Florida, 17;
death, 18.

"**Pony express**," 373.
"**Poor Richard's Almanac**," 151, 152, 197.
Pope, General, 338.
Portland, 376.
Porto Rico, annexed by United States, 357.
Port Royal, founded, 49.
Potato, white, taken to England, 45.
Powhatan, famous Indian chief, 63, 64, 65, 67.
Prescott, Colonel, 176.
Princeton, 136.
Protestants, 68, 69, 102.
"**Puffing Billy**," 263.
Puritans, 68, 70, 81-83, 85;
in England, 81;
seek America, 81;
at Salem, 81;
found Boston, 82, 83;
found colony of Massachusetts, 92.
Put-In-Bay, 244.

Quakers, 92-100;
called themselves Society of Friends, 99.
Quebec, founded, 49;
fall of, 114;
expedition against, 126.

Railroads, 263-264, 373.
Raleigh, Sir Walter, 42-47;
Drake carries back to England colony of, 41;
as student, soldier, seaman, 42-43;
plants colonies in America, 43-46;
portrait of, 44;
wins favor with Queen Elizabeth, 44;
put to death, 47.
"Raleigh," The, 200.
Rameses II, 447.

"Ranger," The, 196, 197.
"Ranges" of Lake Superior, 422.
Reaper, 272-274.
Red Cross Society, 355, 410-412, 431.
Reed, Deborah, wife of Franklin, 149, 151.
Refrigerator cars, 421.
Remus, 464.
Republican party, 289, 320, 344, 348, 351, 370.
Resources and industries of the United States, 416-423.
Revere, Paul, 172, 174.
"Revolution," The, 403.
Revolution, War of the, 207, 209, 211, 224, 246, 247;
debt of the, 235;
woman's part in the, 400.
Rice, in the South, 104.
Richmond, 325, 326, 327.
Roanoke Island, 44, 45.
Rochambeau, General, 139.
Rocky Mountains, 240, 243.
Rolfe, John, 66, 67.
Rolfe, Thomas, 68.
Rome, 464-477;
legends and myths of, 464-466;
threatened with civil war, 466;
taken by Gauls, 466;
conquers all tribes of Italy, 466;
war with Carthage, 466-469;
conquers many nations, 469;
changed character of, 469-470;
uprisings in, 470;
conquests under Caesar, 472;
becomes an empire, 473;
establishes a system of laws, 473-474;

builds famous roads and engineering works, 474;
literature of, 475;
prepares way for spread of Christianity, 475-476;
conquered by Teutons, 476-477;
later invasions, 477;
brings Christianity to Germans, 478-479;
Charlemagne crowned emperor of, 481.
Romulus, 464.
Roosevelt, Theodore, 356, 360-372;
early life, 360-363;
as New York assemblyman, 363-364;
western life, 364-365;
as Civil Service Commissioner, 365;
as Police Commissioner, 365-366;
in Spanish-American War, 366;
governor of New York, 366;
as vice-president, succeeds McKinley, 367;
record as president, 368;
as an author, 368-369;
defeated for reëlection, 370;
explores a Brazilian river, 370-371;
death, 371.
Rosecrans, General, 335.
"**Rough Riders**," 366.
Rubicon, 472-473.
Rumsey, James, 257.
Runnymede, meeting at, 492.
Russia, takes part in World War, 421;
makes peace with Germany, 437.

Sacajawea, statue of, 241.
Sacramento Valley, 287-288.
"**Sage of Monticello**," 238.
St. Francis, 290.
St. Gaudens, statue of Lincoln by, 326-327.

St. John's Church, 163.
St. Joseph River, 109, 110.
St. Lawrence River, French on, 49, 50, 52.
St. Louis, 210, 242.
St. Louis, Fort, 112.
St. Marys, 69.
St. Mihiel, battle of, 439-440.
Salamis, battle of, 462.
Salem, colony at, 81, 82.
Samoset, 78.
Sampson, Rear Admiral, 357.
San Antonio, 282.
San Diego, mission at, 290-291;
exposition at, 378.
San Francisco, importance of, 376;
exposition at, 378;
Red Cross relieves suffering caused by earthquake at, 411-412.
San Jacinto, battle of, 280-281.
San Juan, 356-357.
San Salvador, discovered by Columbus, 12.
Santa Ana, General, 280, 281, 282.
"Santa Maria," The, 9.
Santiago, 356-357.
Savannah, founded, 102;
captured by British, 182.
Saxons, *see* Anglo-Saxon tribes.
Schley, Commodore, 357.
Schuyler, Philip, 132.
Scott, General, 254.
Seminole Indians, war with the, 252.
"Serapis," The, 197, 198.
Serfs, 445.
Serra, Junipero, 290-291.
Settlement, *see* Social Settlement.
Sevier, John, 210-216, 247;

goes to school at Fredericksburg, 210;
famous Indian fighter, 210;
captain in Washington' regiment, 210;
portrait of, 211;
at siege of Fort Watauga, 211-212;
Kate Sherrill and, 211-212;
moves to the Nolichucky, 212;
fights battle of Kings Mountain, 213-214;
destroys Indian towns, 214;
governor of Tennessee, 215;
dies while working, 215.
Sewing Machine, 274-276.
Shafter, General, 356.
Shawnee Indians, 216.
Shelby, Colonel, 213.
Sheridan, General, 340.
Sherman, Roger, 232.
Sherrill, Kate, 211-212.
Sholes, Christopher L., 386-387.
Silver, 373.
Slavery, in Virginia, 71;
in the South, 229;
Calhoun on question of, 308-310;
petitions in favor of abolishing, 308;
new view of, 310;
Lincoln's attitude toward, 316, 318;
question of, 320;
destroyed, 326;
Harriet Beecher Stowe's efforts against, 407.
Sloat, Commander, 289.
Smith, John, 61-66, 77;
portrait of, 61;
as a soldier, 62;
and the Indians, 62-65;
saved from death by Pocahontas, 64;
returns to Jamestown, 64;

returns to England, 66;
on last visit to America, 66;
meets Pocahontas in England, 67.
Snake River, Lewis and Clark on the, 242.
Social Settlement, Jane Addams and the, 413.
Socrates, 453-454.
"**Soldier's Rest**," Morgan's home, 188.
"**Sons of Liberty**," 162, 168.
South Carolina, and nullification, 253-254, 308.
South Pass, 243, 285.
Spain, in America, 11-16, 18-28;
Englishmen check progress of, 37-42;
missions of, 290-292;
war between United States and, 366-370.
See also Spanish-American War.
Spanish-American War, 366-370;
Goethals in the, 377;
Clara Barton and the Red Cross in the, 411.
Spanish Armada, The, 42.
Spanish missions, in the Southwest, 290-292;
in California, 290-292;
treatment of Indians at, 291-292;
present condition of, 292.
Sparta, 452, 453, 456, 458, 462.
"Speedwell," The, 73, 74.
Spottsylvania, battle of, 336, 337.
Squanto, friend of Pilgrims, 78, 79, 80.
Stamp Act, 129, 154, 158-160, 162, 168, 230.
Standish, Miles, 75, 76, 78, 79, 80;
portrait of, 78.
Stanton, Elizabeth Cady, 401-404;
early life of, 401-402;
portrait of, 401;
calls woman's rights convention, 402;
works with Miss Anthony for suffrage, 403;

death, 404.
Stanton, Henry B., 402, 403.
Starved Rock, 110, 111.
Steamboat, invented by Fulton, 257-260;
used on all rivers, 260-261.
Steel, manufacture of, 423.
Stephenson, George, 263.
Steuben, General, 138.
Stewart, Boone's companion, 204.
Stowe, Calvin E., 407.
Stowe, Harriet Beecher, 406-407;
early life of, 406-407;
in behalf of freedom for slaves, 407;
writes *Uncle Tom's Cabin*, 407;
portrait of, 407;
death, 407.
Strait of Magellan, *see* Magellan.
"**Stump speaking**," 319.
Stuyvesant, Peter, 87-91;
in West Indies, 87;
portrait of, 88;
governor of New Amsterdam, 88-90;
makes strict laws, 88;
disputes with people, 89;
surrenders to English, 90-91.
Submarine, 395-397.
Suffrage, Woman, 402, 403-404, 414.
Sumter, Fort, 323.
Sumter, Thomas, 184.
Superior, iron "ranges" of Lake, 422.
Sutter, Colonel, 288.
Sutter's Fort, 287.

Taft, William Howard, 369-370;
portrait of, 369.
Tanks, 397.
Tariff, collecting in South Carolina, 297;

protective, 303-307;
Calhoun and, 307-308.
Tariff Law, Compromise, 297, 304, 308.
Tarleton, Colonel, sent to capture Morgan, 185-187;
defeated at battle of the Cowpens, 186-188;
stories of, 187-188;
sent to capture Marion, 191.
Tea Tax, 129, 162-163, 168-170, 231.
Tecumseh, 249.
Telegraph, invented by Morse, 264-268;
Marconi invents wireless, 268;
Edison and the, 381-383.
Telephone, invented by Bell and Gray, 268.
Temperance, *see* Woman's Christian Temperance Union.
Tennessee, 215, 247, 248.
Texas, 279-283, 310.
Thanksgiving, the first American, 80.
Thermopylae, 462.
Threshing machines, 418.
Ticonderoga, 132.
Tigris River, 448.
Tobacco, chief crop of Virginia planters, 71.
Tonti, comes to America with La Salle, 107;
goes to hunt the *Griffin*, 109, 110;
at Starved Rock, 111, 113;
in command of Fort St. Louis, 112.
Tories, 169, 190.
Tours, battle of, 479.
Trade routes, old, 2;
Turks destroy, 3.
Trading posts, 56.
Transportation, development of, 373-374.
"**Traveler**," Lee's horse, 341.
Travis, Colonel, 279.

Treaty of 1783 (Revolution), 140, 155.
Treaty of Ghent (War of 1812), 306.
Treaty of 1846, 244.
Trenton, 135.
Trojans, 452-453.
Turkey, 45.
Tyler, President, 314, 320.
Typewriter, 386-388.

Ulysses, 453.
"**Uncle Tom's Cabin**," 407.
"**Unknown Warrior**," burial of, 433.
Union-Pacific Railway, completed, 374.
United States, resources and industries of the, 316-323.
United States Bank, President Jackson and the, 252-253.

Vail, Alfred, 265.
Valley Forge, 137, 138.
Van Buren, President, 254.
Vancouver, Fort, 286.
Van Rensselaer, a patroon, 58.
Vernon, Admiral, 116.
Vespucci, Amerigo, 16.
Vicksburg, siege of, 334.
Victoria, Queen, 270.
Vikings, *see* Northmen.
Villa, 430.
Vincennes, campaign against, 218-224.
Vinland, visited by Northmen, 1.
Virgil, 475.
Virginia, 60, 130, 163, 166;
named by Queen Elizabeth, 44;
colony planted in, 46;
Charles I gives Baltimore a part of, 69;
slavery introduced into, 71;

life in the colony of, 71;
industries, manners, and customs of, 71-72;
old days in, 126-129;
the change in, 141.

Wabash, Clark and his men in the "drowned lands" of the, 221-222.
War of 1812, heroes of, 244-254;
Perry in, 244-245;
Jackson in, 248-252;
Clay's part in the, 296;
treaty ending, 296;
Webster's part in, 302;
Calhoun's work in, 307.
Warren, General Joseph, 177.
Washington, Augustine, 115.
Washington, George, 114-145, 153, 166, 173, 180, 182, 184, 234;
birthday and birthplace of, 115;
mother of, 115;
a skilled woodsman, 118;
meets Lord Fairfax, 119;
as a surveyor, 119-120;
in the wilderness and at Greenway Court, 119-121;
as a soldier against the French, 121-123;
builds Fort Necessity, 123;
joins Braddock's army, 123;
visits Boston, 125;
meets Martha Custis, 126;
at Fort Duquesne, 126;
married, 126-127;
elected to House of Burgesses, 127;
at Mount Vernon, 128-129;
modesty of, 128, 131;
sent to Continental Congress, 130;
made commander in chief of American

armies, 130, 155, 177;
takes command of army, 132;
appoints Schuyler to take command in New York, 132;
outwits Howe, 133;
retreats but fights, 134;
at Trenton, 135-136;
defeats British at Princeton, 137;
at battle of Brandywine, 137;
at Valley Forge, 137-138;
at Yorktown, 139-140;
portrait of, 139;
bids farewell to army and returns to Mount Vernon, 140-142;
elected first president, 143-145, 234;
loved by the people, 143;
character of administration of, 144;
reëlected president and refuses third term, 145;
death, 145.
Washington, Lawrence, 116, 117, 121.
Washington, William, 184, 185, 186, 187.
Watauga, Fort, 211, 212.
Watt, James, 258, 259.
Webster, Daniel, 300-306;
early life of, 300;
best student at Dartmouth, 301;
studies law, 301;
marries, 302;
in Congress, 302;
opposes nullification, 303, 304;
portrait of, 304;
Secretary of State, 304, 306;
supports the Compromise of 1850, 305;
dies at Marshfield, 306.
Wesley, John and Charles, 103.

West, Benjamin, 258.
West, The New, 372-376.
West Indies, Columbus discovers and explores, 13, 15;
devastated by Drake, 41;
Paul Jones' expedition to, 196.
Wheat, 375, 417-419.
Whig party, The, 297, 298, 304, 319, 322.
White, John, 45, 46.
Whitehaven, Paul Jones' exploit at, 196.
White Plains, 134.
Whitman, Marcus, missionary, 243, 244.
Whitney, Eli, 226-229;
in his father's tool shop, 226;
goes to Savannah, 227;
invited to Mulberry Grove, 227;
becomes interested in cotton, 228;
invents cotton gin, 228;
effect of cotton gin invented by, 416.
"**Wilderness**," fighting in the, 336, 337.
"Wilderness Road," The, 205-206.
Willard, Frances E., 408-409;
early life of, 408;
and the Woman's Christian Temperance Union, 409;
death, 409;
portrait of, 409.
William and Mary, 90.
William the Conqueror, 488-489, 490.
Williamsburg, 159, 163, 230.
"Willing," The, 220, 223.
Wilson, Woodrow, 428-431;
early life, 429;
practises law, 429;
as a teacher, 429;
president of Princeton, 429;

governor of New Jersey, 429-430;
portrait of, 430;
and Mexico, 430;
dismisses German ambassador, 431;
makes loans to Allies, 431;
at Paris, 442;
tours the United States, 443.
Winslow, Edward, 73.
Winthrop, John, 81-83, 147.
Wireless telegraphy, 268.
Wolfe, General, 114, 126.
Woman's Christian Temperance Union, 409.
Woman's club, 405-406.
Woman's rights, 401-404, 414;
Elizabeth Cady Stanton and, 402;
Susan B. Anthony and, 403-404;
Julia Ward Howe and, 406.
Woman's Rights Convention, first, 402.
Woman suffrage, 402, 403-404, 414.
Women of our nation, 400-416.
Wood, Colonel Leonard, 356.
World's Columbian Exposition, 16.
World's Woman's Christian Temperance Union, 409.
World War, 371, 424-443;
support of by the American people, 424-426;
attitude of United States in early years of, 426-429, 430-431;
nations involved in, 426,
naval events of, 427;
United States enters, 431-432;
size of, 433-434;
character of, 434-435;
Russia withdraws from, 437;
crisis of, 437-439;
American battles in, 439-441;

Allied victories in, 441;
close of, 442-443.
Wright, Orville, 390-394.
Wright, Wilbur, 390-394.
Wyeth, Nathaniel, 243.

Xerxes, 462.

Yadkin River, Greene crosses, 188;
Boone on the, 203;
Boone returns to home on the, 205.
York, Duke of, 89.
Yorktown, victory at, 139-140, 189.

Zama, battle of, 469.
Zeppelins, 391.

UNITED STATES

Copyright, 1909, by Rand, McNa

TRANSCRIBER'S NOTES

Silently corrected simple spelling, grammar, and typographical errors.

Retained anachronistic and non-standard spellings as printed.

*** END OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK A BEGINNER'S HISTORY ***

Updated editions will replace the previous one—the old editions will be renamed.

Creating the works from print editions not protected by U.S. copyright law means that no one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation (and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules, set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to copying and distributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works to protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG™ concept and trademark. Project Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you charge for an eBook, except by following the terms of the trademark license, including paying royalties for use of the Project Gutenberg trademark. If you do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the trademark license is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and research. Project Gutenberg eBooks may be modified and printed and given away—you may do practically ANYTHING in the United States with eBooks not protected by U.S. copyright law. Redistribution is subject to the trademark license, especially commercial redistribution.

START: FULL LICENSE

THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG™ LICENSE
PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg™ mission of promoting the free distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work (or any other work associated in any way with the phrase “Project Gutenberg”), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project Gutenberg License available with this file or online at www.gutenberg.org/license.

Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg electronic works

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property (trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy all copies of Project Gutenberg electronic works in your possession. If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project Gutenberg electronic work and you do not agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or entity to whom you paid the fee as set forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. “Project Gutenberg” is a registered trademark. It may only be used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg electronic works even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project Gutenberg electronic works if you follow the terms of this agreement and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg electronic works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation (“the Foundation” or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project Gutenberg electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the collection are in the public domain in the United States. If an individual work is unprotected by copyright law in the United States and you are located in the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project Gutenberg mission of promoting free access to electronic works by freely sharing Project Gutenberg works in compliance with the terms of this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg name associated with the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project Gutenberg License when you share it without

charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern what you can do with this work. Copyright laws in most countries are in a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement before downloading, copying, displaying, performing, distributing or creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project Gutenberg work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning the copyright status of any work in any country other than the United States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate access to, the full Project Gutenberg License must appear prominently whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg work (any work on which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” appears, or with which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed, copied or distributed:

> This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project

Gutenberg™ License included
with this eBook or online at
www.gutenberg.org. If you are
not located in the United States,
you will have to check the laws
of the country where you are
located before using this eBook.

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg electronic work is derived from texts not protected by U.S. copyright law (does not contain a notice indicating that it is posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work with the phrase “Project Gutenberg” associated with or appearing on the work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the Project Gutenberg trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg electronic work is posted with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked to the Project Gutenberg License for all works posted with the permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.

1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full Project Gutenberg License terms from this work,

or any files containing a part of this work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project Gutenberg License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary, compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg work in a format other than “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other format used in the official version posted on the official Project Gutenberg website (www.gutenberg.org), you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon request, of the work in its original “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other form. Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying, performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg works unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing access to or distributing Project Gutenberg electronic works provided that:

- You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from the use of Project Gutenberg works calculated using the method you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is owed to the owner of the Project Gutenberg trademark, but he has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation. Royalty payments must be paid within 60 days following each date on which you prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the address specified in Section 4, “Information about donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation.”

- You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies you in writing (or by e-mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg™ License. You must require such a user to return or destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of Project Gutenberg™ works.

- You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in the electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days of receipt of the work.

- You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free distribution of Project

Gutenberg™ works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the manager of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark. Contact the Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable effort to identify, do copyright research on, transcribe and proofread works not protected by U.S. copyright law in creating the Project Gutenberg™ collection. Despite these efforts, Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may contain “Defects,” such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by your equipment.

1.F.2. LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES - Except for the “Right of Replacement or Refund” described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark, and any other party distributing a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all liability

to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal fees. YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH 1.F.3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

1.F.3. LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND - If you discover a defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth in paragraph 1.F.3, this work is provided to you ‘AS-IS’, WITH NO OTHER WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR

IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages. If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY - You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone providing copies of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works in accordance with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production, promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, harmless from all liability, costs and expenses, including legal fees, that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do or cause to occur: (a) distribution of this or any Project Gutenberg work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any Project Gutenberg work, and (c) any Defect you cause.

Section 2. Information about the Mission of Project Gutenberg

Project Gutenberg is synonymous with the free

distribution of electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers including obsolete, old, middle-aged and new computers. It exists because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the assistance they need are critical to reaching Project Gutenberg's goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg collection will remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure and permanent future for Project Gutenberg and future generations. To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4 and the Foundation information page at www.gutenberg.org.

Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non-profit 501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal Revenue Service. The Foundation's EIN or federal tax identification number is 64-6221541. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation are tax deductible to the full extent permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state's laws.

The Foundation's business office is located at 41

Watchung Plaza #516, Montclair NJ 07042, USA, +1 (862) 621-9288. Email contact links and up to date contact information can be found at the Foundation's website and official page at www.gutenberg.org/contact

Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

Project Gutenberg™ depends upon and cannot survive without widespread public support and donations to carry out its mission of increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be freely distributed in machine-readable form accessible by the widest array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations ($1 to $5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt status with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any particular state visit www.gutenberg.org/donate.

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we have not met the

solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg web pages for current donation methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other ways including checks, online payments and credit card donations. To donate, please visit: www.gutenberg.org/donate.

Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg electronic works

Professor Michael S. Hart was the originator of the Project Gutenberg concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared with anyone. For forty years, he produced and distributed Project Gutenberg eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

Project Gutenberg eBooks are often created from several printed editions, all of which are confirmed as not protected by copyright in the U.S. unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily keep eBooks in compliance with any particular paper edition.

Most people start at our website which has the main PG search facility: www.gutenberg.org.

This website includes information about Project Gutenberg, including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.